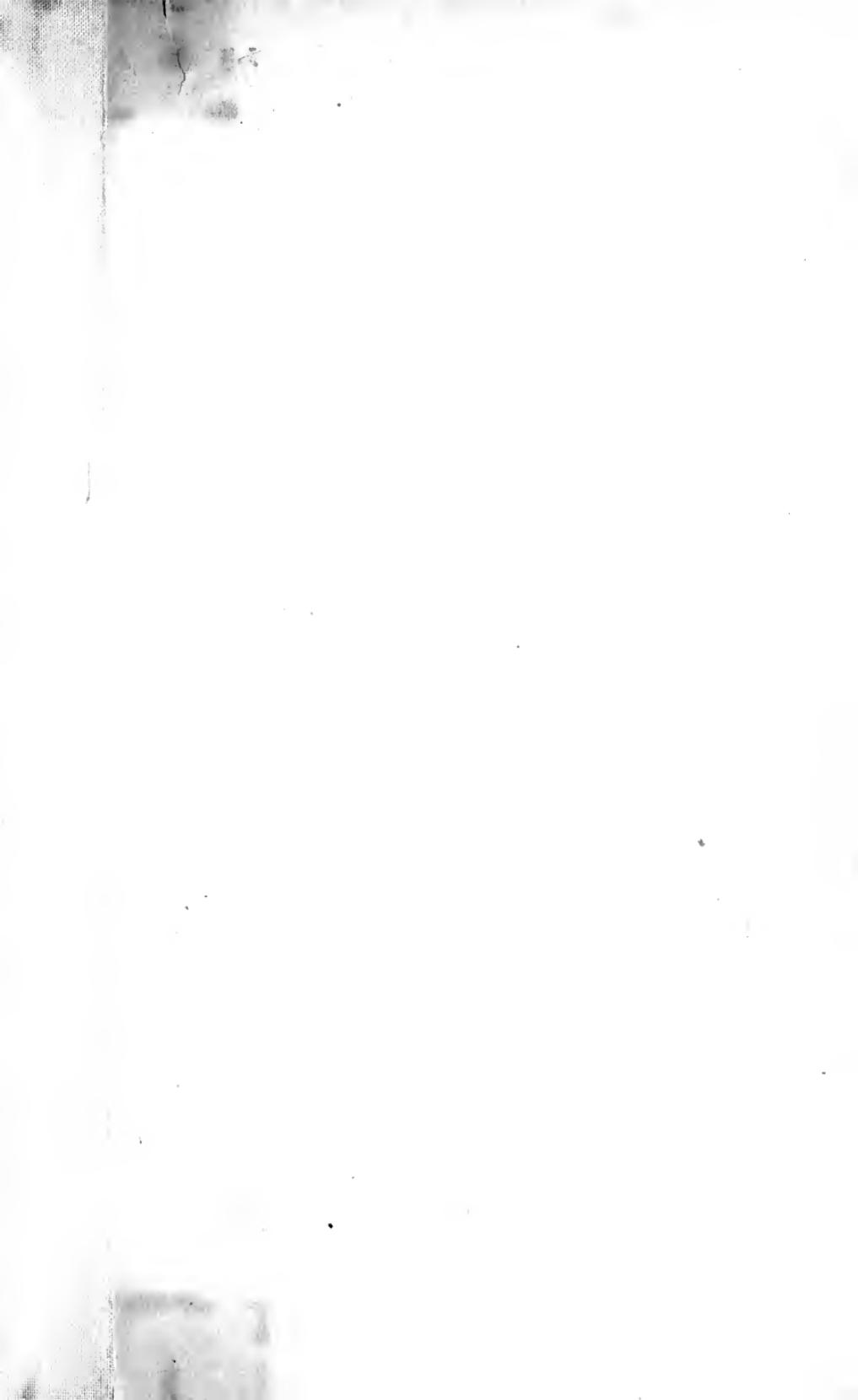


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARIES

A standard linear barcode is located in the top left corner of the white label. It consists of vertical black lines of varying widths on a white background.

3 1761 00368673 0







Morte Arthure.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

442

# Monte Arthurie,

or

## The Death of Arthur.



EDITED FROM

ROBERT THORNTON'S MS.

IN THE LIBRARY OF LINCOLN CATHEDRAL,

BY

EDMUND BROCK.

[A New Edition, 1871.]

38023  
6/10/96:

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXV.

P.R.  
1119  
A2  
100. B

## CONTENTS.

---

						PAGE
PREFACE	...	...	...	...	...	vii
ON THE METRE OF THE POEM	...	...	...	...	...	ix
NOTES	...	...	...	...	...	xiv
MORTE ARTHURE	...	...	...	...	...	1
INDEX OF NAMES	...	...	...	...	...	129
GLOSSARIAL INDEX	...	...	...	...	...	136



## P R E F A C E.

---

THE present version of the *Morte Arthure* or *Death of Arthur* is mainly an account of the great war with Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, and its sequel, the war with the traitor Modred, who, being left in charge of the kingdom, during Arthur's absence usurped the throne and married Queen Guinevere. In his combat with Modred, whom he slays, Arthur receives his death-wound, and shortly after dies. Among the incidents in the story not forming part of the wars, we may note the great feast at Carlisle, the king's dream of the dragon and bear, the slaughter of the great giant on Michael's Mount, and Arthur's dream of Fortune's wheel and the Nine Worthies. The love of Lancelot for the queen finds no place in this work.

*Morte Arthure* was probably written in the latter part of the fourteenth century, or early in the fifteenth. Of the author nothing whatever is known, not even his name. This is the more to be regretted as he must certainly be considered a poet of no mean order; the freshness of his descriptions of scenery<sup>1</sup>, the touching pathos of some of his passages<sup>2</sup>, and the rapid flow and thundering force of his diction in others<sup>3</sup>, mark him out as one of the greatest writers of his time. What, beside him, are Occleve, Lydgate, Aw-delay, Hylton, Hawes, Lonelich, and like poetasters? What even Chestre and Skelton?

<sup>1</sup> See ll. 920—932, 2506—2512.

<sup>2</sup> See ll. 3790—3808, 3874—3894, 3949—3971.

<sup>3</sup> See ll. 2204—2217, 2541—2573, 2989—3000.

The poem is printed from the Thornton MS., in the library of Lincoln Cathedral ; no other copy is known. The MS. is a collection of poems and treatises on various subjects, some in English, some in Latin ; a list of the contents may be found in Sir Frederic Madden's *Syr Gawayne* (Bannatyne Club, 1839), or in the *Thornton Romances*, ed. Halliwell (Camden Soc. 1844). The MS. is named after Robert Thornton, who penned a great part of it. At the end of *Morte Arthure* we find, “*R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.*” Thornton was “a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire, and Archdeacon of Bedford, in the Diocese of Lincoln, about the middle of the fifteenth century. The date of Archdeacon Thornton and his connection with Lincoln Cathedral can be ascertained pretty accurately, as among the archives of the Cathedral there is preserved an instrument or deed of considerable importance, attested by him as Archdeacon, which bears date 1439.”<sup>1</sup>

*Morte Arthure* was first printed in 1847, by J. O. Halliwell, but can hardly be said to have been published, since the impression was limited to 75 copies. In 1865 it was edited by the Rev. George G. Perry, for the Early English Text Society. The present edition appears instead of a reprint of Mr Perry's, but differs from it in several respects ; the text has been carefully read throughout with the MS. at Lincoln, and corrections made, where needful ; the side-notes are greatly altered, often replaced with new ; a new Glossary has been written, and an index of names and some notes added.

I am greatly indebted to the Rev. W. W. Skeat for much valuable help, especially with the Glossary, also for kindly revising his paper on the metre of the poem.

E. B.

<sup>1</sup> From Mr Perry's Preface, p. vii.

## ON THE METRE OF THE POEM.

---

THE metre in which the “Morte Arthure” is written may best be understood by comparing it with “Piers Plowman,” the accentuation and *swing* of the verse being much better marked in the last-mentioned poem. The principles which govern this peculiar metre may thus be more readily discerned, and, when once understood, may easily be applied to the present poem.

For a similar reason, it will be the simplest method to consider, first of all, a few lines (of “Piers Plowman”) where the metre is most strongly marked, and, afterwards, some where it is, apparently, less regular.

It should first, however, be observed that each complete line in an alliterative poem consists generally of two *sections*, which were separated in old manuscripts by a dot, called the *metrical point* or *pause*, and which may conveniently be denoted by an inverted full stop, thus :—

“Schelde vs ffro schamesdede · and synfulle werkes ;”

or else by printing the lines thus :—

“Schelde vs ffro schamesdede,  
And synfulle werkes.”

In reading aloud a pause may conveniently be made between the sections.

The two sections form, however, but one complete line ; and, as the metrical point is more necessary when the poem is to be sung or recited than when it is merely to be read, it has not been thought necessary to insert it in this edition, since the reader, when he has

once caught the rhythm of the verse, may always be tolerably sure as to where it must occur.

To begin, then ; consider the line—

“ *Ac Lucifer lowest · lith of hem allë.*”

*Piers Plowman* (ed Skeat), B. i. 124.

If we use an asterisk to denote a strongly-accented<sup>1</sup> (or *loud*) syllable, the figure 1 to denote a *single* unaccented syllable, the figure 2 to mean *two* unaccented syllables immediately succeeding each other, and so on ; we may represent the above line by the scheme,

1 \* 2 \* 1 : \* 2 \* 1 ;

and this may be taken as a convenient type of alliterative lines, from which the scansion of very many others may be readily deduced. Some, however, as will be shewn presently, must be referred to a type somewhat different.

Now, we here observe (1) that each section contains two strong accents ; (2) that, of the strongly-accented syllables, three begin with a common letter, which has been called the *rime-letter* ; and (3) of these three, two occur in the first section, and one in the second. Such is the usual and normal arrangement. The *rime-letters* may be either consonants or vowels, and may consist of *single* letters, or of such combinations as *sc*, *bl*, *tr*, etc. If vowels, it is sufficient that they *are* so ; they need not be the *same* vowels, and, in practice, are generally *different*.

Again, the last strongly-accented syllable in the line does *not* begin with the rime-letter. This also is the usual and more correct arrangement.

Having once this typical form to refer to, it is easy to enumerate most of the changes which may arise. Let us now take the line,

“ *Here<sup>2</sup> messe and here matynes · and many of here oures.*”

*Piers Plowman*, B. Prol. 97.

<sup>1</sup> I use the term *strongly-accented* advisedly, all accents not being equal. Thus, in the line—

“ On the oát-grass and the swórd-grass, and the búlrush in the pól,” the syllables marked are *strongly-accented*.

<sup>2</sup> “ *Hire* [or *here* = *their*] is a monosyllable.”—*Guest on English Rhythms*; ed. 1838, p. 34.

We have here the arrangement

1 \* 2 \* 1 : 1 \* 3 \* 1

which shews (1) that an unaccented syllable may be introduced at the beginning of the second section ; and (2) that the number of intermediate unaccented syllables may be readily increased to *three*.

Now herein lies the peculiar freedom and elasticity of alliterative verse ; we shall soon find by observation that, under certain circumstances, as many as *four* short unaccented syllables (even if they contain among them one that *is* accented *slightly*) may be inserted at pleasure between the emphatic syllables without destroying the rhythm ; for it is one addressed to the *ear* only, and not to the *eye*. The chief point which the poet has to take care of is that when he introduces a larger number of unaccented syllables, they should be capable of rapid enunciation, lest the verse seem clogged and unmusical. An example may be seen in the lines,

“Fáyteden for here fóde · foúžten atté álé ;”  
*Piers Plowman* B. Prol. 42.

which may be denoted by

\* 4 \* 1 : \* 3 \* 1

It would take up too much space to explain here the true method of scanning the lines by division into feet ; it may suffice to say that the *general effect* of the metre is *dactylic*, supposing the term *dactyl* to be capable of application to an *English* foot, which, to speak strictly, it is not. Indeed, the nomenclature of English prosody is in sore need of alteration. Neither is there space to explain, and to account for, the curious variations which may further be made in the alliterative metre. The view here given is only an approximate one, which will be found useful in practice. A longer passage may exemplify it better—

“I lóked on my léft half · as þe lády me taúghte,  
 And was wár of a wómmán · wórtheli yclóthed,  
 Púrfiled with pélure · þe finest vpon érthe,  
 Y-croúned with a córone · þe kýng hath non bétter ;  
 Féitislich hir fýngres · were frétted with góldé wyre.”

*Piers Plowman*, B. ii. 7.

<i>Analysis:</i>	1	*	3	*	1	:	2	*	2	*	1
	2	*	2	*	1	:		*	3	*	1
	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	3	*	1	
	1	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1
	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1	

One variation, however, found oftenest in the first section, is too important to be passed over. It is that we sometimes find in a section a *third* strongly-accented syllable, thus giving to the line a rather unwieldy length; as in,

“The móste myschief on móilde · is móýntyng wel fáste.”  
*Piers Plowman*, B. Prol. 67.

This third accent is often very awkwardly placed, as in the first line of “Morte Arthure,”

“Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym seluene.”

Other noticeable deviations from the strict type may be briefly indicated.

(1) The syllable beginning with the rime-letter is sometimes unemphatic; as in “Morte Arthure,” l. 59,

“In Glamórgane with glée · thare gládchipe was éuere.”

(2) Sometimes there are but *two* rime-letters, as in l. 95,

“At prýme of the dáye · in páyne of ȝour lývys.”

(3) Sometimes there is *no* alliteration, as in l. 70. (4) Sometimes there are *four* rime-letters, as l. 32, where all belong to accented syllables,

“Scáthylle Scóttlande by skýlle · he skýftys as hym lýkys ;”

or as in l. 35, where one belongs to an unaccented syllable,

“Hólaund and Hénawde · they héldé of hymé bóthen.”

It will now be sufficient, perhaps, to indicate what is probably the correct accentuation of the first fourteen lines, as this will enable the reader to perceive in them a certain vigorous *swing* (well suited for the ballad-reciter), which will suggest the scansion of most other lines, though there is always somewhat of difficulty in it, from the fact that we have now-a-days changed the accentuation of many words, and cannot be quite certain about the final *e*'s.

“Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym séluene,  
 And the précious práyere · of hys prýs módyr  
 Sché尔de vs ffro schámesdede · and sýnfulle wérkes, 4  
 And gýffe vs gráce to gýe · and góuerne vs hére  
 In this wréchydé wérldé · thorowe vért[u]ous líwyngé  
 That we may káyre til hys coúrte · the kýngdome of hévyne,  
 Whene oure sáules schalle párté · and súndyre ffra the bódy  
 Ewyre to bélde and to býde · in blýsse wyt hyme sélueñe; 8  
 And wýsse me to wérepe owte · some wórde at this týme,  
 That nothyre vóyde be ne váyne · bot wýrchip tille hyme sélvyne;  
 Plésande and prófitabille · to the pôpule that theme héres.  
 3e that líste has to lýth · or lúffes for to hére 12  
 Off élders of álde tyme · and of theire áwke dédys,  
 Hów they were léle in theire láwe · and lóuede Gód Almýghty,” etc.

The accentuation of the last two lines is a little doubtful. There may have been an accent on the second *of* in l. 13, owing to its position and the fact of its beginning with a rime-letter; while in l. 14 we have the rather unusual number of six accents, unless *how* was slurred over.

After all, the best way of perceiving the rhythm is to read over some fifty lines several times till they seem quite familiar, and then to read them over once more *out loud*, with strong emphasis on the verbs, substantives, and adjectives, and with a natural and free pronunciation.

One peculiarity in this poem should be particularly noticed, viz. that the same rime-letter is often continued throughout several successive lines. There is a remarkable instance of this in the passage beginning with l. 1844, where we have in succession 4 lines founded on *s*, 2 on hard *c*, 2 on *f*, 6 on *s*, 6 on *b*, 4 on hard *c*, 2 on vowels, 2 on *s*, 2 on *ch*, 2 on *f*, and 2 on *r*. Other striking examples are 7 lines on vowels, 571—577, 8 on *s*, 3310—3317, 9 on *j* or soft *g*, 2889—2897, 10 on *f*, 3300—3309, and 11 on *f*, 2755—2765. Similar instances are rare in Piers the Plowman, though we find 5 successive lines founded upon *p* in the B-text, Pass. xiv. 190—194.

For further remarks, see the Essay on Alliterative Verse in the third volume of the Percy Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, and the introduction to Piers the Plowman, Text A. pp. xxii and xxx.

## N O T E S.

Lines 212—215. Precious stones were supposed to keep off poison. Compare the following:—“þe earn deð in his neste enne deorewurðe ȝimston þet hette achate. Vor non attri þinc ne mei þene ston neihen, ne þeo hwule þet he is in his neste hermen his briddes. þes deorewurðe ston, þet is Iesu Crist, ase ston treowe *and* ful of alle mihten, ouer alle ȝimstones. He is þe achate þet atter of sunne ne neihede neuere. Do hine iðine neste, þet is, iðine heorte. þenc hwuch pinen he þolede on his flesche wiðuten, *and* hu swete he was iheorted, *and* hu softe wiðinnen; *and* so þu schalt drieve ut euerich atter of þine heorte, *and* bitternesse of þine bodie. . . . . þes ston, ase ich er seide, avleieð attri þinges. Habbe þu þesne ston wiðine þine heorte, þet is Godes nest, ne þer-tu nout dreden þe attrie neddre of helle. þine briddes, þet beoð þine gode werkes, beoð al sker of his atter.”—*The Ancren Riwle*, ed. Morton, p. 134—136. Compare also Piers the Plowman (ed. Skeat, Clarendon Press Series), note to Pass. ii. l. 14.

450. *Watlyng-strette*, “the Roman road leading from Dover to Cardigan. Leland describes it thus: Secunda via principalis dicitur *Watelingstreate*, tendens ab euro-austro in Zephyrum Septentrionalem. Incipit enim a Dovaria, tendens per medium Cantiae, juxta London, per S. Albanum, Dunstaplum, Stratfordiam, Towcestriam, Littleburne, per montem Gilberti juxta Salopiam, deinde per Stratton, et per medium Walliae, usque Cardigan. Itin. vol. vi. p. 120, *edit. Oxon.* 1744.”—Bosworth’s Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, under *Wætlinga stræt*.

793. *Brathelle* is purposely omitted from the Glossary, because it ought to have been printed *brayelle*, as it stands in the MS. It seems to mean the fur of the bear’s belly. Compare the following:—

“Brayel: m. The parts, or feathers, about the Haukes fundament, called by our Faulconers the brayle in a short-wingd, and, the pannell in a long-wingd, Hauke.”—*Cotgrave*.

“The *brayle*, or pannell of a Hawke. *Le brayer d’un oiseau, le brayel.*”—*Sherwood*.

“Braiel, *brayette*: Partie de la culotte qui tenoit lieu de celle qu’on appelle à présent le pont.”—*Roquefort*.

"Braioel, *braioel* : Le haut de la culotte."—*Roquefort*.

966. *Thow saynned the vnsekyrly*. Thou blessedst thyself vnsafely, i. e. you did not cross yourself in a proper manner, so as to ensure your safety ; otherwise you would not be here, in this perilous place. If the sign of the cross was not made in the right way, it was considered of no avail.

1195. Read *with [the] conquerour*.

1270. *Or many lyghte sallie lawe*. Or many shall light low, i. e. fall.

1286. "Horns of elephants full loudly blown." Our fathers were remarkably ignorant of the nature and habits of foreign animals.

1293. *Ewyne in the myddes*. Right in the middle.

1315. *That no mysse serues*. Who deserve no ill.

1364. Fretted in *salle*. Read *sable*.

1414. *Bretons*. This is probably the verb, *brittenes*, not the substantive, *Britons*.

1425. *Battailles*. Restore the reading of the MS. ; it is right.

1474. *He ryghtez theire brenez*. More likely *he rittez*.

1485. The relative pronoun is omitted after *Boyce*. This is a frequent ellipsis. See line 1558, where *that* is omitted after *Henry*.

1548. *Or sone delyuerde*, i. e. soon to be delivered.

1572. The alliteration would be improved by reading *bot [sir] Ewayne*.

1588. *With mangere to lengene*. Qu. with *maugree*, ill-will.

1653. *Lythe*. The alliteration and sense require *kythe*.

1698. *Borghete*. A strange mistake for *Brute*, i. e. Brutus, the supposed founder of Britain.

1717. "Whether we retire or appear (show ourselves), arrange as you please."

1736. *Wellyde alle quyke*. Boiled alive.

1797. *Wyrkez his ine wayfare*. Qu. *ine* his wayfare.

1840. *Lang ere*. The MS. reads *langere*, which may be right.

1842. *At* = *that* = *what*.

1899. *On lyfe* should be *of lyfe*.

1911. The line is incomplete ; add [many].

2070. *Reverssede it redelye*. Turned it, the eagle, over quickly.

2108. *Heyghe* = *heythe*, heath. Compare *trewhge* for *trewthe*.

2128. *Handsomere*, not more handsome, but more handy or convenient.

2189. *3ife the werlde happyne*. Qu. *welthe*.

2197. This line recurs at 4155.

2245. "Arthure!" *askryes*. Shouts "Arthur ;" but perhaps it should be simply *Arthure askryes*, Arthur shouts. Compare l. 1412.

2250. *Beblede at* should certainly be *Beblede al*.

2280. *Lyghte strandez*. This should perhaps be *lythe strandez*, as at 1517.

2295. *Heghte* = *heath*. See note on 2108.

2398. *I kepe noghte to layne.* I care not to concea..

2408. *Turkeyne* (so in MS.) is certainly a mistake for *Tuskayne*, Tuscany. Correct the sidenote accordingly.

2506. Insert [*of*] after *myste*, or else read *mysty*.

2519. *With birenne ony borne.* This is corrupt; no doubt the right reading is, *With-outene eny berne*.

2565. *Alet.* “Towards the close of the thirteenth century and not long after the commencement of the reign of Edward I., a new mode of protecting the neck was invented, which consisted of small plates of steel placed on the shoulders, sometimes called, from their resemblance to little standards, *Gonfanons*. They are likewise mentioned by the name of *aillettes*, or little wings, in that curious document of the sixth year of this monarch, relative to a tournament in Windsor Park; given in the XVIIIth volume of the *Archaeologia*; and in the *Statuta armorum in Torniamentis*, a few years after, by that of shoulder plates. . . . . They continued in fashion till the middle of the reign of Edward III. . . . . Their shape was . . . varied; they were square, round, pentagonal, and shieldlike; sometimes plain, but generally ornamented with the family arms, or the cross of St. George.”—Meyrick, in the *Archaeologia*, vol. xix, pp. 137, 138.

2577. It is well known that in early times barbers practised blood-letting; they would therefore, of course, know how to stanch blood.

2578. *Blyne schalle he neuer.* He shall never cease [to bleed].

2586. *Surgyone in Salarne.* Compare l. 4311 and *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, ll. 964 and 1033.

2616. *Cyrus witrye* should be *cyrqwitrye*. The letter *q* is raised a little and looks very much like the usual contraction for *us*. *Cyrqwitrye* = surquidry, arrogance, pride.

2675. This line is misplaced; it ought to follow line 2677.

2771. *Breste* seems to be a mistake for *brethe*, breath.

2934. *Fy a debles* seems to be meant for French. Fie, (go) to the devil.

3061. *Idene the.* The alliteration, at first sight, would seem to be on the *d* of this *idene* and of *dout*; but there is no reason why it may not be on the *i* of *idene* and the *e* of *elles*. *Idene*, if not a miswriting, may be the same as *iþenli*, frequently, in the following lines:—

“ þai þat war fild wit enst and hete  
 þat iþenli þair hertes etc,  
 þar wormes sal þam underwrote  
 In bale wituten hope and bote,  
 And for-þi þai her war wont to li  
 In þair stincand licheri,  
 Ne wald noght here bot þair delices  
 þat drogh þam until oper vices  
 þai sal haf iþen stinc iwiss  
 þat þai sal never mar mis.”—*Cursor Mundi*, as quoted

by Dr Morris in the preface to *Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, pp. x, xi.

*The* may be the verb *thee*, to thrive ; it was most likely mistaken for the article by the scribe, who wrote it with *y*. The meaning of the line would be, " He shall frequently thrive full well, fear nought else." This accords with the statement, l. 3056, that the king spoke to the duchess " myldly with fulle meke wordes."

3257. The word *With* clearly belongs to the line before. *With bruchez, &c.*

3282. *The two eyne.* This is clearly an error for " the tone eye " = (the) one eye. " One eye of the man was brighter than silver, the other was yellower than the yolk of an egg."

3439. *Nynne of the nobileste namede in erthe.* These were the Nine Worthies. The list agrees with that given in *Reliquiae Antiquae*, vol. i. p. 287.

Saraceni.	Judæi.
Ector, Alex., Julius; David, Josue, Machabæus;	
Cristiani.	

Artur cum Carolo, Galfridum linquere nolo :  
Isti sunt ter tres trini fidei meliores.

See Shakespere, *Love's Labour Lost*, Act 5, sc. 2.

3937. *Guchede.* I can make nothing of this word, the plain reading of the MS., unless it = gutted = *goutté*, dropped or spotted. At line 3759, we read that this king of Gothland " bare of gowles fulle gaye with gowces of syluere." *Gowces* I suppose to be miswritten for *gowtes*, drops, spots.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

---

<i>adj.</i> = adjective.	O.Fr. = Old French.
<i>adv.</i> = adverb.	O.N. = Old Norse.
A.S. = Anglo-Saxon.	p. = page.
<i>b.</i> = back.	<i>pl.</i> = plural.
col. = column.	2 <i>pl.</i> = second person plural.
<i>comp.</i> = comparative form.	pp. = pages.
Comp. = compare.	<i>p.p.</i> = past or passive participle.
<i>conj.</i> = conjunction.	<i>prep.</i> = preposition.
<i>ed.</i> = edited by.	<i>pres.</i> = present.
E. E. T. S. = Early English Text Society.	<i>pret.</i> = preterite.
Fr. = French.	<i>Prompt. Parv.</i> = <i>Promptorium Par-</i> vulorum.
<i>fut.</i> = future.	<i>pron.</i> = pronoun.
<i>gen.</i> = genitive case.	Qu. = Query.
Germ. = German.	<i>ref.</i> = reflexive.
Her. = Heraldry.	<i>s.</i> = substantive.
<i>imp.</i> = imperative.	1 <i>s.</i> = first person singular.
<i>impers. v.</i> = impersonal verb.	2 <i>s.</i> = second person singular.
<i>ind.</i> = indicative.	3 <i>s.</i> = third person singular
<i>inf.</i> = infinitive.	Sc. = Scotch.
<i>int.</i> = interjection.	<i>sg.</i> = singular.
<i>i. p.</i> = imperfect participle.	Span. = Spanish.
<i>l.</i> = line.	<i>subj.</i> = subjunctive.
Lat. = Latin.	<i>superl.</i> = superlative form.
ll. = lines.	tom. = tomo.
M.Goth. = Mæso-Gothic.	<i>v.</i> = verb.
O.E. = Old English.	vol. = volume.

The following works are indicated in the Index by their authors' names:—

Bosworth's Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary.

Brockett's Glossary of North Country Words.

Burguy's Glossary to his *Grammaire de la Langue d'Oil*.

Ducange's Glossarium Mediae et Infimae Latinitatis, ed. 1840.

Halliwell's Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words.

Jamieson's Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language.

Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane.

Stratmann's Dictionary of the Old English Language.

Verelius's Index linguæ veteris Seytho-Scandicæ sive Gothicæ, 1691.

CORRECTIONS.  
— — —

Page 2, sidenotes, for *Tours* read *Touraine*.  
" 2 " " *Aniana* read *Aniane*.  
" 2 " " *Naverne* read *Navarre*.  
" 3 " for the 2nd *Cuerleon* read *Carlisle*.  
" 7 " " *hams* read *shoulders*.  
" 7 " " *bustards* read *bitterns*.  
" 28, line 913, for *grayuez* read *graynez*.  
" 33, sidenotes, for *smoke* read *foam*.  
" 78, strike out the footnote.  
" 134, col. 1, line 23, for *Apulia* read *Poland*.



# Morte Arthure.

Here begynnes **Morte Arthure. In nomine Patris et**

[leaf 53]

**Filij et Spiritu Sancti. Amen pur charite. Amen.**

**N**ow grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluene,

And the precyous prayere of hys prys modyr,

The poet prays  
for grace,

Schelde vs ffro schamesdede and synfuller werkes,

And gyffe vs grace to gye, and gouerne vs here,

4

In this wrechydewerlde thorowe vertous lywynge,

That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdome of hevyne,

Whene oure saules schalle parte and sundyreffra the body,

Ewyre to belde and to byde in blysse wyth hym seluene; 8

And wysse me to werpe owte some worde at this tyme,

That nothyre voyde be ne vayne, bot wyrchip tille hym

and for power to  
write something  
profitable.

selvyne,

Plesande and profitabille to the popule that theme heres.

**3e** that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here,

12

Ye that list to  
hear of elders  
of old time,

Off elders of alde tyme and of theire awke dedys,

How they were lele in theire lawe, and louede God Al-

myghty,

Herkynes me heynndlly and holdys 3ow styll,

hearken to a tale  
of the Round  
Table.

And I salle telle 3ow a tale, that trewe es and nobylle, 16

Off the ryealle renkys of the Rownnde Table,

That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobylle,

These knights  
were noble, wise,  
and brave,

Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse mene of armes,

Doughty in theire doyngs, and dredde ay schame, 20

kind, and courteous, and worshipful.

They slew Lu-  
cius, lord of  
Rome, and won  
his kingdom.

Hear now the  
story.

When King Ar-  
thur had won  
many kingdoms  
and countries,

Argyle, Orkney,  
and the isles,

Ireland and Scot-  
land,  
Wales, Flanders,  
and France,

had made tribu-  
tary Holland and  
Hainault, Bur-  
gundy and Bra-  
bant, Brittany,  
Guisenne, Goth-  
land and Greece,  
he occupied  
Bayonne and  
Bordeaux, Tours  
and Toulouse.

He was prince of  
Poictiers and  
[leaf 53, back]  
Provence, of Va-  
lence and Vienne,  
of Erugia and  
Aniana, of Na-  
verne and Nor-  
way and Nor-  
mandy.

Of Germany, of  
Austria, and  
many other  
lands.

He conquered all  
Denmark with  
his sword.  
Then he dubbed  
his knights and  
gave them lands.

Created kings  
anointed.

Then rested the  
hero, and held the  
Round Table.

After solacing  
himself in Bri-

Kynde mene and courtays, and couthe of courte thewes ;  
How they whanne wytli were wyrchippis many,  
Slouge Lucyus *the lythyre*, that lorde was of Rome,  
And conqueryd that kynghryke thorowe craftys of armes ;  
Herkenes now hedyrwarde, and herys this storie. 25  
Q wenethat the kynge Arthur by conqueste hadewonnyne  
Castelles and kyngdoms, and contreez many,  
And he had couerede the coroune of the kyth ryche, 28  
Of alle that Vter in erthe aughte in his tyme,  
Orgayle and Orkenay, and alle this owte-iles,  
Irelande vttirly, as Occyane rynnys ;  
Seathylle Scottlande by skylle he skyftys as hym lykys,  
And Wales of were he wane at hys wille, 33  
Bath fflaundrez and ffraunce fre til hym seluyne ;  
Holaund and Henawde they helde of hym bothen,  
Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayne the lesse, 36  
Gyane and Gothelande, *and* Grece the ryche ;  
Bayone and Burdeux he beldytt fulle faire,  
Turoyne and Tholus with toures fulle hye ;  
Off Peyters and of Prouynce he was prynce holdyne, 40  
Of Valence *and* Vyenue, off value so noble,  
Of Eruge *and* Anyone, thos erledoms ryche ;  
By conqueste fulle cruelle they knewe hym fore lorde,  
Of Nauerne and Norwaye, *and* Normaundye eke, 44  
Of Almayne, of Estriche, and other ynowe ;  
Danmarke he dryssede alle by drede of hym seluyne,  
ffra Swynne vnto Swetherwyke, with his swerde<sup>1</sup> kene !  
Qwenne he thes dedes had done, he doulbyd hys knyghtez,  
Dyuysyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmises ; 49  
Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,  
In kyth there they couaitte crounes to bere.  
Whene he thys<sup>2</sup> rewnies hade redyne *and* rewlyde the  
popule, 52

Then rystede that ryalle and helde *the Rounde Tabylle* ;  
Suggeours that sesone to solace hym seluene,  
In Bretayne *the braddere*, as hym beste lykes ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. swrede.

<sup>2</sup> Or thes.

Sythyne wente in-to Wales with his wyes alle, 56 tain, he goes into Wales,  
 Sweys in-to Swalde with his snelle houndes, to hunt the hart with his swift hounds,  
 For to hunt at the hartes in thas hye lanndes, and in Glamorgan founds Caerleon upon Usk.

In Glamorgane with glee, thare gladchipe was euere. 60  
 And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys  
 That Caerlyone was callid, with curius walles,  
 On the riche reuare *that rynnys so faire*,  
 There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenne hym lykyde ;

Than aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynmese he haldes, 64 At Caerleon he holds high festival at Christmastide with his lords and bishops.  
 This ilke kyde conquerour, and helde hym for lorde,  
 Wyth dukez and dusperes of dyuers rewmes,  
 Erles and ercheuesques, and other ynowe,  
 Byschopes and bachelers, and banerettes nobille, 68  
 That bowes to his banere, buske whene hym lykys :  
 Bot on the Cristynmesdaye, whenethey were alle semblyde,  
 That comlyche conquerour commaundez hym seluyne  
 That ylke a lorde sulde lenge, and no lefe take, 72 and bids none depart from the feast till ten days are expired.  
 To the tende day fully ware takyne to the ende.  
 Thus one ryalle araye he helde his Rounde Table,  
 With semblant and solace and selcouthe metes ;  
 Whas neuer syche<sup>1</sup> noblay, in no manys tyme, 76 Never was so noble a feast known.  
 Mad in mydwynter in tha weste marchys !

**B**ot on the newȝere daye, at the none euyne, But on New Year's day, as the knights were feasting,  
 As the bolde at the borde was of brede seruyde, suddenly a Senator of Rome, [leaf 54]  
 So come in sodanly a senatour of Rome, 80 attended by sixteen knights.  
 Wyth sextene knyghtes in a soyte, sewande hym one. He salutes King Arthur and his knights,  
 He saluzed the souerayne and the sale aftyry, 84 and Guinevere the Queen.

Ilke a kynge aftyre kynge, and mad his enclines ;  
 Gaynour in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde, 84  
 And syne agayne to the gome he gaffe vp his nedys :  
 "Sir Lucius Iberius, the Emperour of Rome,  
 Saluz the as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche ;  
 It es credens, sir kynge, with cruelle wordez, 88 Then, in the name of Sir Lucius Iberius, the Emperor of Rome,

Trow it for no trufles, his targe es to schewe !  
 Now in this newȝers daye with notaries sygne,

<sup>1</sup> *swyche* struck out, and *syche* written instead.

he summons Arthur to appear at Rome on Lammas day,

to answer why he occupies his lands instead of paying homage to him,

and how he dare rebel against him.

But if Arthur will not come, the Emperor will invade his land and take him captive,

and destroy him wherever he may fly.

The Register of Rome declares that Arthur's father paid tribute, which was won by Julius Caesar and his gentle knights.

Then did King Arthur look with ferocious glance on the Senator.

[leaf 54, back]

So terrible was his face that the Romans quailed before him.

I make the somouns in sale to sue for *thi landys*,  
 That on Lammesse daye thare be no lette ffoudene, 92  
*That thow bee redy at Rome with alle thi Rounde Table,*  
*Appere in his presens with thy price knyghtez,*  
*At pryme of the daye, in Payne of 3our lyvys,*  
*In the kydde Capytoile before the kyng selyne,* 96  
*Whene he and his senatours bez sette as them lykes,*  
*To ansuere anely why thow occupytes the lanndez,*  
*That awe homage of alde tille hym and his eldyrs;*  
*Why thow has redyne and raymede, and raunsound the*  
*pople,* 100  
*And kyllide doune his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttide;*  
*Thare schalle thow gyffe rekkyngynge for alle thy Round*  
*Table,*  
*Why thow arte rebelle to Rome, and rentez theme*  
*wytholdez!*  
*Ifi thow theis somouns wythysytte, he sendes thi thies*  
*wordes,* 104  
*He sallle the seke ouer the see wyth sextene kynges,*  
*Bryne Bretayne the brade, and brytayne thy knyghtys,*  
*And brynge the bouxsomly as a beste with brethe whare*  
*hym lykes,*  
*That thow ne schalle rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene*  
*ryche,* 108  
*Thofe thow for reddour of Rome ryne to the erthe!*  
*for if thow flee in-to Fraunce or ffreselannd owther,*  
*Thou sallle be fechede with force, and ouersette fore euer!*  
*Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde in oure rollez,* 112  
*In the regestre of Rome, who so ryghte lukez:*  
*With-owtayne more trouflynge the tribute we aske,*  
*That Julius Cesar wane wyth his ientille knyghtes!"*  
*THE kynge blyschit one the beryne with his brodeeghine,*  
*That fulle brymly for breth brynte as the gledys;*  
*Keste colours as kynge with crouelle lates,* 118  
*Luked as a lyone, and on his lyppe bytes!*  
*The Romaynes for radnesse ruschte to the erthe,*  
*ffore ferdnesse of hys face, as they fey were;*

Cowchide as kenetez be-fore *the kynge* seluyne,  
Be-cause of his contenaunce confusede theme semede !

Thene couerd vp a knyghte, *and* criede ful lowde,<sup>1</sup> 124

“ Kynge corounede of kynd, curtays and noble,  
Misdoo no messangere for menske of *thi* seluyne,

Thin one of them  
humbly entreats  
me:ey.

Sen we are in thy mañrede, and mercy *the* besekes ;

We lenge with *sir* Lucius, that lorde es of Rome, 128

That es *the* meruelyousteste mane *that* on molde lengez ;

It es lefulle tille vs his likynge tille wyrche ;<sup>2</sup>

We come at his commaundment ; haue vs excusede.”

Then carpys *the* conquerour crewelle wordez,— 132

“ Haa ! crauaunde knyghte ! a cowarde *the* semez !

Upon which Ar-  
thur upbraids  
him as a coward.

*Thare* [is] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare  
greuede,

Thow durste noghte for<sup>3</sup> alle Lumberdye luke one hym  
ones.”

“ Sir,” sais *the* senatour, “ so Crist mott me helpe, 136

*The* voute of thi vesage has woundyde vs alle !

But the Senator  
excuses him on  
the ground that  
Arthur's visage is  
very terrible.

Thow arte *the* lordlyeste lede *that* euer I one lukyde ;

By lukynge, with-owtynne lesse, a lyone the semys !”

“ Thow has me somonde,” *quod* *the* kynge, “ *and* said  
what *the* lykes ;<sup>4</sup> 140

ffore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre the the more ;

Sen I corounde in kyth wyth crysume enoyntede,

Was neuer creature to me *that* carpede so large !

Bot I salle tak concelle at kynges enoyntede,

144 The King tells  
him that he will  
take counsel of  
his dukes, doc-  
tors, peers, and  
knights,

Off dukes *and* duspers and doctours noble,

Offe peres of *the* parlement, prelates *and* other,

Off *the* richeste renkys of *the* Rounde Table ;

*Thus* schalle I take avisemente of valiant beryns, 148

Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyes knyghttes :

To warpe wordez in waste no wyrchipe it were,

Ne wilfully in *this* wrethe to wrekene my seluene. 151

ffor-*thi* salle thow lenge here, *and* lugge wyth *thise* lordes,

while the Ro-  
mans stay a week

<sup>1</sup> *hyghe* struck out, and *lowde* written instead.

<sup>2</sup> *schewe* struck out, and *wyrche* written instead.

<sup>3</sup> *MS. fulle.*      <sup>4</sup> *Likyde* struck out, and *lykes* written instead.

to refresh themselves.

Sir Cayous is bid to entertain the lords,

[leaf 55]  
and their horses.

He was not to spare, but to feast them liberally.

Then were they quickly harbour'd within the high walls.

In chambers with chimneys they changed their weeds.

The Senator sat at the King's table, and was served like himself,

for the Romans are of the most royal blood on earth.

Boars' heads there were served upon silver by numerous gaily-dressed attendants.

Venison, fatted and wild, with choice birds,

peacocks and plovers upon golden plates,

great swans in silver chargers,

This seuenyghte in solace, to suggourne *your* horses,  
To see whatte lyfe *that* wee leede in thees lawe lanndes.<sup>7</sup>  
ffor by *the* realtee of Rome, *that* recheste was euere,  
He commande *sir Cayous*, "take kepe to thoos lordez, 156  
To styghtylle *tha* steryne mene as theire statte askys,  
That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambres,  
Sythine sittandly in sale seruyde ther-aftyr ;  
That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez, 160  
Nowthire weyne, ne waxe, ne welthe in *this* erthe ;  
Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what *the* lykys,  
That there be largesce one lofte, and no lake foundene ;  
If *thou* my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe, 164  
*Thou* sall haue gersoms fulle grett, *that* gayne sall *the*  
euere ! "

**N**ow er they herberde in hey, *and* in oste holdene,  
Hastyly wyt̄h hende mene with-in thees heghe wallez ;  
In chambrys with chympnes they chaungene theire wedez,  
And sythyne the chauncelere theme fecchede with che-  
ualrye<sup>1</sup> noble. 169

Sone *the* senatour was sett, as hym wele semyde,  
At *the* kyngez ownne borde ; twa knyghtes hym seruede,  
Singulere sothely, as Arthure hym seluyne, 172  
Richely on *the* ryghte hannde at the Rounde Table ;  
Be resounе *that* *the* Romaynes whare so ryche holdene,  
As of *the* realeste blode *that* reynede in erthe. 175

There come in at *the* fyrste course, be-for *the* kyngeseluenе,  
Barcheuedys *that* ware bryghte, burnyste with syluer,  
Alle with taghte mene and towne in togers fulle ryche,  
Of saunke realle in suyte, sixty at ones ;  
fflesch fluriste of fermysone with frumentee noble, 180  
Ther-to wylde to wale, and wynlyche bryddes,<sup>2</sup>

Pacokes and plouers in platers of golde,  
Pygges of porke despynе, *that* pastured neuer ;  
Sythene herons in hedoyne, hyled fulle faire ; 184  
Grett swannes fulle swytlie in silueryne chargeours,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *chelualrye*.

<sup>2</sup> *bredes* struck out, and *bryddes* written instead.

Tartes of Turky, taste whame theme lykys ; tarts of turkey,

Gumbaldes graythely, fulle gracious to taste ;

Seyne bowes of wylde bores with the braune lechydye,

Bernakes and botures in baterde dysches, 189 hams and brawn  
in slices,  
geese and  
bustards.

Thareby braunchers in brede, bettyr was neuer,

With bresteze of barowes, *that* bryghte ware to schewe ;

Seyne come *ther* sewes sere, with solace *ther*-after, 192 Then came  
'sewes sere,'

Ownde of azure alle ouer and ardant them semyde,

Of ilke a leche *the* lowe launschide fulle hye,

*That* alle ledes myghte lyke *that* lukyde theme apone ;

Thane cranes and curlues craftyly rosted, 196 then cranes and  
curlews craftily  
roasted,

Connygez in cretoyne coloured fulle faire,

ffesauntez enflureschit in flammende siluer,

With darielles endordide, and daynteez ynewe ;

Thane clarett and Creette, clergyally rennene, 200 pheasants upon  
flashing silver,  
'dariels' and  
many other  
dainties.  
Wine caused to  
[leaf 55, back]  
run skilfully in  
silver conduits.

With condethes fulle curios alle of clene siluyre ;

Osay a[n]d algarde, and *other* ynewe,

Rynisch wyne and Rochelle, richere was neuer ;

Vernage of Venyce vertuouse and Crete ; 204 Rare sorts served  
in cups of fine  
gold.

In faucetez of fyne golde, fonode who so lykes ;

The kyngez cope-borde was closed in siluer,

In grete goblettez ouergylte glorious of hewe ;

There was a cheeffe buttlere, a cheualere noble, 208 The King's cup-  
board was glori-  
ous with plate.

Sir Cayous the curtaise, *that* of the cowpe seruede ;

Sexty cowpes of suyte fore the kyng seluyne,

Crafty and curious, coruene fulle faire,

In euer-ilk a party pyghte with precyous stones, 212 The chief butler  
was Sir Cayous,  
who served the  
wine in goblets  
decked with pre-  
cious stones,  
which hinder the  
deadly effects of  
poison.

That nane empoysons sulde goo preuely *ther*-vndyre,

Bot *the* bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces,

Or ells *the* venyme sulde voyde thurgh the vertue of *the* stones ;

And the conquerour hymseluene, so clenly arayede, 216 Arthur was clad  
in cloth of gold  
with his crown  
on; the doughti-  
est knight that  
dwelt on earth.

In colours of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttys,

Drissid with his dyademe one his deesse ryche,

ffore he was demydeth the doughtyestethat duellyde in ertthe.

Thane the conquerour kyndly carpede to those lordes,

Rehetede the Romaynes with realle speche, 221 Then he spake  
courteous words  
to those lords.

"Sirs, be of good cheer, we give you the best our barren country affords, which indeed is but poor."

"Sir," says the Senator, "Rome itself can show nothing equal to this luxurious feast."

Then they washed and withdrew to the chamber.

Sir Gawain leads Guinevere.

Spiced drinks were served to all.

Certain lords were assigned to attend upon the Senator.

Arthur goes to council in the Giant's tower,

with his lords, justices, judges, and gentle knights.

[leaf 56]  
First speaks Sir Cador of Cornwall.

The letters of Sir Lucius, he says, lighten his heart.

They had too long lived a life of inglorious peace.

"Sirs, bez knyghtly of contenaunce, *and* comfurthes ȝour seluyn,

We knowe noghte in *this* countré of curious metez ;  
In thees barayne landez, bredes none *other*, 224  
ffore-thy wythowttyne feynynge, enforce ȝow *the*<sup>1</sup> more  
To feede ȝow with syche feble as ȝe be-fore fynde."

"Sir," sais *the* senatour, "so Criste motte me helpe !  
There ryngnede neuer syche realtee with-in Rome walles !  
There ne es prelate, ne pape, ne prynce in *this* erthe,  
That he ne<sup>2</sup> myghte bewele payede of *thees* prycy metes!"

A ftyre theyre welthe they wesche, *and* went vn-to  
A chambrye,

*This* ilke kyddē conquerour with knyghtes ynnewe ; 232  
Sir Gaywayne *the* worthye Dame Waynour he ledys ;  
Sir Owghtreth on *the* tother syde, of Turry was lorde.  
Thane spyces vn-sparyly thay spendyde there-aftyre,  
Maluesye *and* muskadelle, thase meruelyous drynkes,  
Raykede fulle rathely in rossete cowpes, 237  
Tille alle *the* riche on rawe, Romaynes *and* other.

Bot the soueraingne sothely, for solaunce of hym seluene,  
Assingnyde to *the* senatour certaygne lordes,  
To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes, 241  
With myrthe *and* with melodye of mynstralsy noble.

Thane *the* conquerour to concelle cayres there-aftyre,  
Wyt̄h lordes of his lygeaunce *that* to hym selfe langys ;  
To *the* geauntes toure iolily he wendes, 245  
Wyt̄h justicez *and* iūggez, and gentille knyghtes.

Sir Cador of Cornewayle to *the* kynge carppe,  
Lughe one hym luffly with lykande lates,— 248  
"I thanke Gode of *that* thraa *that* vs thus thretys !

ȝow moste be traylede, I trowe, bot ȝife ȝe trett bettyre :  
*The* lettres of sir Lucius lygghtys myne herte !

We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye, 252  
Wyt̄h delyttes in *this* lande with lordchipez many,  
And forelytenede the loos *that* we are layttede :

I was abaischite, be oure Lorde, of oure beste bernes,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *the* ȝow.

<sup>2</sup> MS. ne he.

ffore gret dule of deffuse of dedez of armes ! 256

Now wakkenyse *the* were ! wyrchipide be Cryste !

And we salle wynne it ag[a]yne be wyghtnesse and  
strenghe !”

He rejoices to  
return again to  
deeds of arms.

“Sir Cadour,” quod *the* kyng, “ thy concelle es noble, The king praises  
Bot thou arte a meruailous mane with thi mery wordez ! Sir Cadur for his  
bold words,

for thou countez no caas, ne castes no forthire, 261 spoken from his  
Bot hurles furthe appone heuede, as thi herte thynkes ; heart without  
thought or care.

I moste trette of a trew towchande *thise* nedes,

Talke of thies tythdands *that* tenes myne herte ; 264 He himself is  
*Thou* sees *that* the emperor es angerde a lyttile ; grieved at these  
tidings.

Yt semes be his sandismene *that* he es sore greuede ;

His senatour has sommonde<sup>1</sup> me, and said what hym  
lykyde,

Hethely in my halle, wyt[h] heynzous wordes, 268 He has been in-  
In speche dissphysede me, and sparede me lyttile ; sulted in his own  
I myght noghte speke for spytte, so my herte trymblyde ! hall by heinous  
He askyde me tyrauntly tribute of Rome,  
and insolently summoned to  
That tenefully tynt was in tyme of myne elders ; 272 pay tribute to  
There alyenes, in absence of alle mene of armes,  
Couserde it of commons, as eronicles telles ;  
He the Emperor of  
Rome,

I haue title to take tribute of Rome,  
Myne ancestres ware emperours, and aughte it theme  
seluene, 276 of whom he ought  
rather to demand  
tribute.

Belyne and Bremyne, and Bawdewyne the thyrde,

They occupyede *the* empyre aughte score wynnityrs, His ancestors oc-  
Ilkane ayere aftyre other, as awlde mene telles ;  
Thei couerde *the* Capitoile, and keste doun *the* walles ;  
His ancestors oc-  
cupied the Em-  
pire of Rome  
eight score  
winter..

Hyngede of *theire* heddys-mene by huñdrethes at ones ;

Seyne Constantyne, our kynsmane, conquerid it aftyre, His kinsman,  
*That* ayere was of Ynglande, and emperour of Rome, Constantine,  
afterwards sub-  
dued it—

He that conquerid *the* crosse be craftez of armes, 284 he who gained  
That Criste was on crucifiede, *that* kyng es of heuene ; by conquest the  
Thus hafe we euydens to aske *the* emperour *the* same,  
That thus regnez at Rome, whate ryghte that he  
claymes.”

His kinsman,  
Constantine,  
afterwards sub-  
dued it—  
he who gained  
by conquest the  
true Cross.

<sup>1</sup> Or somounde.

Then answered  
King Aungers  
and said that Arthur  
ought to be  
supreme over all  
kings.

[leaf 56, back]

The Romans had  
done many evil  
deeds in Scotland,

for which he  
would have re-  
venge.

He promises to  
bring 50,000 men  
to aid Arthur.

The king of  
little Britain  
would have Arthur  
return a  
fierce answer.

He fears the Romans  
no whit.

He promises to  
bring 30,000  
knights within a  
month.

**T**han answarde kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluyne,  
“Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle other  
kyngeſ, 289  
ffore wyſeſte, and worthyeſte, and wyghteſte of hanndes,  
The knyghtlyeſte of counſaile *that euer* corone bare ;  
I dare ſaye fore Scottlande, *that* we theme ſchathe  
lympyde, 292  
Whene *the* Romayneſ regnede, *thay* raunſounde oure  
eldyrs,  
And rade in theiſe ryotte, and rauyschett oure wyeſeſ,  
With-owttyne reſone or ryghte reſte vs oure gudeſ ;  
And I ſalle make myne avowe deuotly to Crieſte, 296  
And to *the* haly vernacle, vertuous and noble,  
Of thiſ grett velany I ſalle be vengede onēſ  
On ȝone venemus mene, wythi valiant knyghteſ !  
I ſalle the forthire of defence fosterde yneweſ, 300  
ffifti thowsande mene, wythi in two eldeſ,  
Of my wage for to wende, whare ſo the lykeſ,  
To fyghte wythi thy ffaa mene, *that* vs unfaire ledeſ.”  
**T**han the burlycyhe beryne of Bretayne *the* lyttylle  
Counſayles ſir Arthure, and of hyme beſekys 305  
To anſuere the alyeneſ wythi auſterene wordes,  
To entyce the emperour to take ouere the mountteſ.  
He ſaid, “ I make myne avowe verreſilly to Cryste, 308  
And to *the* haly vernacle, *that* voide ſchalle I neuere,  
ffor radneſſe of na Romayne *that* regneſ in erthe ;  
Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areſte ffoundene,  
No more dowtte the dynte of theiſe derfe wapyns, 312  
*T*han the dewe *that* es dannke, whene *that* it doune ffalleſ ;  
Ne no more ſchoune<sup>1</sup> fore *the* ſwape of theiſe ſcharpe  
ſuerdeſ,  
Then fore *the* faireſte flouſ thatt on the folde groweſ !  
I ſalle to batelle the bryngye, of brenyede knyghteſ 316  
Thyrtty thosannde be tale, thryftyne in armes,  
Wythi in a monethe daye in-to whatte marche,  
*That* thow wylle ſothelye assygne, whene thy ſelfe lykeſ.”

<sup>1</sup> Or ſchonne.

“A ! A !” sais *the Walsche kynge*, “wirchipid be Criste !  
Now schalle we wreke fulle wele *the wrethe of oure*  
elders !

321

Then Arthur ex-  
claims Ah ! ah !  
Now shall we  
have revenge.

In West Walys i-wysse syche wonndyrs *thay wroghte*,  
*That alle for wandrethe may wepe, that one that were*  
*thynkes.*

I salle haue the avanttwarde wytterly my seluene, 324

*Tylle that I haue venquiste the Vicounte of Rome,*  
*That wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones,*

As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble ; 327

*He was in Tuskayne that tyne, and tuke of oure knyghtes,*  
*Areste theme vnrygħt twyslye, and raunsounde thame*  
*aftyre ;*

He himself would  
fight at the head  
of his army till  
he had revenged  
himself on the  
Viscount of Rome  
for a villainy he  
once wrought  
him at Viterbo.

I salle hym surelye ensure, *that saghetylle saller we neuer,*  
*Are we sadlye assemble by oure selfene ones,*

And dele dynntys of dethe with oure derfe wapyns ! 332

And I saller wagge to *that were of wyrechipfulle knyghtes,*  
*Of Wyghte and of Walschelande, and of the Weste*  
*Marches,*

He would take  
two thousand  
worshipful  
knights.

Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys,  
Of the wyghteste wyes in alle ȝone weste landys !” 336

**S**yre Ewane fytz Vryenec<sup>1</sup> thane egerly fraynez,  
Was cosyne to *the conquerour, courageous hymselfene,*  
“Sir, and we wiste ȝour wylle, we walde wirke *ther-*  
aftyre ;

Then spoke Sir  
Ewayne and said  
that they would  
all follow his  
command gladly.

ȝif this journee sulde halde, or be ajournede forthyre,  
To ryde one ȝone Romaynes and ryott theire landez,  
We walde schape vs there-fore to schippe whene ȝow  
lykys.”

“Cosyne,” quod *the conquerour*, “kyndly thou asches ;  
ȝife my concelle accord to conquerre ȝone landez, 344

Then said Ar-  
thur,

By *the kalendez of Iuny* we schalle encountre ones,  
Wyth fulle creuelle knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe !  
There-to make I myne avowe devoutly to Cryste,  
And to *the holy vernacle, vertuous and noble,* 348

“We will be  
ready by the ka-  
lendez of June,

I saller at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large

and at Lammes-  
sue will enjoy our-

<sup>1</sup> Read Vryence.

selves in Lorraine or Lombardy, whethire me leue thynkys ;  
 Merke vn-to Meloyne, and myne dounē *the wallez*,  
 Bathe of Petyrsande, *and* of Pys, and of the Pounte  
 Tremble, 352

sojourn six weeks in the Vale of Viterbo.  
 send riders to Rome and lay there a siege, unless they offer peace.”

Then Sir Ewayne vows vengeance against the Emperor of Rome for occupying Arthur's heritage,

and promises 50,000 men on fair steeds.

Then Lancelot declares his satisfaction at the war.

He is ready to joust with the Emperor himself.

[leaf 57, back]  
 and to carry the war into Rome.

In *the Vale of Viterbe* vetaile my knyghttes,  
 Suggourne there sex wokes *and* solace my selfene ;  
 Send prekers to *the* price tounē, and plaunte there my segge,  
 Bot if thay profre me *the* pece be processe of tyme.” 356

“ Certys,” sais *sir* Ewayne, “ and I avowe aftyre,  
 And I *that* hathelle may see euer *with* myne eghīn,  
 That occupies thine heritage, *the* empypere of Rome,  
 I sallē auntyre me anes hys egle to touche, 360

*That* borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche,  
 And raas it frome his riche mene, and ryfe it in sondyre,  
 Bot he be redily reschowede *with* riotous knyghtez ;  
 I sallē enforsse ȝowe in *the* felde *with* fresche mene of armes, 364

ffyfty thosande folke apone faire stedyd,  
 On thi ffoo mene to fooñde, there the faire thynkys,  
 In ffraunce or in ffriselande, feghte whene *the* lykes !”

“ By oure Lorde,” quod *sir* Launcelott, “ now lyghtys myne herte ! 368

I loue Gode of *this* loue<sup>1</sup> *this* lordes has avowede !  
 Nowe may lesse mene haue leue to say whatt themē lykes,  
 And hafe no lettyñg be lawe, bot lystynnys *thise* wordez ;  
 I sallē be at journee *with* gentille knyghtes, 372

On a jamby stede fulle jolyly graythide,  
 Or any journee be-gane to juste *with* hym selfene,  
 Emange alle his geauntez genyuers and other,  
 Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, *with* strenghe of myne handys, 376

ffor alle *tha* steryne in stour, *that* in his stale houys !  
 Be my retenu arayede, I rekke bott a lyttile  
 To make rowtē in-to Rome, *with* ryotous knyghtes !  
 With-in a seuenyghte daye, *with* sex score helmes, 380

<sup>1</sup> *Or perhaps, lone.*

I sall be seen on the see, saile whene *the lykes.*"

**T**hanе laughes *sir Lottez*, and alle one lowde meles,  
"Me likez that *sir Lucius* lannges aftyre sorowe ;

Sir Lottez laughs  
for joy,

Now he wylnez *the were*, hys wanedrethe begynnys, 384

It es owre weredes to wreke the wrethe of oure elders !

I make myne a-vowe to Gode, and to *the holy vernacle*,

And I may se *the Romaynes*, that are so ryche haldene, and hopes to see  
Arayede in *theire riotes* on a rounde felde, 388 the rich Romans  
in their pomp,

I sall at *the reuerence* of *the Rounde Table*

Ryde thrughte alle *the rowtte*, rerewardre *and other*,

Redy wayes to make, and renkkes fulle rowme,

Rynnande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez ! 392

that he may cut  
his way through  
them and shed  
their blood.

He that folowes my fare, and fyrste commes aftyre,

Salle fynde in my fare-waye manye ffay leuyde !"

Thane *the conquerour* kyndly comforthes *these knyghtes*,

Allowes *thaime* gretly *theire lordly a-vowes*,— 396

Then Arthur  
praises his  
knights for up-  
holding his  
honour.

"Alweldande Gode wyrchipe *ȝow alle* !

And latte me neuere wannte *ȝow*, whylls I in werlde

regne ;

My menske and my manhede *ȝe* mayntene in erthe,

Myne honour alle vtterly in *other* kyngys landes ; 400

My wele and my wyrchipe, of alle *this werlde* ryche,

*ȝe* haue knyghtly conqueryde, *that* to my coroune langes ;

Hym thare be ferde for no faees, *that* swylke a folke ledes,

Bot euer ffresche for to fyghte, in felde whene hym lykes.

I acounte no kynge *that* vndyr Criste lyffes, 405

While they re-  
main true to him  
he fears no king  
on earth.

Whilles I see *ȝowe alle* sounde, I sette be no more."

**Q**whene they tristily had tretyd, *thay* trumppede vp  
aftyre,

Then the Council  
breaks up.

Descendyd doun with a daunce of dukes and erles ; 408

Music and  
dancing succeed,

Thane *they* semblede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,

and they are all  
feasted in the  
hall.

Alle *this* semly sorte, wyt̄h semblante fulle noble.

Thene the roy realle rehetes thes knyghtys,

Wyt̄h reuerence and ryotte of alle his Rounde Table, 412

Tille seuen dayes was gone : *the* senatour askes

After seven days  
the Senator de-  
mands his answer  
for the Emperor.

Answeare to *the* emperour with austeryne wordez.

Aftyre *the* Epiphanye, whene *the* purpos was takyne

Of peris of *the parlement, prelates and other.* 416

The kyng in his concelle, curtaise and noblee,

Vtters *the alienes, and ansuers hym seluene :—*

Then Arthur bids  
him greet Lucius  
and tell him that  
he shall quickly  
see him in his  
country;

that he will hold  
his Round Table  
by the river  
Rhone,

[leaf 58]

and mine down  
the walls of  
Milan,

ravage Tuscany  
with his knights,

he will be found  
in France on the  
first of February,

and before seven  
winters are gone  
besiege Rome,

and many a sen-  
ator shall rue his  
wrath.

The messenger  
may depart as  
soon as he  
pleases.

He must travel  
to Sandwich in  
seven days,

If e *thow be lygmane<sup>1</sup> lele, late hym wiet sone* 420

I *salle at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large*

*In delitte in his landez, wyt̄h lordes ynewe,*

*Regne in my realtee, and ryste whene me lykes,*

*By the reyuere of Reone halde my Rounde Table,* 424

*ffanngē the fermes in faithe<sup>2</sup> of alle tha faire rewmes,*

*ffor alle the manace of hys myghte, and mawgree his  
eḡhne !*

*And merke sythene ouer the mounttez in-to his mayne  
londez,* 427

*To Meloyne the meruaylous, and myne dounē the walles ;*

*In Lorrayne ne in Lumberdye lefe schalle I nowthire*

*Nokyne lede appone liffe, that thare his lawes ȝemes ;*

*And turne in-to Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,*

*Ryde alle thas rowme landes wyt̄h ryotous knyghttes ;*

*Byde hy[m] make reschewes foremenske of hym seluene,*

*And mette me fore his manhede in thase mayne landes !*

*I salle be foundyne in Fraunce, fraiste whene hym lykes,*

*The fyrske daye of Feuerȝere, in thas faire marches !* 436

*Are I be fechydē wyt̄h force, or forfette my landes,*

*The flour of his faire folke fulle fay salle be leuyde !*

*I salle hym sekyrly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,*

*To seige the cetee of Rome wyt̄h-in seuene wyntyre,* 440

*And that so sekerly ensege apone sere halves,*

*That many a senatour salle syghe for sake of me one !*

*My sommons er certifiede and thow arte fulle sernyde*

*Of cuñdit and credense, kayre where the lykes :* 444

*I salle thi journaye engyste, enjoynē theme my seluene,*

*ffro this place to the porte, there thou salle passe ouer ;*

*Seuene dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,*

*Sexty myle on a daye, the somme es bott lyttile !* 448

<sup>1</sup> Or leygmane.

<sup>2</sup> Or fatthe.

Thowe moste sped at the spurs, and spare noghte thi fole,  
 Thow weyndez by Watlyng-strette, and by nowaye elles : 452  
 Thare thou nyghtes one nyghte, nedez moste *thou* lenge,  
 Be it foreste or felde, found *thou* no forthire ;  
 Bynde thy blonke by a buske with thy brydille euene,  
 Lugge *thi* selfe vndyre lynde, as *the* leefe thynkes,  
 There awes none alyenes to ayere appone nyghtys,  
 With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluene. 456  
 Thy lycence es lemete in presence of lordys,  
 Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as *the* thynkes,  
 For bothe *thi* lyffe and thi lyme lygges *ther*-appone,  
 Thoſe sir Lucius had laide *the* lordchipe of Rome ; 460  
 ffor be *thow* foundene a fute with-owte *the* flode merkes,  
 Aftyr *the* aughtende day, whene vndroune es rungene,  
 Thou sall be heuedede in hye, and with horsse drawene,  
 And seyne heyl be hangede, houndes to gnawene ! 464  
 The rente ne rede golde, *that* vn-to Rome langes,  
 Salle noghte redily, renke, raunsone thyne one !”  
 “Sir,” sais *the* senatour, “so Crist mot me helpe !  
 Might I with wirchipe wyne awaye ones, 468  
 I sulde neuer fore emperour, *that* on erthe lenges,  
 Efte vnto Arthure ayere one syche nedys ;  
 Bot I am sengilly here, with sex sum of knyghtes ;  
 I be-seke ȝow, sir, that we may sounde passe : 472  
 If any vnlawefulle lede lette vs by *the* waye,  
 With-in thy lycence, lorde, thy loosse es enpeyred.”  
 “Care noghte,” quod the kynge, “thy eoundyte es [leaf 58, back]  
 knawene  
 ffro Carlelele to *the* coste, there thy cogge lengges ; 476  
 Thoghe thy cofers ware fulle, cramede with syluer,  
 Thow myghte be sekyre of my scle sixty myle forthire.”  
 They enclined to *the* kynge, and coungé *thay* askede,  
 Cayers owtt of Carelele, catchez one theire horsez ; 480  
 Sir Cadore *the* curtayes kende theme the wayes,  
 To Catrike theme curvayede, and to Crist theme  
 bekennyde.  
 So *they* sped at *the* spoures, *they* sprangene theire horses,

going by Wat-  
ling-street,  
stopping at night  
wherever he may  
chance to be,  
tying his horse  
to a bush by the  
bridle.

If after underin  
of the eighth day  
he is found in the  
country, he shall  
be hanged up for  
dogs to gnaw.

Then the Senator  
declares that if  
he could only get  
well away once,  
he would never  
again go on such  
an errand.

He prays that his  
retinue may be  
protected on their  
way.

Then Arthur tells  
him that if his  
coffers were  
crammed full of  
silver he would  
be safe with his  
passport.

Then the Romans  
depart with all  
speed,

Hyres *theme* hakenayes hastyly *there-aftyre* ; 184

and never rest till  
they reach Sand-  
wich by the time  
prescribed.

So fore reddour *they redene*, and risted *theme neu'er*,  
Bot 3if they luggedde vndire lynd, whills *theme lyghte*  
failede ;

Bot euere *the senatour* for-sothe soghte at *the gaynest*.  
By *the seuende* day was gone *the cetee thai* rechide ; 488  
Of alle *the glee* vndire Gode so glade ware *they neuere*,  
As of *the sounde* of *the see* and Sandwyche belles !

Wythowtynne more stownntyngē they schippide *theire*  
horsez,

Wery to *the wane* see *they went alle att ones* ; 492  
With *the mene* of *the walle* they weyde vp *theire ankyrs*,  
And fleede at *the fore flude*, in Flaundrez *they rowede*,  
And thorughe Flaundres *they founde*, as *theme faire*  
thoghte,<sup>1</sup>

Tille Akyne in Almayne, in Arthur landes ; 496

They cross the  
sea to Flanders,

Gosse by *the Mount Goddarde* fulle greuous wayes,  
And so in-to Lumberddy, lykande to schewe ;

and over Mount  
St Gothard into  
Lombardy,

They turne thurghe Tuskeyne, with towres fulle heghe,  
In pris appairelles *theme* in precious wedez ; 500

through Tuscany  
to Rome.

The Sonondaye in suters *thay suggourne* *theire horsez*,  
And sekes *the Seyntez* of Rome, be assente of knyghtes ;

Then the Senator  
seeks an audience  
with the Emperor  
Lucius,

Sythyne prekes to *the pales* with portes so ryche,  
Thare sir Lucius lenges with lordes enowe ; 504

who asks eagerly  
for Arthur's an-  
swer, and on what  
ground he resists  
the power of  
Rome.

Lowttes to hym lufly, and lettres hym bedes  
Of credence enclosyde, with knyghtlyche wordez.

His ambassador  
ought to have  
seized his sceptre  
and sat above  
him.

Arthur, he says,  
ought himself to  
have served the  
Senator.

Thene *the emperour* was egree, and enkerly fraynes,  
*The answere* of Arthure he askes hym sone, 508

How he arayes *the rewme*, and rewlys *the pople* ;  
3if he be rebelle to Rome, whate ryghte that he claymes :

“ Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, and syttyne aboune,  
ffore reuerence and realtee of Rome *the noble* : 512

By serthes *thow* was my sandes, and *senatour* of Rome,  
He sulde fore solempnitee hafe seruede *the hym scluene*.”

<sup>1</sup> *likyde* struck out, and *thoghte* written instead by the same hand.

“**T**hat wille he neuuer for no waye<sup>1</sup> of alle this werlde  
ryche,

515

Then answers the Senator, that Arthur is too great to do that for any one.

Bot who may wynne hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of  
handes;

Many fey schalle be fyrste appone *the felde leuyde*,  
Are he appere in this place, profre whene *the likes*.

I saye the, *sir*, Arthure es thyne enmye fore euer,

519

He claims no less than the Empire of Rome.

And ettelles to bee ouerlynge of *the empyre of Rome*,

That alle his ancestries aughte, bot Vtere hym selfe.

[leaf 59]

**T**hy nedes this newe *ȝere*, I notifiede my selfene,

Be-fore *that noble of name and neynesome of kynges*;<sup>2</sup>

524

He tells the Emperor how he had delivered his message, and that he was never so frightened since he was born.

In the moste reale place of *the Rounde Table*,

I somounde hym *solempnylye*, one-seeande his knyghtez;

Sene I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,

In alle *the placez* ther I passede of prynciez in erthe!

I wolde fore-sake alle my suyte of segnoury of Rome,

Or I efte to *that soueraygne whare sente onesuyche nedes*!

He maye be chosyne cheftayne, cheefe of alle *other*,

530

Arthur is worthy to be king of men for his wisdom and valour.

Bathe be chauncez of armes and cheuallrye noble,

fforwhyesceste, *and worthyeste*, and wyghteste of hanndez:

Of alle the wyes *that* I watte in this werlde ryche,

The knyghtlyeste creatoure in Cristyndome haldene,

Of kynge or of conquerour, crownede in erthe,

Of countenaunce, of corage, of crewelle lates,

536

The comlyeste of knyghtehode *that* vndyre Cryste lyffes!

He maye be spokene in dyspens, despysere of syluere,

That no more of golde gyffes *thane* of grette stones,

No more of wynethane of watyre, *that* of the welle rynnys,

Ne of welthe of *this* werlde bot wyrchipe allone.

He is the most famous knight in Christendom.

To him gold and silver are as nothing, and wine no more than water.

541  
Syche contenaunce was neuer knowene in no kythe ryche,

As was *with that* conquerour in his courte haldene;

I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kyngez enoyntede,

Hole tene at his table, *that* tyme with hym selfene;

He wylle werraye i-wysse, be ware *ȝif* the lykes,

Ten kings anointed feast at his table.

546  
Wage many wyghtemene, and wache thy marches,

<sup>1</sup> ? wye.

<sup>2</sup> Substituted for *kryghtez*.

Good need is  
there of zealous  
preparation,

and that soldiers  
should be dis-  
patched to the  
mountains forth-  
with.

“By Easter,”  
says the Emperor,  
“I undertake to  
be in Germany  
with an army,

and will send  
many giants and  
mighty men to  
meet him in the  
mountains.

A watch-tower  
shall be reared on  
Mount St. Goth-  
ard, with a beacon  
ready to light,

and another on  
Mount St.  
[leaf 59, back]  
Bernard.

He shall not be  
suffered to enter  
Pavia.”

Then Lucius  
sends letters into  
the East,

to demand aid of  
all the kings and  
lords.  
Quickly they all  
come, for fear of  
his might.

That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyne ;  
ffor ȝife he reche vn-to Rome, he raunsouns it for euere !  
I rede thow dresce the *ther*-fore, and drawenolyltelangere,  
Be sekyre of *thi* sowdeours, and sende to *the* mowntes ;  
Be *the* quartere of *this* ȝere, and hym quarte stannde,  
He wylle wyghtlye in a qwhyle one his wayes hye.” 553

“Bee Estyre,” sais *the* emperour, “I ettylle my selfene,  
B To hostaye in Almayne with armede knyghtez ;  
Sende freklye in-to Fraunce, *that* flour es of rewmes,  
ffande to fette *that* freke, and forfette his landez ; 557  
ffor I sall sette kepers, fulle couaunde and noble,  
Many geaunte of geene, justers fulle gude,  
To mete hym in the mountes, and martyre hys knyghtes,  
Stryke *theme* dounestrates, and struye *theme* fore cuere,  
There sall appone Godarde a garette be rerede, 562  
That schalle be garneschite and kepyde with gude mene  
of armes,

And a bekyne abouenn to brynn whene *theme* lykys,  
*That* nane enmye with hoste sallle entre the mountes ;  
There schaile one Mounte Bernarde be beyldede anotherie,  
Buschede with banerettes and bachelers noble : 567  
In at the portes of Pavye schalle no prynce passe,  
Thurgh the perelous places, for my pris knyghtes.”

Tthane sir Lucius lordlyche lettres he sendys  
T Onone in-to the Oryente, with austeryne knyghtez,  
Tille Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysaundyre eke, 572  
To Inde and to Ermonye, as Ewfrates rynnys,  
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope *the* large,  
To Irritayne, and Elamet, and alle *thase* owte ilez ;  
To Arraby and Egipt, tille erles and other, 576  
That any erthe occupyes in *thase* este marches  
Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and erles ;  
ffor drede of his daungere they dresside *theme* sone ;  
Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys 580  
Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones ;  
To Tartary and Turky, whene tythyngez es comene,  
They turne in by Thebay, terauntez fulle hugge,

The flour of the faire folke, of Amazonnes landes ; 584

Alle thate ffaillez on the felde be forfeitte fore euere !

All that fail are  
to forfeit their  
lands.

Of Babyloyne and Baldake the burlyche knyghtes,

Bayous with theire baronage bydez no langere ;

Of Perce, and of Pamphile, and Preter Iohne landes, 588

Iche prynce with his powere appertlyche graythede ;

The Sowdane of Surrye assemblez his knyghtes,

ffra Nylus to Nazarethe, nommers fulle huge ;

To Garyere and to Galelé they gedyre alle at ones ; 592

The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome,

From all the East  
they come sailing  
across the Greek  
Sea in their  
mighty ships  
armed for war,

They gadyrede ouere the Grekkes See with greuous wapyns,

In theire grete galays, wyt̄h gleterande scheldez ;

The kynge of Cyprys one the see the Sowdane habydes,

With alle the realles of Roodes, arayede with hymē one ;

They sailede with a syde wynde oure the salte strandez :

Sodanly the Sarezenes, as theme selfe lykede,

600 and assembled at  
Corneto, sixty  
miles from Rome.

Craftyly at Cornett the kynges are aryefede,

ffra the cetē of Rome sexti myle large.

Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,

There were of  
Greeks a vast  
number, and men  
of Italy, with  
Saracens from  
many lands.

The myghtyeste of Macedone, with mene of tha marches,

Pulle and Pruysslande presses with other, 604

The lege-mene of Lettow with legyons ynewe :

Thus they semble in sortes, summes fulle huge,

Sowdanes and Sarezenes owt of sere landes,

The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges, 608

At the cetee of Rome assemblede at ones.

Thane yschewes the emperour armede at ryghtys,

Then goes forth  
the emperor with  
his knights,

Arayede with his Romaynes appone ryche stedyd ;

headed by  
sixty giants.  
Witches and war-  
locks watch his  
tents.

Sexty geauntes be-fore, engenderide with fendez, 612

With weches and warlaws to wacchene his tentys,

Ay-ware whare he wendes, wyntrez and ȝeres.

Myghte no blonkes theme bere, thos bustous churlls,

[leaf 60]  
No horse might  
carry those churlls.  
They ride upon  
camels bearing  
towers.

Bot couerde camellez of tourse, enclosyde in maylez ;

He ayerez oute with alyenez, ostes fulle huge, 617

Ewyne in-to Almayne, that Arthure hade wonnyne ;

Rydes in by the ryuere, and ryottez hymē seluene,

The emperor  
marches into  
Germany.

And ayerez with a huge wylle alle thas hye landez ; 620

Alle Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykes,  
 Drawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez ;  
 In the contré of Colome<sup>1</sup> castelles enseggez,      623  
 And suggeournez *that* sesone wyth Sarazenes ynnewe.

Meanwhile Arthur commands his knights to gather their forces, and to be ready to meet him.

The fleet assembles at Sandwich.

He holds a parliament at York,

and appoints as viceroy Sir Mordred, his nephew.

He bids him take care of Queen Guinevere,

and of his castles and forests.

**A**t the vtas of Hillary, Syr Arthure hym seluene  
 In his kydde councelle commande *the* lordes,—  
 “ Kayere to *your* cuntrez, and semble *your* knyghtes,  
 And kepys me at Constantyne clenlyche arayede ;    628  
 Byddez me at Bareflete apone *tha* blythe stremes,  
 Baldly *with*-in borde *with* *zowre* beste beryns ;  
 I schalle menskfullly *zowe* mete in thos faire marches.”  
 He sendez furthe sodaynly *sergeantes* of armes,      632  
 To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schippys ;  
 Wyth-in sextene dayes hys fleet whas assemblde,  
 At Sandwyche on *the* see, saile whene hym lykes.  
 In the palez of *Zorke* a parlement he haldez,      636  
 With alle *the* perez of *the* rewme, prelates and *other* ;  
 And aftyre *the* prechynge in presence of lordes,  
 The kyng in his concelle carpys *thes* wordes,—  
 “ I am in purpos to passe perilous wayes,      640  
 To kaire *with* my kene mene, to conquer *zone* landes,  
 To owtraye myne enmy, *zif* auenture it schewe,  
 That occupyes myne heritage, *the* empyre of Rome.  
 I sett *zow* here a soueraynge, ascente *zif* *zowe* lykys,  
 That esmesybb, my *systersone*, Sir Mordred hym seluene,  
 Salle be my leuetenaunte, *with* lordchipez ynnewe,    646  
 Of alle my lele lege-mene, *that* my landez *zemes*.”  
 He carpes till his cosyne *thane*, in counsail hym seluene,—  
 “ I make the kepare, *sir* knyghte, of kyngrykes manye,  
 Wardayne wyrchipfulle, to weilde al my landes,    650  
 That I haue wonnene of werre, in alle *this* werlde ryche ;  
 I wylle *that* Waynour, my weife, in wyrchipe be holdene,  
 That hire wannte noo wele, ne welthe *that* hire lykes ;  
 Luke my kydde castells be clenlyche arrayede,      654  
 There cho maye suggourne hire selfe, wyth semlyche  
 berynes.

<sup>1</sup> Or Coloine.

ffannde my fforestez be ffrythede, o frenchepe for euere,  
 That name werreye my wylde, botte Waynour' *hir seluene*,  
 And that in *the sesone* whene grees es assignyde, 658 The queen alone  
is allowed to hunt  
in his absence.

That cho take *hir solouce* in certayne tymms.

Chauncelere and chambyrleyne chaunge as *the lykes*,  
 Audytours and offycers ordayne *thy seluene*,— 661 All officers are  
to be completely  
under his com-  
mand.

Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,  
 Luke thow justyfye theme wele that injurye wyrkes : [leaf 60, back]

If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wylle, 664

I charge the my sekour, cheffe of alle *other*,  
 To mynystre my nobles, fore mede of my saule,  
 To mendynantez<sup>1</sup> and mysese in myschefe fallene : Arthur makes  
Mordred his  
executor.

Take here my testament of tresoure fulle huge, 668

As I trayste appone the, be-traye thowe me *neuer* ! He bids him be  
faithful to his  
trust,

As *thow* wille answere be-fore the austeryne jugge,  
 That alle *this werlde* wynly wysse as hym lykes,  
 Luke *that* my laste wylle be lelely perfournede ! 672

Thow has clenly *the* cure that to my coroune langez,  
 Of alle my werdez wele, and my weyffe eke ;

Luke *thow* kepe the so clere, there be no cause fondene,  
 Whene I to contré come, if Cryste wille it thole ; 676

And thow haue grace gudly to gouerne *thy seluene*,  
 I sall coroune *the*, knyghte, kyng with my handez.” and promises to  
crown him king  
if he remain so.

**T**han sir Modrede fulle myldly meles hym seluene,  
 Knelyd to *the* conquerour, and carpes *thise wordez*,—

“ I be-seke ȝow, *sir*, as my sybbe lorde, 681 But Mordred de-  
sires to be ex-  
cused,

*That* ȝe wille for charyté cheese ȝow a-*other* ;  
 ffor if ȝe putte me in *this* plytte, ȝowre poplees dyssauyde ;  
 To presente a prynce astate my powere es symple. 684

Whene *other* of werre wysse are wyrchipide here-aftyre,  
 Thane may I for-sothe be sette bott at lyttile.

To passe in ȝour presance my purpos es takyne, and would rathe  
go to the war.

And alle my purueaunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez.”

“ Thowe arte my neuewe fulle nere, my nurtree of olde,  
 That I haue chastyede and chosene, a childe of my  
 chambyre ; 690 But Arthur bids  
him, as his near-  
est of kin, to  
undertake the  
office.

<sup>1</sup> MS. mendynantez.

ffor the sybredyne of me, fore-sake noghte *this offyce*  
 That thow ne wyrk my wille, thow watte whatte<sup>1</sup> it  
 menes."

**N**owe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere, 693  
 At lordez, at lege-mene, *that leues hym by-hyndene.*  
 And seyne *that* worthilyche wy went vn-to chambyre,  
 ffor to comfurthe *the* qwene, *that* in care lenges; 696  
 Waynour waykly wepande hym kyssiz,  
 Talkez to hym tenderly *with* teres ynnewe,—

Then Arthur  
takes leave of  
his queen.

Guinever laments  
his departure,

and would rather  
die in his arms.

But Arthur bids  
her not to grieve,

and tells her that  
he has made Mor-  
dred, a knight  
of her own, his  
deputy.

[leaf 61]  
 Then he kisses  
the ladies, and  
takes leave of  
them.  
 But Guinever  
swoons when he  
asks for his  
sword.

The king then  
departs hastily  
with his knights.

At Sandwich all  
the lords and  
their followers  
assemble.

"I may wery the wye, thatt this werre mouede,  
 That warnes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde; 700  
 Alle my lykyng of lyfe owte of lande wendez,  
 And I in langour am lefte, leue ȝe for euere!

Whyne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in ȝour armes, 703  
 Are I *this* destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one!"

"Grefe *the* noghte, Gaynour, fore Goddes lufe of hewene,  
 Ne gruche noghte my ganggyng, it salle to gude turne!  
 Thy wonrydez and thy wepyng woundez myne herte,  
 I may noghte wit of *this* woo, for alle *this* werlde ryche;  
 I haue made a kepare, a knyghte of thyne awene, 709

Ouerlyng of Ynglande vndyre thy seluene,  
 And thates *sir* Mordred, *that* thow has mekylle praysede,  
 Salle be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes."

Thane he takes hys leue at ladys in chambyre, 713  
 Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste be-teches;  
 And then cho swounes fulle swythe, whe[n] he hys  
 swerde aschede,

Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde! 716

He pressed to his palfray, in presance of lordes,  
 Prekys of the palez with his prys knyghtes,  
 Wyth a realle rowte of *the* Rounde Table; 719  
 Soughte to-warde Sandwyche, cho sees hym no more!

Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,  
 Garneschit one *the* grene felde and graythelyche arayede;  
 Dukkes and duzseperez daynttehely rydes,  
 Erlez of Ynglande with archers ynnewe: 724

<sup>1</sup> MS. whatte watte.

Schirreues scharply schiftys the comouns,  
Rewlys be-fore *the* ryche of the Rounde Table,  
Assingnez ilke a contree to certayne lordes, 727  
In the southe one *the* see banke saile whene *theme* lykes.  
Thane bargez *theme* buskez, and to *the* bannke rowes,  
Bryngnez blonkez one bourde, and burlyche helmes ;  
Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes,  
Horses, arms,  
tents, and other  
things are  
shipped.

Tentez,<sup>1</sup> and othire toylez, and targez fulle ryche, 732  
Cabanes, *and* clathe-sekkes, and coferez fulle noble,  
Hukes, and haknays, and horsez of armez ;  
Thus they stowe ine the stiffe of fulle steryne knyghtez.  
**Q**wene alle was schyppede that scholde, they schouunte  
no lengere, 736  
Bot ventelde *theme* tyte, as *the* tyde rynnez ;  
Coggez and crayers *than* crossez thaire mastez,  
At the commandment of *the* kynge, vncouerde at ones.  
Wyghtly one *the* wale *thay* wye vp thaire ankers, 740  
By wytt of *the* watyre-mene of *the* wale ythez,  
ffrekes one *the* forestayne fakene *theire* coblez,  
In floynes, and fercostez, and Flemesche schyppes,  
Tytt saillez to *the* toppe, and turnez *the* lufe, 744  
Standez appone stere-bourde, sterynly *thay* songene,  
The pryce schippez of the porte prouene *theire* depnesse,  
And fondez wyth fulle saile ower *the* fawe ythez ;  
Holly with-owtayne harme *thay* hale in bottes, 748  
Schipe-mene scharply schotene thaire portez,  
Launchez lede apone lufe, lacchene *ther* depez,  
Lukkes to *the* lade-sterne, whene *the* lyghte faillez ;  
Castez coursez be crafte, whene *the* clowde rysez, 752  
With *the* nedylle and *the* stone one *the* nyghte tydez ;  
ffor drede of *the* derke nyghte *thay* drecchede a lyttile,  
And alle *the* steryne of *the* streme strekyne at onez.  
The kynge was in a gret cogge, with knyghtez fulle many,  
In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayede ; 757  
With-in on a ryche bedde rystys a littylle,  
And with *the* swoghe of *the* see in swefnyng he felle.

Then the ships  
at the word of  
command cross  
their yards,  
weigh their an-  
chors ;  
the well-skilled  
sailors hoist the  
sails and steer the  
vessels.

Then they haul  
in the boats, shut  
the ports, heave  
the lead, look well  
to the guiding  
star, and skil-  
fully shape their  
course with the  
needle and the  
stone.

After a little de-  
lay on account of  
darkness, they all  
sail at once.

The king is in a  
large vessel with  
many knights.

Resting himself  
in his cabin, he  
falls asleep,

<sup>1</sup> Or teinttez.

and dreams of a  
dreadful dragon.

[leaf 61, back]

His head and  
neck are blue;  
his shoulders cov-  
ered with silver  
scales;

his belly and  
wings of various  
hues;

his feet are  
black, and out of  
his mouth comes  
fire.

Then comes  
against the dra-  
gon a fierce black  
bear,  
with huge paws  
and perilous  
claws,

mis-shapen legs,  
and foaming lips.

He prepares to  
fight,  
roaring and  
razing for the  
strife.

Then the dragon  
assails him,  
fighting like a  
falcon with beak  
and claws.

The bear bites  
him with baleful  
teeth, and causes  
the blood to flow.

He had killed the  
dragon but for

Hym dreymd of a dragone, dredfulle to be-holde, 760  
Come dryfande ouer *the* depe to drenschene hys pople,  
Ewene walkande owte of the weste landez,  
Wanderande vnworthyly ouere the wale ythez ;  
Bothe his hede and hys hals ware halely alle ouer 764  
Oundyde of azure, enamelde fulle faire :

His scoulders ware schalyde alle in clene syluere,  
Schreede ouer alle *the* schrympe with schrinkande poyntez ;  
Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes, 768  
In meruaylous maylys he mountede fulle hye ;  
Whayme that he towchede he was tynt for euer !  
Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne sabylle,  
And syche a vennymous flayre flowe fro his lyppez,  
That the flode of *the* flawez alle one fyre semyde ! 773

Thane come of *the* Oryente, ewyne hyme agayneze,  
A blake bustous bere abwene in the clowdes,  
With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge,  
With pykes fulle perilous, alle plyande *thame* semyde,  
Lothene and lothely, lckkes and other,  
Alle with lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,  
ffiltirde vnfrely, wyt̄ fomannde lyppez, 780  
The foullest of fegure that fourmede was euer !

He baltirde, he bleryde, he braundyschte *ther*-after ;  
To bataile he bounnez hym with bustous clowez :  
He romede, he rarede, that roggede alle *the* erthe ! 784  
So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluene !

Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hym a-ȝayneze,  
And with hys duttez hym drafē one dreghe by *the* walkyne :  
He fares as a fawcone, frekly he strykez ; 788  
Bothe with feete and with fyre he feghettys at ones !  
The bere in the bataile *the* bygger hym semyde,  
And byttes hym boldlye wyt̄ balefulle tuskez ;  
Syche buffetez he hym rechez with hys brode klokes,  
Hys brest and his brathelle whas blodye alle ouer ! 793  
He rawmpyde so ruydly that alle *the* erthe ryfez,  
Rynnande one reede blode as rayne of the heuene !  
He hadde weryede the worme by wyghtnesse of strenghte,

Ne ware it fore *the wylde fyre that he hymē wytē defendez.* the fire which he breathes.

Thane wandyr *the worme awaye to hys heghtez,* Then the dragon flies aloft, and comes swooping down,

Commes glydande fro *the clowddez, and cowpez fulle* 799

euene ;

Towchez hym *wytē* his talounez, and terez hys rigge, tearing a vast rent in the back of the bear,  
Be-twix *the taile and the toppe tene fote large !* and lets him drop into the water.

Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hymē olyfe, Lette hymē falle in the flode, fleete whare hymē lykes :  
So they bryng *the bolde kyng bynne the schippe-burde,* That nere he bristez for bale, one bede whare he lyggez.

Thane waknez *the wyese kynge, wery fore-trauaillede,* Then Arthur awaking is [leaf 62]  
Takes hymē two phylozophirs, that folowede hymē euer, troubled at the dream, and sends for his two philosophers, men very learned in the seven sciences.  
In the seyne scyence the suteleste fondene, 808

The cony[n]geste of clergye vndyre Criste knowene ; He tolde theme of hys tourmente, that tyme that he slepede,

“Drechede with a dragone, and syche a derfe beste, Has mad me fulle wery ; ȝe telle me my swefene, 812  
Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde !”

“Sir,” said they sone thane, thies sagge philosophers, “The dragone that thow dremyde of, so dredfulle to schewe, That come dryfande ouer the deepe, to dryncheneth thy pople, Sothely and certayne thy seluene it es, 817  
That thus saillez ouer the see with thy sekyre knyghtez : The colurez that ware castyne appone his clere wengez, May be thy kyngrykezalle, that thow has ryghte wonnyne ; And the tachesesede taile, with tonges so huge, 821  
Be-takyns this faire folke, that in thy fleet wendez.

The bere that bryttenede was abowene in *the clowddez,* The bear signifies the tyrants who torment his people, or else some giant whom Arthur is destined to overthrow in battle.  
Be-takyns the tyrauntee that tourmentez thy pople ; Or elles with somme gyaunt some journee selle happyne, In syngulere batelle by ȝoure selfe one ;  
And thow selle hafe *the victorye thurghe helpe of oure*

Lorde,

As thow in thy visione was opynly schewede ! 828  
Of this dredfulle dreme ne drede the no more,  
Ne kare noghte, sir conquerour, bot comforth thy seluene ; Arthur is exhorted to be of good courage.

And this that saillez ouer the see, with thy sekyre  
knyghteze.”

With trumppez thene trystly, they trisene vpe thaire  
saillez, 832

They speed on  
their way, and ar-  
rive on the coast  
of Normandy.

At Barfete they  
find a fleet of  
friends,

the flower of fif-  
teen realms.

And rowes ouer the ryche see, this rowtte alle at onez ;  
The comely coste of Normandye they cachene fulle euene,  
And blythely at Barfete theis bolde are arryfede,  
And fyndys a flete there of frendez ynewe, 836  
The floure and the faire folke of fyftene rewmez ;  
ffore kyngez and capytaynez kepyde hym fayre,  
As he at Carelele commaundyde at Cristymesse hym  
seluene. 839

When they had  
disembarked and  
pitched their  
tents, a Templar  
comes to the  
king,

and tells him of  
a ferocious giant  
who feeds upon  
men and chil-  
dren,

Be they had takene the lande, and tentez vpe rerede,  
Comez<sup>1</sup> a templere tyte, and towchide to the kynge—  
“Here es a teraunt be-syde that tourmentez thi pople,  
A grett geaunte of geene, engenderde of fendez ;  
He has fretyne of folke mo thane fyfe hondrethe, 844  
And als fele fawntekyns of freeborne childyre !  
This has bene his sustynaunce alle this seuene wyntteres,  
And ȝitt es that sotte noghte sadde, so wele hym it lykez !  
In the contree of Constantyne no kynde has he leuede,  
With-owtayne kydd castelles enclosid wyth walles, 849  
That he ne has clenly dystroyede alle the knaue childyre,  
And theme caryede to the cragge, and clenly deworyde !

and who had that  
day captured the  
[leaf 62, back]  
Duchess of Brit-  
tany, and carried  
her to the  
mountain.

The duchez of Bretayne to daye has he takyne, 852  
Be-side Reynes as scho rade with hire ryche knyghttes ;  
Ledd hyre to the mountayne, thare that lede lengez,  
To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastez.  
We folowede o ferrome moo thene fyfe hundrethe, 856  
Of beryns, and of burgeys, and bachelers noble,  
Bot he couerde the cragge ; cho cryede so lowde,  
The care of that creatoure couer salle I neuer !

She was the  
flower of all  
France,  
and the fairest  
lady on earth,

Scho was flour of alle Fraunce, or of fyfe rewmes, 860  
And one of the fayreste that fourmede was euere,  
The gentileste jowelle a-juggede with lordes,  
ffro Geene vn-to Gerone, by Ihesu of heuene !

<sup>1</sup> Or Commez.

Scho was thy wyes cosyne, knowe it if *the lykez*, 864 cousin of Arthur's queen.  
Comene of *the rycheste*, that rengnez in erthe :

As thou arte ryghtwise kynge rewē on thy pople,  
And fande for to venge theme, that thus are rebuykyde !”

“ *Allas !* ” sais *sir Arthure*, “ so lange hauē I lyffede,  
Hade I wytene of this, wele had me chefede ; 869 Then Sir Arthur bitterly laments her fate,

Me es noghte fallene faire, bot me es foule happynedē,  
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede !

I had leuere thane alle Fraunce, this fyftene wynter,  
I hade bene be-fore thatē freke, a furlange of waye, 873 and wishes he had been there to aid her.  
Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledde to *the montez*:

I hadde lefte my lyfe are cho hade harme lymppydē !

Bot walde *thow* kene me to *the crage*, thare *that kene* lengez, He desires to know where the giant lives,  
I walde cayre to *that coste*, and carpe wythe hymē seluene,  
To trette with that tyraunt fore tresone of loñdes,<sup>1</sup>

And take trewe for a tyme, tille it may tyde bettyre.”

“ *Sire, see ȝe ȝone* farlande, with ȝone two fyrez, 880 and is directed by the Templar how to find his abode,  
*Thar* filsnez<sup>2</sup> *that fende*, fraiste whene the lykes,

Appone the creste of the cragge, by a colde welle,  
That enclosez the clyfe with the clere strandez,

Ther may thow fynde folke fay wyth-owtayne nowmer, where there are many captives,  
Mo florenez in faythe thane Fraunce es in aftyre ; 885

And more tresour vn-trewely that traytour has getyne, and vast treasure stored up.  
Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, *that tymē* that it was wonne.”

Thane romyez the ryche kynge for rewthe of the pople, Then Arthur is greatly excited.  
Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere ! 889

He welterys, he wristeles, he wryngē hys handez !

Thare was no wy of this werlde, that wiste whatt he  
menede !

He calles *sir Cayous* that of the cowpe serfede, 892 and bids Sir Cayous and Sir Bedevere attend him at evening,  
And *sir Bedvere* the bolde, that bare hys brande ryche,—

“ Luke ȝe aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghtez,  
On blonkez by ȝone buscayle, by ȝone blythe stremez,  
ffore I wille passe in pilgremage preuely here-aftyre, pretending that he is going on a pilgrimage.  
In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are servede, 897 [leaf 63]  
ffor to sekene a saynte be ȝone salte stremes,

<sup>1</sup> Originally lordez.

<sup>2</sup> Or filsuez.

In seynt Mighelle mount, there myraclez are schewede."

Then Arthur proceeds to dress and arm himself,

Aftyre euesange, sir Arthure hyme se[1]fene 900

Wente to hys wardrobe, and warpe of hys wedez,

Armede hym in a actone with orfraeez fulle ryche,

Abouen one that a jeryne of Acres owte ouer,

Abouen that a jesseraunt of jentylle maylez, 904

A jupone of Ierodyne jaggede in schredez;

He brayedez one a bacenett burneschte of syluer,

The beste that was in Basille, wyt̄h bordurs ryche;

The creste and the coronalle, enclosed so faire 908

Wyt̄h clasppis of clere golde, couched wyt̄h stones;

The vesare, the aventaile, enarmede so faire,

Voyde with-owt̄tyne vice, with wyndowes of syluer;

His gloves gaylyche gilte, and grauene at the hemmez,

With grayuez and gobelets, glorious of hewe; 913

He bracez a brade schelde, and his brande aschez,

Bounede hym a broune stede, and one the bente houys;

He sterte tille his sterepe and stridez one lofte, 916

Streynez hym stowttly, and sterys hym faire,

Brochez the baye stede, and to the buske rydez,

And there hys knyghtes hym kepede fulle clenlyche arayede.

Thane they roode by that ryuer, that rynnyd so swythe,

There the ryndez ouerrechez with realle bowghez; 921

The roo and the rayne-dere reklesse thare ronnene,

In ranez and in rosers to ryotte thame seluene;

The frithez ware floresch̄te with flourez fulle many,

Wyt̄h fawcouns and fesantez of felyche hewez; 925

Alle the feulez thare fleschez, that flyez with wengetz,

ffore thare galede the gowke one greuez fulle lowde,

Wyt̄h alkynē gladchipe thay gladdene theme seluene:

Of the nyghtgale notez the noisez was swette, 929

They threpide wyt̄h the throstilles, thre hundredth at ones!

That whate swowyngē of watyre, and syngyngē of byrdez,

It myghte salue hym of sore, that sounde was neuere!

Thane ferkez this folke, and one fotte lyghttez, 933

There is a grove by the side of the river full of game and decked with flowers.

Here all birds abound,

and nightingales make sweet music.

Here they leave their horses, and

ffestenez theire faire stedez o ferrome by-tweñe;

And thene the kynge kenely comandyde hys knyghtez  
ffor to byde with theire blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—

the king bids his  
knights to await  
his return.

“ffore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one, 937

And melle with this mayster mane, *that* this monte ȝemez;

And seyne sall ȝe offyre, aythyre aftyre other,

Menskfullly at Saynt Mighelle fulle myghty with Criste!”

The kyng coueris *the* cragge wyt̄h cloughes fulle hye,

The king alone  
ascends the  
[leaf 63; back]  
mountain,

To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez one lofte ;

Keste vpe hys vmbre, and kenly he lukes, 943

Caughte of *the* colde wynde to comforthe hym seluene ;

Two fyrez he fyndez flawmande fulle hye,

The fourtelele a furlange be-twene *thus* he walkes ;

The waye by *the* weHe strandez he wandyrd hym one,

To wette of *the* warlawe, whare *that* he lengez ; 948

He ferkez to *the* fyrste fyre, and euene there he fyndez

and going to a  
fire which he sees  
he finds a woeful  
widow wringing  
her hands.

A wery wafulle wedowe, wryngande hire handez,

And gretande on a graue grysely teres,

Now merkyde one molde, sene myddaye it semede : 952

He saluȝede *that* sorowfullle with sittande wordez,

He asks her con-  
cerning the giant.

And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely there-aftyre.

Thane this wafulle wyfē vñ-wynly hym gretez,

Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez ;

She answers with  
terror, and warns  
him that he can-  
not hope to con-  
tend with so ter-  
rible a monster.

Said, “carefullle caremane, thow carpez to lowde ! 957

May ȝone warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle !

Weryd worthe *the* wyghte ay, that *the* thy wytt refede,

That mase the to wayfe here in *thise* wylde lakes ! 960

I warne *the* fore wyrchipe, *thou* wylnez aftyr sorowe !

Whedyre buskes *thou* berne ? vnbllysside *thow* semes !

Wenez thow to brittene hymē with thy brande ryche ?

Ware thow wyghttere thane Wade or Wawayne owthire,

Thow wynnys no wyrchipe, I warne the be-fore ! 965

Thow saynned the vnsekyrly to seke to *these* mountez,

Siche sex ware to symple to semble with hymē one ;

ffor and thow see hymē with syghte, the seruez no herte,

To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge ! 969

Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,

Bot thow arte fay be myfaythe, and *that* me for-thynkkys !

Fifty such as Arthur he could fell with his fist.

The poor duchess has been ravished and murdered by him, and the doleful widow, her foster-mother, has buried her,

and will remain there till death to bewail her.

[leaf 64]  
Then Arthur says that he comes from the great King Arthur on a mission to treat with the giant.

The old wife tells him that he cares nothing for laws or treaties; that he regards not gold or treasure;

only he has a famous kirtle covered with hair,

which is bordered with the beards of mighty kings.

Ware syche fyfty one a felde, or one a faire erthe, 972  
The freke walde with hys fyste felle ȝow at ones !  
Loo ! here the duchez dere,—to daye was cho takyne,—  
Depe doluene and dede, dyked in moldez ; 975  
He hade morthired this mylde be myddaye war rongene,  
With-owtynne mercy one molde, I not watte it ment :  
He has forsede hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede ;  
He slewe hir vn-slely, and slitt hir to *the nauylle* !  
And here haue I bawmede hir, and beryede *ther-aftryr* ;  
ffor bale of *the botelesse*, blythe be I neuer ! 981  
Of alle *the frendez* cho hade, *there folowede* none aftyre,  
Bot I, hir foster modyr of fyftene wynter !  
To ferke of this farlande, fande sall I neuer, 984  
Bot here be foundene on felde, tille I be fay leuede !"

Thane answers sir Arthure to *that* alde wyf ;  
" I am comyne fra *the conquerour*, curtaise and gentille,  
As one of *the hathelest* of Arthur knyghez, 988  
Messenger to *this myx*, for mendemente of *the pople*,  
To mele with this maister mane, that here this mounte  
ȝemez ;  
To trete with this tyraunt for tresour of landez,  
And take trew for a tyme, to bettyr may worthe." 992  
" ȝa, thire wordis are bot waste," quod this wif thane,  
" ffor bothe landez and lythes ffulle lyttile by he settes ;  
Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkez he neuer, 995  
ffor he wille lenge owt of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,  
With-owtene licence of lede, as lorde in his awene ;

Bot he has a kyrtille one, kepide for hym seluene,  
That was sponene in Spayne with specyalle byrdez,  
And sythynne garnesch in Grece fulle graythly to-gedirs ;  
It es hydede alle with hare hally al ouere, 1001  
And bordyrde with the berdez of burlyche kyngez,  
Crispid and kombide, that kempis may knawe  
Iche kynge by his colour, in kythe there he lengez ;  
Here the fermez he fangez of fyftene rewmez, 1005  
ffor ilke Esterne ewyne, how-euer that it falle,  
They send it hym sothely for saughte of *the pople*,

Sekerly at *that* sesone with certayne knyghtez, 1008

And he has aschede Arthure alle *this* seuene wynntter.  
ffor-thy hurdez he here, to owttraye hys pople,

He has long  
wished for the  
beard of Arthur.

Tille the Bretones kynge haue burneschte his lyppys,  
And sent his berde to that bolde wyth his beste berynes ;  
Bot thowe hafe broghte *that* berde, bowne the no forthire,  
ffor it es butelesse bale, thowe biddez oghite elles ; 1014

ffor he has more tresour to take whene hyme lykez,

Thane euere aughte Arthure, or any of hys elders ;

If thowe hafe broghte *the* berde, he bese more blythe

If he has brought  
the beard, the  
giant will be  
blithe.

Thane *thowe* gafe hym Burgoyne, or Bretayne *the* more ;

Bot luke nowe for charitee, *thow* chasty thy lyppes,

That the no wordez eschape, whate so be-tydez ; 1020

Luke *thi* presante be priste, and presse hym bott lyttille,

But he must ap-  
proach him with  
due caution,

ffor he es at his sowper, he wille be sone greuyde.

And *thow* my concelle doo, *thow* dosse of thy clothes,

and had better  
doff his clothes  
and kneel to him.

And knele in thy kyrtylle, and calle hym thy lorde.

He sowppes alle *this* sesone with seuene knaue childre,

He sups at this  
season on seven  
male children  
chopped in a  
charger of chalk-  
white silver.

Choppid in a chargour of chalke whytt syluer, 1026

With pekille and powdyre of precious spycez,

And pyment fulle plenteuous of Portyngale wynes ;

Thre balefulle birdez his brochez *they* turne, 1029

Three wretched  
women turn his  
spits for him.

That byddez his bedgatt, his byddyng to wyrche ;

Siche foure scholde be fay with-in foure hourez,

Are his fylth ware fillede, that his flesch ȝernes."

[leaf 64, back]

"ȝa, I haue broghte *the* berde," quod he, " the bettyre  
me lykez ; 1033

ffor-thi wille I boune me, and bere it my seluene ;

Bot, lefe, walde *thow* lere me whare *that* lede lengez,

I sallle alowe *the* and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe!"

"fferke fast to *the* fyre," quod cho, "that flawmez so hye ;

Thare fillis *that* fende hym, fraist whene the lykez ;

Bot *thow* moste seke more southe, sydlyngs a lyttille,

ffor he wille hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large." 1040

To *the* sowre of *the* reke he soghte at *the* gaynestre,

Sayned hyme sekerly with certeyne wordez,

And sydlyngs of *the* segge the syghte had he rechide,

"Yes," says Ar-  
thur, "I have in-  
deed brought this  
beard; but show  
me where I shall  
find him."

Then she directs  
him to approach  
the great fire.

Arthur goes to the fire, and finds the giant lying extended with his back to the fire, picking the thigh of a man,

Roasts of the flesh of men and cattle are spitted together.

Then Arthur's heart bleeds for the woes inflicted by this wretch. He fastens on his shield and brandishes his bright sword,

and right boldly addresses the giant.

He upbraids him with his vile crimes and his unclean meat.

For his horrible murders of Christian children,

he would now take vengeance on him, by the aid of St Michael.

Then the giant stared with amazement, and gnashed his teeth with fury.

How vn-semly *that* soft satt sowpande hym one ; 1044  
 He lay lenand one lange, lugande vn-faire,  
*The* thee of a manns lymme lyfte vp by *the* haunce ;  
 His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez,  
 He bekez by *the* bale-fyre, and breklesse hyme semede ;  
*Thare* ware rostez fulle ruyde, and newfulle bredez, 1049  
 Beerynes and bestaile brochede to-geders ;  
 Cowlefullle cramede of crysmede childyre,  
 Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez *thame* tournede.

And *thane* this comlych kynge, by-cause of his pople,  
 His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez !  
 Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere,  
 Braundesche his bryghte swerde by *the* bryghte hiltez,  
 Raykez to-warde *the* renke reghte with a ruyde wille,  
 And hyely hailsez *that* hulke with hawtayne wordez,—

“ Now, alle-weldand Gode, *that* wyrscoppez vs alle,  
 Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thou lygges, 1060  
 ffor the fulsomeste freke that fourmede was euere !  
 ffouly thow fedys the, *the* fende haue thi saule !  
 Here es cury vn-clene, carle, be my trowthe,  
 Caffe of creatours alle, thou cursseede wriche ! 1064  
 Be-cause that *thow* killide has *thise* cresmede childyre,  
 Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe,  
*That* here are brochede one bente, and brittenede with  
 thi handez, 1067

I selle merke *the* thy mede, as *thou* has myche serfede,  
 Thurghe myghte of seynt Mighelle, *that* *this* monte ȝemes !  
 And for this faire ladye, *that* *thow* has fey leuyde,  
 And *thus* forcede one foulde, for fylth of *thi* selfene !  
 Dresse the now, dogge-sone, the denelle haue *thi* saule !  
 ffor *thow* sall dye this day, thurgh dynt of my handez !”

Thane glopnede *the* glotone and glored vn-faire ;  
 He grennede as a grewhounde, with grysly tuskes ;  
 He gapede, he groned faste, with grucchande latez, 1076  
 ffor grefe of *the* gude kynge, *that* hym with grame gretez !  
 His fax and his foretoppe was filterede to-geders,

And owte of his face fome aane halfe fote large ; Out of his mouth  
His frount and his forheuede, alle was it ouer, 1080 came smoke.  
As the felle of a froske, and fraknede it semede, His forehead was  
Huke-nebbyde as a hawke, and a hore berde, like the fell of a  
And herede to the hole eyghne with hyngande browes ; frog.  
Harske as a hunde-fisch, hardly who so lukez, 1084 He was hook-  
So was the hyde of that hulke hally al ouer ! nosed like a  
Erne had he fulle huge, and vgly to schewe, [Leaf 65]  
With eghne fulle horreble, and ardaunt for sothe ; hawk, with hair  
flatt-mowthede as a fluke, with fleryande lyppys, 1088 up to his eyes, and  
And the flesche in his fortethe fowly as a bere. beetle brows.  
His berde was brothy and blake, that tille his brest His skin was hard  
rechede, as that of a dog-  
Grassed as a mereswyne with corkes fulle huge, fish ; his ears  
And alle falterde the flesche in his foule lippys, 1092 huge and ugly ;  
Ilke wrethe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones ! his eyes horrible  
Bullenekkyde was that bierne, and brade in the scholders, and burning.  
Brok-brestede as a brawne, with brustils fulle large, Flat-mouthed,  
Ruyd armes as an ake with rusclede sydes, 1096 with grinning  
Lyme and leskes fulle lothyne, leue ȝc for sothe : lips, and jaws  
Schouelle-fotede was that schalke, and schaylande hyme like a bear.  
semyde, A black beard  
With schankez vn-schaply, schowande to-gedyrs ; reached to his  
Thykke theese as a thursse, and thikkere in the hanche, 1101 breast, with  
Greesse growene as a galte, fulle grylych he lukez ! 1101 mighty bristles.  
Who the lenghe of the lede lelly accountes, of gigantic thick-  
ffro the face to the fote, was fyse fadome lange ! ness in his  
Thane stertez he vp sturdely one two styffe schankez, In height, full  
And sone he caughte hym a clubb alle of clene yryne ! five fathoms.  
He walde hafe kyllede the kynge with his kene wapene, Up starts this  
Bot thurgh the crafte of Cryste ȝit the carle failede ; fell giant, and  
The creest and the coronalle, the claspes of syluer, 1108 seizing an iron  
Clenly with his clubb he crasschede doun at onez ! club, aims a blow  
The kynge castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire, The king catches  
And with his burlyche brande a box he hym reches ; it on his shield,  
ffulle butt in the frunt the fromonde he hittez, 1112 and returns the  
sword right upon the forehead.

The bright blade  
pierces to the  
brain.  
The giant wipes  
his face with his  
hands, and strikes  
fiercely at the  
king.  
Arthur draws  
back,

and then drives  
his sword into the  
giant's haunch.

The monster  
roars and strikes  
at random.  
So mighty is his  
stroke, that it  
penetrates a  
sword's length  
into the ground.  
The king nearly  
swoons at the  
noise of the blow,  
but quickly  
strikes him with  
his sword.  
His entrails and  
blood gush out.

[leaf 65, back]  
Then throwing  
away his club, the  
giant seizes Ar-  
thur in his arms.

The baleful birds  
pray for the suc-  
cess of Arthur.

They have a  
fearful wrestling  
match, and fall  
from the top of  
the cliff down to  
the shore,

That the burnyscht blade to *the brayne rynnez* ;  
He feyede his fysnamye with his foule hondez,  
And frappez faste at hys face fersely *ther-aftyre* !  
The kyng chaungez his fote, eschewes a lyttile, 1116  
Ne had he eschapede *that choppe*, cheuede had euylle ;  
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte  
Hye vpe one *the hanche*, with his harde wapyne,  
That he hillid *the swerde halfe a fote large* ; 1120  
The hott blode of *the hulke vn-to the hilte rynnez*,  
Ewyne in-to jumette the gyaunt he hyttez,  
Iust to *the genitales*,<sup>1</sup> and jaggede *thame* in sondre !  
Thane he romyede and rarede, and ruydly he strykez  
ffulle egerly at Arthure, and one the erthe hittez 1125  
A swerde lenghe with-in the swarthe, he swappez at ones,  
That nere swounes *the kynge* for swooghe of his dynitez !  
Bot ȝit the kynge sweperly fulle swythe he by-swenkez,  
Swappez in with the swerde *that it the swange brystedde* ;  
Bothe *the guttez* and the gorre guschez owte at ones,  
That alle englaymez *the gresse*, one grunde *ther* he  
standez ! 1131

Thane he castez the clubb, and the kynge hentez,  
On *the creeste* of the cragg he caughte hym in armez,  
And enclosez hym clenyly, to cruschene hys rybbez ;  
So harde haldez he *that hende*, *that nere hisherte brystez* !  
Thane *the balefulle bierdez* bownez to *the erthe*, 1136  
Kneland and cryande, and clappide *theire handez*,—  
“ Criste comforthe ȝone knyghte, and kepe hym fro  
sorowe,  
And latte neuer ȝone fende felle hym olyfe !”

ȝitt es *the warlow* so wyghte, he welters hym vndere,  
Wrothely *thai* wrythyne and wrystille to-gederz, 1141  
Welters and walowes ouer with-in *thase buskez*,  
Tumbellez and turnes faste, and terez thaire wdecz,  
Vn-tenderly fro *the toppe thai* tiltine to-gederz ; 1144  
Whilome Arthure ouer, and other-while vndyre,  
ffro *the heghe* of *the hylle vn-to the harde roche* ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. genitates.

They feyne neuer are they falle at *the flode merkes* ;  
 Bot Arthur with ane anlace egerly smyttez, 1148 Arthur stabs the  
 And hittez euer in the hulke vp to *the hiltez*. giant,  
*The theeffe at the dede-thrawe so throlly hymē thrynguez*,  
*That three rybbys in his syde he thrystez in sundere !* who in his death-  
 struggle breaks  
 three of Arthur's ribs.

Thene sir Kayous the kene vn-to *the kynge styrtez*,—  
 Said, “ allas ! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,  
 Ouer-fallene with a fende ! vs es fulle hapnede ! 1154  
 We mone be forfeitede in faith, and flemyde for euer !”  
*Thay hafe vp hys hawberke thane*, and handleiz ther-  
 vndyre,

His hyde and his haunche eke, one heghte to *the schuldrez*,

His flawnke and his feletez, and his faire sydez, 1158  
 Botē his bakke and his breste, and his bryghte armes.

*Thay ware fayne that they fande no flesche entamede*, They examine  
 And for *that journee made joye, thir gentille knyghttez*. him and find no  
 wound.

“ Now, certez,” saise Sir Bedwere, “ it semez, be my  
 Lorde ! 1162 Sir Bedever  
 speaks face-  
 to-face of this  
 saint whom Ar-  
 thur had sought.

He sekez seyntez bot seldene, *the sorere he grypes*,  
*That thus clekys this corsaunt owte of thir heghe clyffez*,  
 To carye forthe siche a carle at close hym in siluere ;  
 Be Myghelle, of syche a makl I hafe myche wondyre  
 That euerowre soueraygne Lorde suffers hymē in heuene ;  
 And alle seyntez be syche, *that seruez oure Lorde*, 1168 If all saints are  
 I salle neuer no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle !” like him no saint  
 would he be.

Thane bouredez *the bolde kynge* at Bedvere wordez,—  
 “ This seynt haue I soghte, so helpe me owre Lorde !  
 ffor-thy brayd owtte *thi brande*, and broche hymē to the  
 herte ; 1172 Arthur bids him  
 stab the monster  
 to the heart, to  
 make sure of him,  
 for only once be-  
 fore had he met  
 with such a ter-  
 rible foe.

Be sekere of this *sergeaunt*, he has me sore greude !  
 I faghte noghte wytli syche a freke *this fyftene wyntyrs*,  
 Bot in *the montez of Araby* I mett syche another ;  
 He was *the forcyere* be ferre *that had I nere fundene*,  
 Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede ! 1177  
 Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it there-aftyre,  
 Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede ; He bids them cut  
 off his head,

and bear it first  
to Sir Hoel,  
[leaf 66]

then to Barflete,  
and set it on the  
barbican.

His sword and  
shield and the  
giant's club are  
to be fetched from  
the hill.

They may take  
what treasure  
they will ; all Ar-  
thur desires is the  
kirtle and the  
club.

The affair was  
kept a secret till  
break of day.

Then the people  
kneel before Ar-  
thur, and thank  
and praise him  
for slaying the  
giant.

Arthur ascribes  
all to God.

He bids his fol-  
lowers distribute

Bere it to *sir* Howelle, that es in harde bandez, 1180  
And byd hym herte hym wele, his enmy es destruode !

Syne bere it to Bareflete, and brace it in yryne,  
And sett it on the barbycane, biernes to schewe.

My brande and my brode schelde apone *the* bent lyggez,  
On *the* creeste of *the* cragge, thare fyrste we encontredre,  
And *the* clubb *thar*-*by*, alle of clene irene,

*That* many Cristene has kyllide in Constantyne landcz ;  
fferke to the farlande, and fetche me *that* wapene, 1188  
And late founde tille oure flete, in flode *thare* it lengez.

If thow wylle any tresour, take whate the lykez ;  
Haue I the kyrtylle and *the* clubb, I coueite noghte elles!"

Now *they* caire to *the* cragge, *thise* comlyche knyghez,  
And broghte hym *the* brade schelde, and his bryghte  
wapene, 1193

*The* clubb and *the* cotte ahs, Syr Kayous hym seluene,  
And kayres with *conquerour*, the kyngez to schewe ;  
That in couerte *the* kynge helde closse to hym seluene,  
Whilles clene day fro *the* clowde clymbyd on lofte.

Be that to courte was comene clamour fulle huge,  
And be-*fore* *the* comlyche kynge they knelyd alle at  
ones,— 1199

" Welcome, oure liege lorde, to lang has thow duellyde !  
Gouernour vndyr Gode, graytheste and noble,  
To whame grace es graunted, and gyffene at his wille !  
Now thy comly come has comforthede vs alle !  
Thow has in thy realtee reuengyde thy pople ! 1204  
Thurghe helpe of thy hande, thyne enmyse are struyede,  
That has thy renkes ouer-ronne, and refte theme theire  
childeyre !

Whas neuer rewme owte of araye so redyly releuede !"

Thane *the* conquerour cristenly carpez to his pople,  
" Thankes Gode," quod he, " of *this* grace, and no gome  
elles, 1209

ffor it was neuer manns dede, bot myghte of Hym selfene,  
Or myracle of hys modyre, *that* mylde es tille alle !"  
He somond *than* *the* schippemene scharpely *ther*-aftyre,

To schake furthe with the schyre mene to schifte the giant's treasure among the clergy and people.  
gudez ;

" Alle the myche tresour that traytour had womnene,

To comouns of the contré, clergye and other,

Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople, 1216

That none pleyne of theire parte, o peyne of your lyfez."

He comande hys cosyne, with knyghtlyche wordez,

To make a kyrke on the cragg, ther the corse lengez,

And a couent there-in, Criste for to serfe, 1220 A church and convent are to be built on the cliff.

In mynde of that martyre, that in the monte rystez.

Q wen Sir Arthur the kynge had kyllled the gyaunt,

Than blythely fro Bareflete he buskes one themorne,

With his batelle one brede, by tha blythe stremes ; 1224

To-warde Castelle Blanke he chesez hym the waye,

Thurgh a faire champayne, vndyr schalke hyllis ;

The kyng fraystez a furth ouer the fresche strandez,

ffoundez with his faire folke ouer as hym lykez : 1228 [leaf 66, back]

ffurthe stepes that steryne, and strekez his tentis

One a strenghe by a streme, in thas straytt landez.

Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene while,

Thare comez two messangers of tha fere marchez, 1232

ffra the marschalle of Fraunce, and menskfully hym gretes,

Be-soghte hym of sucour, and saide hym thise wordez,—

" Sir, thi marschalle, thi mynistre, thy mercy be-sekez,

Of thy mekille magestee, fore mendement of thi pople,

Of thise marchez-mene, that thus are myskaryede,

And thus merrede amange, maugree theire eghne ;

I witter the the emperour es entirde in-to Fraunce,

With ostes of enmyse, orrible and huge ; 1240

Brynez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,

And brittenes thi baronage, that bieldez thare-in ;

He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,

Countrese and castelles that to thy coroun lañgez ; 1244 seizing castles,

Confoundez thy comouns, clergye and other ;

Bot thow comfurth theme, sir kynge, couer salle they

neuer !

He fellez forestez fele, forrayse thi landez,

When the giant is slain, Arthur moves from Bareflete to Castle Blan.

Then come two messengers from the Marshal of France, who acquaint Arthur

with the mischief which the Emperor Lucius is working in France,

confounding the commons,

felling forests,

taking goods,

killing dukes and  
douze-peers.Therefore they  
desire Arthur's  
help.He sends some  
of his knights to  
the emperor,to bid him de-  
part out of his  
kingdom, or meet  
him in battle.

[leaf 67]

ffrysthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople ; 1248

*Thus he fellez thi folke, and fangez theire gudez !*

ffremely the Franche tungē fey es be-lefede.

He drawes in-to douce Fraunce, as Duche-men tellez,

Dresside with his dragouns, dredfull to schewe ; 1252

Alle to dede they dyghte with dynntys of swerdez,

Dukez and dusperes, *that dreches thare-ine* ;ffor-thy the lordez of the lande, ladys and *other*,Prayes the for Petyr luffe, *the apostylle* of Rome,Sen thow arte presant in place, *that thow wille profyre*

make

To *that perilous prynce*, be processe of tyme. 1258

He ayers by ȝone hilles, ȝone heghe holtez vndyr,

Hufes thare with hale strenghe of haythene kyngez ;

Helpe nowe for His lufe, that heghe in heuene sittez,

And talke tristly to theme, *that thus vs destroyes !*"The kynge biddis *sir Boice*, " buske the be-lyfe !Take with the *sir Berille*, and Bedwere the ryche, 1264Sir Gawayne and *sir Gryme*, these galyarde knyghez,And graythe ȝowe to ȝone grene wode, and gose ouer  
ther nedes ;

Saise to syr Lucius, to vn-lordly he wyrkez,

Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople ; 1268

I lette hym or oghte lange, ȝif me *the lyffe* happene,Or many lyghte sallē lawe, *that hym ouere lande folowes*.

Comande hym kenely wyt̄h crewelle wordez,

Cayre owte of my kyngrype with his kydd knyghez ;

In caase that he wille noghte, *that cursede wreche*,

Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones ! 1274

Thane sallē we rekkene fulle rathe, whatt ryghte *that he*  
claymes,Thus to ryot *this rewme* and raunsone the pople !

Thare sallē it derely be delte with dynntez of handez :

The Dryghtene at Domesdaye dele as hym lykes !"

Now thei graythe theme to goo, theis galyarde knyghez,

Alle gleterande in golde, appone grete stedes, 1280

To-warde the grene wode, *that with growndene wapyne*,The knights go  
on their errand  
glittering in gold  
upon great steeds.

To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone.

Thise hende houez on a hille by *the holte eynes*,  
Be-helde *the howsynge fulle hye* of hathene kynges—  
They herde in theire herbergage hundrethez fulle many,  
Hornez of olyfantez fulle helych blawene—  
They see the luxuriuous camp of the heathen kings,

Palaisez proudliche pyghte, *that palyd ware ryche*,  
Of palle and of purpure, *wyth precyous stones*; 1288  
Pensels and pomelle of ryche prynce armez,  
Pighte in *the playne mede*, *the pople to schewe*.

And thane the Romayns so ryche had arayede their <sup>and the rich tents of the Romans.</sup>  
tentez,

On rawe by *the ryuere*, *vndyr the round hillez*, 1292

The emperour for honour ewyne in the myddes,  
Wyth egles al ouer ennelled so faire:

And saw hym and *the sowdane*, and *senatours* many,  
Seke to-warde a sale *with sextene kyngez*, 1296  
Syland softly in, swettly by theme selfene,

The Roman emperor and the sultan are going to banquet together.

To sowpe withe *that soueraygne*, *ffulle selcouthe metez*.  
Nowe they wende ouer the watyre, *thise wyrchipfulle  
knyghtez*,

Thurgh *the wode* to *the wone*, there the wyese rystez;  
Reght as *they* hade weschen, and went to *the table*,  
Sir Wawayne *the worthethy vn-wynly* he spekes,—  
“The myghte and the maiestee, *that menskes vs alle*,  
That was merked and made thurgh *the myghte* of Hym  
seluene, 1304

The knights present themselves.  
Sir Gawaine delivers the message,

Gyffe *ȝow* sytte in *ȝour* sette, Sowdane and *other*,  
That here are semblede in sale, *vn-sawghte mott ȝe  
worthe*!

And *the fals heretyke*, *that emperour* hym callez,  
That occupyes in erroure the empyre of Rome, 1308

Sir Arthure herytage, *that honourable kynge*,  
That alle his auncestres aughte bot Vtere hymne one,  
That ilke cursynge *that Cayme kaghte* for his brothyre,  
Cleffe one *the*, cukewalde, *with crouñe* ther thow lengez,  
ffor the vnlordlyeste lede *that I on lukede euer*! 1313

and upbraids with  
haughty words  
the Roman emperor;

My lorde meruailleſ hym mekylle, mane, be my trouthe,

Why thou morthires his mene, *that no mysse serues,*  
*Comouns of the countré, clergye and other,* 1316  
*That are noghte coupable ther-in, ne knawes noght in*  
*armez.*

ffor-thi the comelyche kynge, curtays and noble,  
*Comandez the kenely to kaire of his landes,*  
*Ore elles for thy knyghthede encontre hym ones ;* 1320  
*Sen thou couettes the corouñe, latte it be declarede !*  
*I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,*  
*Be-fore alle thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and other.*  
*Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte thou no lengere,*  
*That we may schifte at the schorte, and schewe to my*  
*lorde.”* 1325

Then he asks for  
an answer.

The emperor  
replies,

The emperor ansuerde wytli austerityne wordez,  
“*þe are with myne enmy, sir Arthure hym seluene !*  
*It es none honour to me to owttray hys knyghtez,*  
*Thoghe þe bee irous mene, that ayres one his nedez ;*  
*Bot say to thy soueraygne, I send hym thes wordez,*  
*Ne ware it for reuerence of my ryche table,*  
*Thou sulde repent fulle rathe of thi ruyde wordez !* 1332  
*Siche a rebawde as thowe rebuke any lordez,*  
*Wyth theire retenuz arrayede, fulle realle and noble !*  
*Here wille I suggourne, whilles me lefe thynkes,*  
*And sythene seke in by Sayne with solace ther-aftere ;*  
*Ensegge all tha cetese be the salte strandez,* 1337  
*And seyne ryde in by Rone, that rynnez so faire,*  
*And of alle his ryche castelles rusche doune the wallez ;*  
*I sallle noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,*  
*His parte of a pechelyne, proue whene hym lykes !”*

threatening the  
knights for their  
audacity.

He will stay in  
Arthur's land as  
long as he pleases,

and destroy his  
cities and castles.

Whereupon Sir  
Gawaine desires  
himself to fight  
with him,

but Sir Gayous,  
uncle to the  
Roman emperor,  
answers and  
charges the Brit-  
ish knights with  
being braggarts.

“ Now, certez,” sais sir Wawayne, “ myche wondyre  
*haue I,* 1342  
*That syche an alfyne as thou dare speke syche wordez !*  
*I had leuer thene alle Fraunce, that heuede es of rewmes,*  
*ffyghte with the faythefully one felde be oure one.”*  
*Thane answers sir Gayous fulle gobbede wordes,—*  
*Was eme to the emperor, and erle hym selfene,—*  
“ *Euere ware thes Bretouns braggers of olde !* 1348

bids him depart,  
or do battle with  
[leaf 67, back]  
the king.

Loo ! how he brawles hym for hys bryghte wedes,  
 As he myghte bryttyne vs alle with his brande ryche !  
 3itt he berkes myche boste, 3one boy there he standes !”

Thane greuyde sir Gawayne at his grett wordes, 1352  
 Graythes to-warde *the gome with gruechande herte* ;  
 With hys stelyne brande he strykes of hys heuede,  
 And sterttes owtte to hys stede, and with his stale  
 wendes !

Thurgh *the wacches they wente, thes wirchipfulle knyghtez*, 1356 Then the British knights fly with all speed.

And fyndez in theire fare-waye wondyrlyche many ;  
 Ouer *the watyre they wente by wyghtnesse of horses*,  
 And tuke wynde as *they walde by the wodde hemmes*.  
 Thane folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe, 1360

And of *the Romayns arrayed appone ryche stedes*, The Romans give chase.  
 Chasede thurgh *a champayne oure cheualrous knyghtez*,  
 Till *a cheefe forest, one schalke whitte horses*.

Bot a freke alle in fyne golde, and fretted in salle, 1364  
 Come forthermaste on a fresone, in flawmande wedes ;  
 A faire floreschte spere in fewtyre he castes,  
 And folowes faste one owre folke, and freschelye ascryez,

Thane sir Gawayne the gude appone a graye stede,  
 He gryppes hym a grete spere, and graythelyme hittez ;  
 Thurgh *the guttez in-to the gorre he gyrdes hym ewyne*,  
 That the groundene stele glydez to his herte ! 1371

The gome and *the grette horse at the grounde lyggez*,  
 ffullle gryselyche gronande, for grefe of his woundez.

Thane presez a preker ine, fulle proudlye arayede,  
 That beres alle of pourpour, palyde *with syluer* :  
 Byggly on a broune stede he profers fulle large. 1376

He was a paynyme of Perse *that thus hym persuede*.  
 Sir Boys vn-abaiste alle he buskes hym a-gaynes,  
 With a bustous launce he berez hym thurgh,

*That the breme and the brade schelde appone the bente lyggez !* 1380

And he bryngez furthe the blade, *and bownez to his feloweze*.

On this Sir Gawayne rushes at him and strikes off his head.

The Romans give chase.

[leaf 68]  
 The foremost of the pursuers is slain by Sir Gawayne.

Another knight, a paynyme of Persia, is thrust through by Sir Boys.

Sir Feltemour  
seeks to avenge  
Sir Gayous,

Thane *sir Feltemour* of myghte, a man mekylle praysede,  
Was mouede one his manere, and manacede fulle faste;  
He graythes to *sir Gawayne* graythely to wyrche, 1384  
ffor grefe of *sir Gayous*, *that es one grounde leuede*.  
Thane *sir Gawayne* was glade ; agayne hym he rydez,  
Wyt̄h Galuth̄ his gude swerde graythely hym hyt̄tez ;  
The knyghte one *the coursere* he cleuede in sondyre, 1388  
Clenlyche fro *the croune* his corse he dyuysyde,  
And *thus* he killez the knyghte with his kydd wapene !

but Sir Gawayne  
cleaves him  
asunder.

Then a rich man  
of Rome suggests  
a retreat.

Than a ryche mane of Rome relyede to his byerns,—  
“ It sallē repent vs fulle sore and we ryde forthire !  
Zone are bolde bosturs, *that syche bale wyrkez* ; 1393  
It be-felle hym fulle foule, *that thame so fyrste namede*.”

The rich Romans  
return,

Thane *the riche Romayns* retournes *thaire brydilles*  
To *thaire tentis* in tene, telles theire lordez  
How *sir Marschalle de Mowne* es on *the monte lefede*,  
ffore-justyde at that journee, for his grett japez.  
Bot thare chasez one oure mene cheuallrous knyghtez,  
ffyfe thosande folke appone faire stedes, 1400  
ffaste to a foreste ouer a felle watyr,  
That fillez fro *the falow* see fyfty myle large.

but five thousand  
horsemen still  
pursue the  
knights,

and fall upon  
an ambush of  
Britons,

Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,  
Of *the cheualrye cheefe* of *the kyngez chambyre*, 1404  
Seese theme chase oure mene, and changene *theire horsez*,  
And choppe dounē cheftaynes, *that they moste chargyde*.

who break out  
suddenly on  
them,

with shouts of  
“ Arthur.”

Thane *the enbuschement* of Bretons brake owte at ones,  
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez, 1408  
Arrestede of *the Romayns*, *that by the fyrthe rydez*,  
Alle *the realeste renkes* *that to Rome lengez* ;  
Thay ic̄he on *the enmyse* and egerly strykkys,  
Erles of Inglande, and “ Arthure ! ” ascryyes, 1412  
Thrughe brenes and bryghte scheldez, brestez they thyrle,  
Bretons of the boldeste with theire bryghte swerdez.  
Thare was Romayns ouer-redyne, and ruydly wondye,  
Arrestede as rebawdez, with rytoous knyghtez ! 1416  
The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones,  
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys !

[leaf 68, back]

The Romans are  
defeated and  
driven back,

To the senatour Petyr a sandes-mane es commyne,  
And saide, "sir, sekyrly, ȝour seggez are supprysside!"

Than tene thowsande mene he semblede at ones,  
And sett sodanly one oure seggez, by the salte strandez ;

but the Senator  
Peter sends ten  
thousand men.

Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttile,  
Bot ȝit the banerettez bolde, and bachelers noble, 1424

Brekes that battailles<sup>1</sup> with brestez of stedes ;

Sir Boice and his bolde mene myche bale wyrkes !

The Romaynes redyes thane, arrayez thame better,  
And al to-ruscheez oure mene withe theire ryste horsez,  
Arestede of the richest of the Rounde Table,

Ouer-rydez oure rerewarde, and grette rewthe wyrkes !

Than the Bretons on the bente habyddez no lengere, The Britons are  
Bot fleede to the foreste, and the feelde leuede ; 1432 repulsed, and  
fly to the forest.

Sir Berylle es borne downe and sir Boice takene,  
The beste of oure bolde mene vnblythely wondyde ;

Sir Beryll is borne  
down and Sir  
Boice taken,

Bot ȝitt oure stale one a strenghe stotais a lyttile,  
Alleto-stonayede with the stokes<sup>2</sup> of tha steryeknyghez ;

but again they  
make a little  
stand,

Made sorowe fore theire soueraygne, that so thare was  
nomene,

grieving for the  
loss of their  
leader, and pray  
for succour.

Be-soughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde !

Than commez sir Idrus, armede vp at alle ryghtez,  
Wyth fyue hundrethe mene appone faire stedes, 1440

Sir Idrus comes  
to their aid with  
five hundred  
men.

ffraynez faste at oure folke freschely thare-aftyre,

ȝif ther frendez ware ferre, that one the felde foundide.

Than sais sir Gawayne, "so me God helpe !

We hafe bene chased to daye, and chullede as hares,  
Rebuyked with Romaynes appone theire ryche stedes,

Sir Gawaine la-  
ments the check  
which Arthur's  
men had re-  
ceived.

And we lurkede vndyr lee as lowrande wreches ! 1446

I luke neuer one my lorde the dayes of my lyfe,

And weso lytherly hym helpe, that hymeso welelykede !

Than the Bretons brothely brochez theire stedes,  
And boldly in batelle appone the bent rydes ; 1450

The British re-  
turn to the fray.

Alle the ferse mene be-fore frekly ascrys,

fferkand in the foreste, to freschene thame selfene.

The Romaynes thane redyly arrayes theme bettyre,

The Romans pre-  
pare themselves  
against them.

<sup>1</sup> MS. baitailles.

<sup>2</sup> ? strokes.

One rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez theire wapyns,  
By the ryche reuare, and rewles *the* pople ;  
And with reddour *sir* Boice es in areste haldene. 1456

Now thei semblede vnsaughte by *the* salte stranidez ;  
Saddly theis sekere menn settys *the*ire dynttez,  
With lulfy launcez one lofte they luyschene to-gedyres,  
In Lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes. 1460

A fierce battle ensues.

Thare ware gomes thurghe-girde with grundyne wapynes,  
Grisely gayspande with gruechande lotes !

Grete lordes of Greke greffede so hye ;  
Swyftly with swerdes, they swappene there-aftyre, 1464  
Swappez doune ffuller sweperlye swelltande knyghez,<sup>1</sup>  
That alle swelltez one swarthe, that they ouer-swyngene,

So many sweys in swoghe swounande att ones !

Syr Gaweayne the gracyous fulle graythelye he wyrkkes,  
The gretteste he gretez wyth gryeslye wondēs ;

Wyth Galuth he gyrdez doune fulle galyarde knyghez,  
ffore greefe of *the* grett lorde so grymlye he strykez !

He rydez furthe ryallye and redely there-aftyre, 1472  
Thare this realle renke was in areste haldene ;

He ryfez *the* rannke stele, he ryghttez *the*ire brenez,  
And refte them the ryche mane, and radē to his strenghes.

The senator Peter thane persewede hym aftyre, 1476  
Thurgh *the* presse of *the* pople, wyth his pryce knyghez ;

Appertly fore *the* pryonere proues his strenghes,  
Wyth prekers the proudeste that to *the* presse lengez ;  
Wrothely on *the* wrange handes *sir* Gawayne he strykkes,  
Wyth a wapene of were vnewynny hym hittez ; 1481

The breny one *the* bakhalfē he brystez in sondyre !  
Bot ȝit he broghte forthe *sir* Boyce, for alle *the*ire bale  
biernez !

Rejoiced at this  
but in spite of  
him Sir Gawayne  
rescues Sir Boyce.

Thane *the* Bretones boldlye braggene *the*ire tromppez,  
And fore blysse of *sir* Boyce was broghte owtte of bandez,  
Boldely in batelle they bere doune knyghez ; 1486  
With brandes of brōune stele *they* brettene maylez ;  
*Thay* stekede stedys in stoure with stelene wapynes,

<sup>1</sup> MS. knyghez.

And alle stewedē wyt̄h strenghe, *that stode theme agaynes!*

Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne thane "Arthure!" ascryeez,  
Assemblez one *the senatour* wyt̄h sextene knyghtez,  
Of the sekereste mene *that to oure syde lengede.* 1492

Sir Idrus, with  
sixteen knights,  
attacks the  
senator,

Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,  
ffloynes faste att *the fore breste with flawmande swerdez,*  
And feghttes faste att *the fronte freschely thare-aftyre;*  
ffelles fele on *the felde appone the ferrere syde,* 1496  
ffey on *the faire felde by tha fresche strandez.*

Bot sir Idrus fytz Ewayne anters hym seluene,  
And enters in anly, and egyrlly strykez,  
Sekez to *the senatour* and sesez his brydille, 1500

Vnsaughtely he saide hym *these sittande wordez,—*

"*Želde the, sir, ȝapely, ȝife thou thi lyfe ȝernez,*  
fforegyfitez *that thou gyffemay, thou ȝeme now the selfene;*  
ffore dredlez dreche *thow, or droppe any wylez,* 1504  
*Thow sallē dy this daye thorowē dyntt of my handez!"*  
"I ascente," *quod the senatour*, "so me Criste helpe!  
So that I be safe broghte be-fore *the kyngē seluene;*  
Raunsone me resonabillye, as I may ouer-reche, 1508  
Aftyre my renttez in Rome may redyly forthire."

and takes him  
prisoner.

The senator de-  
sires to be  
brought to the  
king.

Thane answers sir Idrus with austeryne wordez,  
"Thow sallē hafe condycyone, as *the kyngē lykes,*  
Whene thow comes to *the kythē* there the courte haldez;  
In caase his concelle bee to kepe the no langere, 1513  
To be killydeat his commandment his knyghtez be-fore."  
*Thay ledde hym furthe in the rowte, and lached ofe  
his wedes,*

Sir Idrus answers  
him roughly.

[leaf 69, back]

Leftē hym wyt̄h Lyonelle and Lowelle hys brothire.

O-lawe in *the launde thane*, by *the lythe strandez,*  
Sir Lucius lygge-mene<sup>1</sup> loste are fore euer!

He gives the  
senator into the  
charge of Sir  
Lionel and Sir  
Lowell.

The senatour Peter es prysoner takyne! 1519

Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe fulle many price knyghtez,  
And myche pople wyt̄h alle perischede *thame selfene!*  
ffor presse of *the passage*, they plungede<sup>2</sup> at onez!

Thare myghte mene see Romaynez rewfully wondyde,

Many of the  
Romans are slain.

<sup>1</sup> Or legge-mene.

<sup>2</sup> MS. repeats they plungede.

Ouer-redyne with renkes of the Round Table ! 1524

In the raike of the furthe they rightene theire brenys,  
That rane alle one reede blode redylye alle ouer ;  
They raughte in the rerewarde fulle ryotous knyghtez,  
ffor raunsone<sup>1</sup> of rede golde and realle stedys ; 1528  
Radly relayes, and restez theire horsez,  
In rowtte to the ryche kynge they rade al at onez.

The knights ride  
back towards the  
king, and send  
him the news of  
their success.

A knyghte cayrez be-fore, and to the kynge telles,—  
“Sir, here commez thy messangerez with myrthez fro  
the mountez, 1532

Thay hafe bene machede to daye with mene of the marchez,  
ffore-maglede in the marras with meruailous knyghtez !  
We hafe foughtene in faithe, by ȝone fresche strandez,  
With the frekkest folke that to thi foo langez ; 1536  
ffyfty thosannde one felde of ferse mene of armez,  
Wyth-in a furlange of waye, fay ere by-lefede !  
We hafe eschewede this chekke, thurghe chance of oure

Lorde,

Of tha cheualrous mene that chargede thy pople ! 1540  
The cheefe chauncelere of Rome, a cheftayne fulle noble,  
Wille aske the chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfene ;  
And the senatour Petire to prisoner es takyne.

They tell him  
that they have  
slain fifty thou-  
sand men,

Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe 1544  
Commez prekande in the presse, with thy prysse knyghtez,  
With pouerte in thi presone theire paynez to drye.  
I be-seke ȝow, sir, say whate ȝowe lykes,  
Whethire ȝe suffyre theme saughte, or sone delyuerde.

Arthur may de-  
mand sixty  
horse-loads of  
silver for the  
senator,  
and for the chan-  
cellor, chariots  
full of gold.

The other pri-  
soners may be  
kept until their  
rents are knownn.

ȝe may haue fore the senatour sextie horse chargede  
Of siluer be Seterdaye, fulle sekyrly payede,  
And for the cheefe chauncelere, the cheualere noble,  
Charottez chokkefulle charegyde with golde ; 1552  
The remenaunt of the Romayne be in areste haldene,  
Tille thiere renttez in Rome be rightewissly knawene.  
I be-seke ȝow, sir, certfyfe ȝone lordez,  
ȝif ȝe wille send thame ouer the see, or kepe thame ȝour  
selfene. 1556

<sup>1</sup> MS. raunsone.

Alle ȝour sekyre mene for sothe sounde are by-leuyde,  
Sauē sir Ewayne fytz Henry es in the side wonddede."

All Arthur's men  
have escaped,  
save Sir Ewaine,  
who is wounded.

"Crist be thankyde," quod the kynge, "and hys clere  
modyre,

[leaf 70]  
The king rejoices.

That ȝowe comforthede and helpede be crafte of hym  
selfene ; 1560

Skilfull skomfyture he skiftez as hym lykez,  
Is none so skathlye may skape, ne skewe fro his handez ;  
Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,

The fate of battle,  
he says, is in the  
hands of God.

Alle es demyd and delte at Dryghtynez wille ! 1564

I kwne the thanke for thy come, it comfortes vs alle !

He thanks the  
knight for his  
tidings, and gives  
him for reward  
the city of To-  
louse.

Sir knyghte," sais the conquerour, "so me Criste helpe !

I ȝif the for thy thyȝandez Tolouse the riche,

The tolle and the tachementez, tauernez and other, 1568

The towne and the tenementez with towrez so hye,

That towchez to the temporaltee, whilles my tyme lastez.

Bot say to the senatour I sende hym thes wordez,  
Thare sallē no siluer hym sauē, bot Ewayne recouere ;  
I had leuer see hym synke one the salte strandez,

The senator shall  
not be ransomed  
save Sir Ewaine  
recovers.

Than the seegge ware seke, that es so sore woundede ;

I sallē disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe ! 1575

The others shall  
be divided into  
different coun-  
tries.

And sett theme fulle solytarie, in sere kyngez landez :

Sallē he neuer sownde see his seynowres in Rome,

Ne sitt in the assemblé, in syghte wyth his feris ;

ffor it comes to no kynge that conquerour es holdene,

To comone with his captifis fore couatys of siluer : 1580

Arthur holds that  
to accept ransom  
becomes not a  
king.

It come neuer of knyghthede, knawe it ȝif hym lyke,

To carpe of coseri, whene captifis ere takyne ;

It aughte to no prisoners to prese no lordez,

Ne come in presens of pryncez, whene partyes are mouede.

Comaunde ȝone constable, the castelle that ȝemes,

They are to take  
the senator to  
the constable and  
bid him keep him  
safe.

That he be clenlyche kepede, and in close haldene ;

He sallē haue maundement to-morne or myddaye be

roungene, 1587

To whatmarche thay sallē merke, with mangerē to lengene."

Thay conuaye this captife with clenē mene of armez,

And kend hym to the constable, alis the kynge byddez ;

The knights  
obey, and then

return to Arthur  
to give him the  
emperor's mes-  
sage.

Arthur greatly  
commands his  
knights for their  
boldness, and  
promises them  
rewards.

In the morning  
Sir Cador and his  
knights are bid  
to take the pri-  
soners

[leaf 70, back]  
to Paris, and to  
give them into  
the care of the  
provost.

The British  
knights depart  
towards Chartres.

But the emperor  
had dispatched a  
chosen band to  
intercept them.

And seyne to Arthure *they ayre*, and egerly hym towchez  
The answere of *the emperour*, irows of dedez. 1592

Thane *sir* Arthure, one erthe atheliste of *othere*,  
At euene at his awene borde auantid his lordez,—

“Me aughte to honour theme in erthe ouer alle *other*  
thynges,

*That thus in myne absens awnters theme selfene* ; 1596

I sall theme luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde helpe !

And gyfe *them* landysfull large, whare theme beste lykes ;

Thay sall enoghte losse, on *this* layke, ȝif me lyfe happene,

*That thus are lamede for my lufe be this lythe strandez.*”

Bot in *the* clere daweyng, *the* dere kynge hym selfene

Comaundyd *sir* Cadore with his dere knyghttes,

Sir Cleremus, *sir* Cleremonde, with clene mene of armez,

Sir Clowdmur, *sir* Clegis, to conuaye theis lordez ; 1604

Sir Boyce and *sir* Berelle with baners displayede,

Sir Bawdwyne, *sir* Bryane, and *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche,

Sir Raynalde and *sir* Richere, Rawlaunde childyre,

To ryde with *the* Romaynes in rowtte wyth theire feres.

“ Prekez now preualye to Parys the ryche,  
Wyth Petir the prissonere and his price knyghtez ;  
Be-teche *tham* the proueste, in presens of lordez,

O payne and o perelle *that* pendes there-too, 1612

That they be weisely wachede and in warde holdene,

Wardede of warantizez with wyrchipfull knyghtez ;

Wagge hyme wyghte mene, and woonde for no silyre ;

I haffe warnede *that* wy, be ware ȝife hyme lykes !”

**N**ow bownes *the* Bretones, als *the* kynge bydde, 1617  
Buskez theire batelles, theire baners displayez ;

To-wardez Chartris they chese, thes cheualrous knyghtez,

And in the champayne lande fulle faire thay eschewede :

ffor *the* emperour of myghte had ordande hym selfene

Sir Vtolfe and *sir* Ewandyre, two honourable kyngez,

Erles of *the* Oriente, with austeryne knyghtez,

Of *the* awntrouseste mene *that* to his oste lengede, 1624

Sir Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,

The kynge of Surrye hym selfe with Sarzyne ynowe,  
 The senatour of Sutere wyt̄h sowmes fulle huge, 1627  
 Whas assygnede to that courte be sent of his peres,  
 Traise to-warde Troys *the tresone*<sup>1</sup> to wyrke,  
 To hafe be-trappedpe with a trayne oure truelande  
 knyghttez,  
 That hade persayfede that Peter at Parys sulde lenge,  
 In presonne with the prouoste, his paynez to drye. 1632  
 ffor-thi they buskede theme bownne with baners dis-  
 playede,

In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes fulle hugge ;  
 Planttez theme in the pathe with powere arrayede,

To pyke vp the prisoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.

**S**yr Cadore of Cornewalle comaundez his peris, 1637  
 Sir Clegis, sir Cleremus, sir Cleremownnde the noble,

“Here es the close of Clyme with clewes so hye ;

Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large ; 1640

Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and other,

That no skathelle in the skroggez skorne vs here-aftyre ;

Loke ȝe skyfte it so that vs no skathe lympe,

ffor na skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer.” 1644

**N**ow they hye to the holte, thes harageous knyghttez,

To herkene of the hye mene to helpene theis lordez ;

ffyndez theme helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,

Houande one the hye waye by the holte hemmes. 1648

With knyghttly contenaunce Sir Clegis hym selfene

Kryes to the compayne, and carpes thees wordez,—

“Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or other,

Wille kyth for his kynge lufe craftes of armes ? 1652

We are comene fro the kyng of this lythe ryche,

That knawene es for conquerour, corownde in erthe,

His ryche retenuz here alle of his Round Table,

To ryde with that realle in rowtt where hym lykes ;

We seke justynge of werre, ȝif any wille happyne, 1657

Of the jolyeste mene ajuggedede be lordes ;

They take up a position in the path of Arthur's men.

Sir Cador keeps a sharp look out,

and discovers the enemy, armed and mounted, waiting by the skirts of a wood.

Sir Clegis challenges any knight among them to the combat.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *the tresone the tresone*.

If here be any hathelle mane, erle or *other*,  
That for *the emperour* lufe wille awntere hym selfene."

[leaf 71]

An earl of the  
Roman party up-  
braids Arthur  
and his knights.

And ane erle *thane* in angere answeres hym sone,—

" Me angers at Arthure, and att his hathelle bierns,

That thus in his errorre occupyes theis rewmes ;

And owtrayes *the emperour*, his erthely lorde ! 1664

The araye and *the ryalltez* of *the Rounde Table*

Es wyt̄h rankour rehersede in rewmes fulle many ;

Of oure renttez of Rome syche reuelle he haldys,

He<sup>1</sup> sallē ȝife resounē fulle rathe, ȝif vs reghte happenē,

That many sallē repente that in his rowtte rydez, 1669

ffor the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfene !"

Sir Clegis  
answers him,

" A ! " sais *sir Clegis thane*, " so me Criste helpe !

I knawe be thi carpynge a cowntere *the semes* !

Bot be *thou* auditoure, or erle, or *emperour* thi selfene,

Appone Arthurez by-halue I answerē the sone : 1674

The renke so realle, *that* rewlez vs alle,

The ryotous mene and *the ryche* of *the Rounde Table*,

He has araysede his accownte, and redde alle his rollez,

ffor he wylle gyfe a rekenyng that rewe sallē aftyre,

That alle *the ryche* sallē repeñte *that* to Rome langez,

Or *the rereage* be requit<sup>2</sup> of rentez *that* he claymez !

We crafe of ȝour curtaisie three coursez of werre, 1681

And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to ȝour selfene !

ȝe do bott trayne vs to daye wyt̄h trofelande wordez !

Of syche trauaylande mene trecherye me thynkes ! 1684

Sende owte sadly certayne knyghtez,

Or say me sekerly sothe, for-sake ȝif ȝowe lykes."

**T**hanē sais *the kynge* of *Surry*, " Alls sauē me oure  
Lorde !

ȝif thou hufe alle *the daye*, *thou* bees noghte delyuerede,

Bot thou sekerly ensure with certeyne knyghtez, 1689

*That thi cote and thi breste be knawene with lordez,*

*Of armes of ancestrye, entyrde with londez."*

The king of Syria  
insinuates that  
Sir Clegis may  
not be of noble  
ancestry.

Sir Clegis replies  
scornfully

" Sir kyng," sais *sir Clegys*, " fulle knyghtly *thow* askez :  
I trowe it be for cowardys *thow* carpes thes wordez :

\* MS. Ne.

2 Looks like requiter in MS.

Myne armez are of ancestrye enueryde with lordez,  
And has in banere bene borne sene *sir* Brut tyme ;

that his ancestors  
were at the siege  
of Troy.

At the cité of Troye *that* tymme was ensegede, 1696

Ofte seene in asawtte with certayne knyghtez,  
ffro the Borghte broghte vs and alle oure bolde elders,  
To Bretayne the braddere, with-in chippe-burdez."

"Sir," sais *sir* Sextenour, "saye what *the* lykez,  
And we sall suffyre the, als vs beste semes ; 1701  
Luke thi troumppez be trussede, and trofullle no lengere,  
ffor thoghe thou tarye alle *the* daye, the tyddes no bettyr !  
ffor there sall neuer Romayne, *that* in my rowtt rydez,  
Be with rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne !"

Sir Sextenour  
declares that the  
Romans are  
ready for the  
fray.

Thane *sir* Clegis to *the* kynge a lyttile enclinede,  
Kayres to *sir* Cadore, and knyghtly hym tellez,— 1707  
"We hafe foundene in ȝone firthe, floreschede with leues,  
*The flour* of the faireste folke *that* to *thi* foo langez,  
ffifty thosandez of folke of ferse mene of armez,  
That faire are fewteride on frounte vndyr ȝone fre bowes ;  
They are enbuschede one blonkkes, with baners dis-  
playede, 1712

Sir Clegis tells  
*sir* Cadore that a  
vast number of  
the enemy are  
drawn up in the  
wood,

[leaf 71, back]

In ȝone bechene wode appone the waye sydes.

Thay hafe the furthe for-sette alle of *the* faire watyre,  
That fayfully of force feghte vs byhowys ;  
ffor thus vs schappes to daye, schortly to telle, 1716  
Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft as *the* lykes."

and suggests a  
retreat.

"Nay," *quod* Cadore, "so me Criste helpe !

Sir Cadore scorns  
to retreat.

It ware schame *that* we scholde schone for so lytyle !

Sir Lancelott sall neuer laughe, *that* with *the* kyng  
lengez, 1720

Never shall Sir  
Lancelot laugh  
at him.

That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe ;

He will die be-  
fore he turn back  
for any dog's son  
of them all.

I sall be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,

ffor drede of any doggesone in ȝone dyme schawes !"

*S*yr Cadore thane knyghtly comforthes his pople, 1724  
And with corage kene he karpes *thes* wordes,—

Sir Cadore exhorts  
his men, and tells  
them of the good  
deeds of Arthur.

"Thynk one *the* valyaunt prynce *that* vesettez vs euer,  
With landez and lordcheppez, whare vs beste lykes ;  
That has vs ducherés delte, and dubbyde vs knyghtez,

Gifene vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,  
 Grewhoudez and grett horse, and alkyne gammes,  
 That gaynez tille any gome, that vndyre God leuez ;  
 Thynke one riche renoune of the Rounde Table, 1732  
 And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romayne in erthe ;  
 ffeyne ȝow noghite feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,  
 Bot luke ȝe fyghte faythefully, frekes ȝour selfene ;  
 I walde be wellyde alle qwyke, and quarterde in sondre,  
 Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge." 1737

He dubs some of  
them knights.

Than this doughty duke dubbyd his knyghtez,  
 Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and other,  
 That ayerez were of Esexe, and alle thase este marchez ;  
 Howelle and Hardelfe, happy in armez, 1741  
 Sir Herylle and sir Herygalle, thise harageouse knyghtez.  
 Than the souerayne assynede certayne lordez,  
 Sir Wawayne, sir Vryelle, sir Bedwere the ryche, 1744  
 Raynallde and Richeere, and Rowlandez childyre,—  
 " Takez kepe one this prynce with ȝoure price knyghtez,  
 And ȝife we in the stour withstondene the better,  
 Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire ; 1748  
 And ȝif the chaunce falle that we bee ouer-charggede,  
 Eschewes to some castelle, and chewyse ȝour selfene ;  
 Or ryde to the riche kynge ȝif ȝow roo happyne, 1751  
 And bidde hym come redily to rescewe hys biernez."

To certain of  
them he gives  
the prisoner in  
charge.

If he is defeated,  
they are to con-  
vey him to some  
castle, or to Ar-  
thur.

The British pre-  
pare for the fight.

And than the Bretons brothely embrassez theire  
 scheldez,  
 Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes theire launcez.  
 Thus he fittez his folke, and to the felde rydez,  
 ffif hundredth one a frounte fewtrede at onez ! 1756  
 With trompes thay trine, and trappedede stedes,  
 With cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes ;  
 Schokkes in with a schakke, and schontez no langere,  
 There schawes ware scheene vndyr the schire eynez.  
 And thane the Romayne rowtte remowes a lyttille,  
 Raykes with a rerewarde thas realle knyghtez ; 1762  
 So raply thay ryde thare, that alle the rowte ryngez,  
 Of ryues and rannke stede, and ryche golde maylez.

Thane schotte owtte of *the schawe schiltounis* many,  
With scharpe wapynns of were schotande at ones :

The kynge of Lebe be-fore the wawarde he ledez,  
And alle his lele lige mene o laundone aseriez.

1768

The king of Lebe  
leads on the  
enemy.

Thane this cruelle kynge castis in fewtire,  
Kaghte hym a couerde horse, and his course haldez,  
Beris to *sir Berille*, and brathely hym hittes,  
Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne !

He attacks Sir  
Berill and slays  
him.

The gome and *the grette* horse at *the grounde* liggez,  
And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym *the saule* !  
Thus es Berelle the bolde broghte owtte of lyue,  
And byddez aftyre beryelle, *that* hym beste lykez.

1776  
And thane *sir Cador* of Cornewayle es carefullie in herte,  
Be-cause of his kynyse-mane, *that thus* es myscaryede ;

Sir Cador is over-  
whelmed with  
grief for his loss.

Vmbeclappes the cors, and kyssez hyme ofte,  
Gerte kepc hym couerte with his clere knyghtez. 1780  
Thane laughes the Lebe kynge, and alle on lowde meles,—  
“*ȝ*one lorde es lyghttede ! me lykes the bettyre !

The king of Lebe  
ridicules him.

He sallie noghte dere vs to daye, the deuylle haue [his]  
bones !”

“*ȝ*one kynge,” said Cador, “ karpes fulle large, 1784  
Be-cause he killyd *this* kene ; Criste hafe *thi* saule !  
He sallie hafe corne bote, so me Criste helpe !  
Or I kaire of *this* coste, we sallie encontre ones !

Sir Cador vows  
vengeance.

So may *the* wynde weile turnne, I quytte hym or ewyne,  
Sothely hym selfene, or summ of his ferez !” 1789

Thane *sir Cador* the kene knyghttly he wyrkez,  
Cryez, “ A ! Cornewale,” and castez in fewtere,  
Girdez streke thourghe *the stour* on a stede ryche !  
Many steryne mane he steride by strenghe of hym one !

He performs  
great deeds of  
valour.

Whene his spere was sprongene, he spedie hym fulle *ȝ*erne,  
Swappede owtte with a swerde, that swykede hym neuer,  
Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, and wounded knyghtez ;  
Wyrkez *his* *ine* wayfare fulle werkand sydez, 1797  
And hewes of *the* hardieste halsez in sondyre,  
That alle blendez with blode thare his blanke rynnez !  
So many biernez the bolde broughte owt of lyfe, 1800

When his lance  
is broken he  
fights with his  
sword.

Tittez tirauntez dounē, and temez<sup>1</sup> theire sadilles,  
And turnezowte of the toile, whene hym tyme thynkez !

Then the king of  
Lebe ironically  
praises his deeds.

[leaf 72, back]

Thane the Lebe kynge criez fulle lowde  
One sir Cador the kene, with cruelle wordez, 1804  
“ Thowe hase wyrchipe wonne, and wondyde knyghtez !  
Thowe wenes fore thi wightenez the werlde es thy  
nowene !

I sallē wayte at thyne honnde, wy, be my trowthe !  
I haue warnede the wele, be ware ȝif the lykez !” 1808

The new-made  
knights, with  
sound of trum-  
pets and spears  
in rest, rush to  
the fray.

With cornuse and clariones theis newe made knyghtez  
Lythes vn-to the crye, and castez in fewtire ;  
fferkes in one a ffrounte one feraunte stede,  
ffellede at the fyrste come fyfty att ones ! 1812  
Schotte thorowe the schiltrouns, and scheuerele launcez,  
Laid dounē in the lumppe lordly biernez !  
And thus nobilly oure newe mene notez theire strenghez.  
Bot new notte es onone that noyes me sore. 1816

The king of Lebe  
comes against  
them.

He makes great  
havoc among the  
new men.

Had not Sir  
Clegis and Sir  
Clement come,  
the new men had  
gone to nought.

Then Sir Cador  
puts his lance in  
rest, and strikes  
the king of Lebe  
fair on the hel-  
met.

The heathen king  
falls to the

The kynge of Lebe has laughte a stede that hym lykede,  
And comes in lordely in lyonez of siluere,  
Vmbelappez the lumpe, and lattes in sondre ;  
Many lede with his launce the liffe has he refede ! 1820  
Thus he chaces the childire of the kyngez chambire,  
And killez in the champanyse cheualrous knyghtez !  
With a chasyngē spere he choppes dounē many ! 1823

Thare was sir Alyduke slayne, and Achinour wondyde,  
Sir Origge and sir Ermynngalle hewene al to pecez !  
And ther was Lewlyne laughte, and Lewlyns brothire,  
With lordez of Lebe, and lede to theire strenghez :  
Ne hade sir Clegis comene, and Clemente the noble,  
Oure newe mene hade gone to noghte, and many ma  
other.

Thane sir Cador the kene castez in fewtire 1830  
A cruelle launce and a kene, and to the kynge rydez,  
Hittez hym heghe one the helme with his harde wapene,  
That alle the hotte blode of hym to his hande rynnez !  
The hethene harageous kynge appone the hethe lyggez,

<sup>1</sup> MS. repeats and temez.

And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer ! ground mortally wounded.  
 Thane *sir Cador* the kene cryez fulle lowde,— 1836

“Thow has corne botte, *sir* kynge, thare God gyfe the Sir Cador tri-  
umphs over him.  
 sorowe,  
 Thow killyde my cosyne, my kare es the lesse !  
 Kele the nowe in the claye, and comforthe thi selfene !  
 Thow skornede vs lang ere with thi skornefuller wordez,  
 And nowe has *thow* cheuede soo ; it es thyne awene  
 skathe !

Holde at *thow* hente has, it harmez bot lyttile,  
 ffor hethynge es hame holde, vse it who so wille.”

**T**he kyng of Surry thane es sorowfuller in herte, 1844 The king of Syria, full of grief, assembles his Saracens for vengeance.  
 fforsake of thissoueraygñe, that *thus* was supprissede ;  
 Semblede his Sarazenes, and senatours manye :  
 Vnsaughly they sette thane appone oure sere knyghttez ;

Sir Cador of Cornewaile he cownterez theme sone, 1848 Sir Cador and his men slay fifty thousand of them at once.  
 With his kydde companye clenlyche arrayede ;  
 In the frount of the fyrthe, as the waye forthis,  
 fyfty thosande of folke was fellide at ones !

Thare was at the assemblé certayne knyghttez, 1852 Certain knights are sorely wounded [leaf 73] by the Saracens.  
 Sore wondede sone appone sere halves ;  
 The sekereste Sarzanez that to *that* sorte lengede,  
 Be-hynde the sadylles ware sette sex fotte large ;  
 They scherde in the schiltronre scheldyde knyghttez,  
 Schalkes they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez,  
 Thurghe brenys browdene brestez they thirllede,  
 Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre ;

Blasons blode and blankes they hewene, 1860 The field runs blood.  
 With brandez of browne stele brankkand stede !

The Bretones brothely brittenez so many,  
 The bente and the brode felde alle one blode rynnys !  
 Be thane *sir Cayous* the kene a capitayne has wonnene,  
 Sir Clegis clynges in, and clekes another ; 1865 Sir Clegis takes prisoner the captain of Cordova.  
 The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire the kynge selfene,  
 That was keye of the kythe of alle *that* coste ryche,  
 Vtolfe and Ewandre, Ioneke had nommene, 1868  
 With the erle of Affryke and other grette lordes.

Sir Cador takes  
the king of Syria.

**T**he kynge of Surry the kene to *sir Cador es ȝeldene*,<sup>1</sup>  
The synechalle of Sotere to Segramoure hym selfene.

The Romans fly  
into the forest.

When *the cheualrye* saw theire cheftanes were nommene,

To a cheefe foreste they chesene theire wayes, 1873

And felede theme so feynite, they falle in *the greues*,

In the ferynne of *the fyrthe*, fore ferde of oure pople.

Thare myght mene see the ryche ryde in the schawes,

To rype vpe the Romayneze ruydlyche wondyde, 1877

Schowttes aftyre mene, harageous knyghttez,

Be hunndrethez they hewede doune be *the holte eynys*!

Thus oure cheualrous mene chasez *the pople*; 1880

To a castelle they eschewede a fewe *that eschappede*.

A few escape to  
a castle.

Thane relyez *the renkez* of *the Rounde Table*,

ffor to ryotte *the wode*, *ther the duke restez*;

Arthur's knights  
seek for their  
companions who  
are slain.

Ransakes the ryndez alle, raughte vp theire feres, 1884

That in *the fightynge* be-fore fay ware by-leuyde.

Sir Cador bids  
them carry them  
to the king.

Sir Cador garte chare theym, and couere theme faire,

Kariede theme to *the kynge* with his beste knyghttez;

And passez vn-to Paresche with prisoners hym selfene,

Be-toke theyme the proueste, pryncez and other; 1889

Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere,

Bot tournes tytte to *the kynge*, and hym wytȝ tunge telles.

He goes to Paris  
with the pri-  
soners, and  
quickly returns  
to Arthur.

“**S**yr,” sais *sir Cador*, “a caas es be-fallene; 1892

We hafe cownterede to day, in ȝone coste ryche

With kyngez and kayseres, krouelle and noble,

And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayede!

Thay hade at ȝone foreste forsette vs *the wayes*, 1896

At the furthe in *the fyrthe*, with ferse mene of armes;

Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foynede with sperys,

One felde with thy foo-mene, and fellyd theme on lyfe.

They have fought  
and slain many.

The kynge of Lebe es laide, and in *the felde leuyde*,

And manye of his lege mene *that yare* to hym langede!

*Other* lordez are laughte of vncouthe ledes; 1902

We hafe lede them at lenge, to lyf whilkes *the lykez*.

[leaf 73, back]

Sir Vtere and *sir Ewaynedyre*, theis honourable

knyghttez,

Divers of their  
best knights are  
taken prisoners,

<sup>1</sup> ȝoldene.

Be a nawntere of armes Ioneke has nommene,  
 With erlez of the Oryentte, and austeren knyghtez,  
 Of awncestrye the beste mene that to the oste langede ;  
 The senatour Barouns es kaughte with a knyghtte,  
 The capitayne of Cornette, that crewelle es haldene,  
 The syneschalle of Sutere vnsaughte wylth thes other,  
 The kynge of Surry hym selfene, and Sarazenes. 1911

the senator  
Barouns, the  
king of Syria, the  
seneschal of  
Sutur.

**B**ot fay of ours in the felde a fourtene knyghtez,  
 I willenoghte feynene forbere, bot faythfully tellene ;  
 Sir Berelle es one, a banerette noble,  
 Was killyde at the fyrste come with a kynge ryche ;  
 Sir Alidoyke of Towelle, with his tende knyghez, 1916  
 Emange the Turkys was tynte, and in tyme fondene ;  
 Gude sir Mawrelle of Mauncez, and Mawrene his brother,  
 Sir Meneduke of Mentoche, with meruailous knyglitzez."

But of Arthur's  
knights fourteen  
are slain.

Sir Berill was  
killed at the  
beginning of the  
fray.

**T**hanе the worthy kynge wrythes, and wepede with Then Arthur is  
 his eghne<sup>1</sup>, 1920 grieved,

Karpes to his cosyne sir Cador theis wordez,—

and speaks to his  
cousin Sir Cador  
bitter words.

"Sir Cador, thi corage confundez vs alle !

Kowardely thou castez owtte alle my beste knyghtez !

To putte mene in perille, it es no prycе holdene, 1924

Bot the partyes ware puruayed, and powere arayede ;

When they ware stade on a strenghe, thou sulde hafe

with-stondene,

Bot ȝif thoue wolde alle my steryne stroye fore the nonys!"

"Sir," sais sir Cador, "ȝe knowe wele ȝour selfene ; Sir Cador replies  
 ȝe are kynge in this kythe, karpe whatte ȝow lykys ! with dignity.

Salle neuer vpbrayde me, that to thi burde langes, 1930

That I sulde blyne fore theire boste, thi byddynge to

wyrche ;

Whene any stirttez to stale, stuffe thame the bettere,

Ore thei wille be stonayed, and stroyede in ȝone strayte

londez. 1933

I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,

He has only done  
his duty,

And in daungere of dede fore dyuerse knyghtez,

I hafe no grace to thi gree, bot syche grett wordez ; 1936

but is ill repaid  
by such hard  
words.

<sup>1</sup> MS. eughne.

*3if I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre."*

Then Arthur retracts.

He acknowledges Cador has done his duty.

He is one of the bravest of the brave,

and heir apparent to the thronae.

[leaf 74]

Then he makes a noble feast in his own tent for the knights who were engaged in the fight.

But the senators of Rome tell the emperor of the defeat of his men.

He has been betrayed by those he trusted most.

Then the emperor is very wroth.

He assembles a council of war.

He tells them his purpose to go into Saxony,

and enter into Augusta,

to riot and revel till the arrival of Sir Leo and the lords of Lombardy.

*3ofe sir Arthure ware angerde, he ansuers faire,*  
*"Thow has doughtily donne, sir duke, with thi handez,*  
*And has donne thy deuer with my dere knyghtez ;*  
*ffor-thy thow arte demyde, with dukes and erlez,* 1941  
*ffor one of the doughtyeste that dubbede was euer !*

*Thare es none ischewe of vs, on this erthe spongene ;*  
*Thow arte apparant to be ayere, are one of thi childyre ;*  
*Thow arte my sister sone, for-sake sallie I neuer !"* 1945

*Thane gerte he in his awene tente a table be sette,*

*And tryede in with tromppez trauaillede biernez ;*  
*Serfede them solempnely with selkouthe metez,* 1948  
*Swythe semly in syghte with syluerene dischees.*

*Whene the senatours harde saye that it so happenede,*  
*They saide to the emperor, "thi seggez are suppryssede !*  
*Sir Arthure, thyne enmy has owterayede thi lordez,*  
*That rode for the rescowe of ȝone riche knyghtez !* 1953  
*Thow dosse bot tynnez thi tyme, and turmenttez thi pople ;*  
*Thow arte be-trayede of thi mene, that moste thow on*  
*traystede.*

*That schalle turne the to tene and torfere for euer."* 1956  
*Than the emperor irus was angerde at his herte,*  
*ffor oure valyant biernez siche prowesche had wonnene.*  
*With kynge and with kaysere to consayle they wendle,*  
*Souerayngez of Sarazenez, and senatours manye ;* 1960

*Thus he semblez fulle sone certayne lordez,*  
*And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—*

*"My herte sothely es sette, assente ȝif ȝowe lykes,*  
*To seke in-to Sexone, with my sekyre knyghtez,* 1964  
*To fyghte with my foo-mene, if fortune me happene,*  
*3if I may fynde the freke with-in the foure haluez ;*

*Or entire in-to Awguste awnters to seke,* 1967  
*And byde with my balde mene with-in the burghe ryche ;*  
*Riste vs and reuelle, and ryotte oure selfene,*

*Lende thare in delytte in lordechippez ynewe,*  
*To sir Leo be comene with alle his lele knyghtez,* 1971  
*With lordez of Lumberdye, to lette hym the wayes."*

**B**ot owre wyese kyng es warre to wayttene his renkes, King Arthur, getting intelligence of this, withdraws his men secretly by the woods;  
 And wyesly by *the woddez* voydez his oste ;

Gerte felschene his fyrez, flawmande fulle heghe, takes the shortest road into Saxony;  
 Trussene fulle traystely, and treunt there-aftyre. 1976

Sethene in-to Sessoyne, he soughte at the gaynest, suddenly besets the city with seven bands.  
 And at the surs of *the sonne* disseuerez his knyghtez :  
 fforsette theme the cité appone sere halfez,  
 So-daynly on iche halfe, with seuene grett stales. 1980 Sir Valiant makes a vow to vanquish the viscount of Rome.  
 Anely in the vale a vawewardre enbusches ;  
 Sir Valyant of Vyleris, with valyant knyghtez,  
 Be-fore *the kyngez* visage made siche avowez,  
 To venquyse by victorie the vescownte of Rome ! 1984 The king gives him command of the vanguard ;  
 ffor-thi the kynge chargez hym, what chaunce so be-falle,  
 Cheftayne of *the cheekke*, with cheualrous knyghtez,  
 And sythyne meles with mouthe, *that* he moste traistez ; he himself directs the centre.  
 Demenys the medylwarde menskfully hymselfe,  
 ffittes his fote-mene, ahs hym faire thynkkes ; 1989 He arranges the archers on either flank ;  
 On frounte in the fore breste, the flour of his knyghtez,  
 His archers on aythere halfe he ordayneude *ther-aftyre* [leaf 74, back]  
 To schake in a sheltroñe, to schotte whene *thame* lykez ;  
 He arrayed in *the rerewarde* fulle rialle knyghtez, places renowned knights for a rearguard.  
 With renkkes renownnd of *the Rounde Table*,  
 Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was neuer,  
 The riche duke of Rowne wyt[h] ryders ynewe ; 1996  
 Sir Cayous, sir Clegis, and clene mene of armes,  
 The kyng castes to kepe be *tha* clere strandes.  
 Sir Lott and sir Launcelotte, *thise* lordly knyghtez,  
 Salle lenge on his lefte hande, wyt[h] legyones ynewe,  
 To meue in *the morne-while*, *zif* *the myste* happyne ;  
 Sir Cador of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghtez,  
 To kepe at *the karfuke*, to close in *ther other* :  
 He plantez in siche placez pryncez and erlez, 2004 Sir Lott and Sir Lancelot command a band on the left hand, which is to move in the mist of early morning. Sir Cador and his men are to keep guard over the passes.  
 That no powere sulde passe be no preué wayes.

**B**ot the emperor onone, with honourable knyghtez The emperor and his knights quickly enter the vale in search of adventures.  
 And erlez, enteres the vale, awnters to seke,  
 And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede ; 2008 He finds Arthur's host drawn up in battle array,  
 And at his in-come, to ekkene his sorowe,

Oure burlyche bolde kynge appone the bente howes,  
 With his bataile one brede, and baners displayede.  
 He hade *the ceté* for-sett appone sere halfes, 2012  
 Bothe the clewez and *the clyfez* with clene mene of armez !  
 The mosse and *the marrasse*, the mounttez so hye,  
 With gret multytude of mene, to marre hym in *the*  
 wayes.

and all the positions occupied.

Then Sir Lucius declares with wrath that there is no way else but to fight, for fly he may not.

He arrays his rich Romans.

The viscount is in the van.

He hoists his standard, the golden dragon enamelled with eagles. They drink and make merry.

Sir Lucius exhorts them to think on the great renown of Rome—how it had conquered all Christendom,

[leaf 75]

and all the land of the Saracens, from Jaffa to the gates of Paradise.

Without doubt they will quickly reduce these rebels.

Whene *sir Lucius* sees, he sais to his lordez, 2016  
 “This traytour has treunt this tresone to wyrche !  
 He has the *ceté* forsett appone sere halfez,  
*Alle the* clewez and *the cleyffez* with clene mene of armez !  
 Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles, 2020  
 Bot feghte with oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer !  
 Thane this ryche mane rathe arayes his byernez,  
 Rewlede his Romayne, and realle knyghez ;  
 Buschez in the avawmewarde the vescoune of Rome,  
 ffro Viterbe to Venyse, theis valyante knyghez : 2025  
 Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,  
 With egles alouer, enamelede of sable ;  
 Drawene dreghely the wyne, and drynkyne thare-aftyre,  
 Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghez, 2029  
 ffor dauncesyng of Duche-mene, and dynnyng of pypez,  
*Alle* dynned fore dyne that in *the* dale houede.

**A**nd thane *sir Lucius* on lowde said lordlyche wordez,  
 “Thynke one the myche renounne of *your* ryche  
 fadyrs ; 2033

And the riatours of Rome, *that* regnede with lordez ;  
 And the renkez ouer-rane alle that regnede in erthe,  
 Encrochede alle Cristyndome be craftes of armes ;  
 In eueriche a viage the victorie was haldene ; 2037  
 In sette alle *the* Sarazenes with-in seuene wyntter,  
 The parte ffro the porte Iaffe to Paradysse ȝatez !  
 Thoghe a rewme be rebelle, we rekke it bot lyttile !  
 It es resone and righte the renke be restreynede ! 2041  
 Do dresse we thare-fore, and byde we no langere,  
 ffore dredlesse with-owtayne dowtte, the daye schalle be  
 ourez !”

Whene theise wordez was saide, the Walsche kynge  
hym selfene 2044

Whas warre of this wyderwyne, that werrayede his  
knyghttez :

Brothely in the vale with voyce he ascryez,—  
“Viscounte of Valewnce, enuyous of dedys,  
The vassallage of Viterbe to daye schalle be reuengede !  
Vnuenquiste for this place voyde schalle I neuer !”

Arthur calls upon  
the viscount of  
Valence, and  
threatens him  
with vengeance.

Than the vyscounte valiante, with a uoyse noble,  
Auoyeddyde the avawewarde, enuerounde his horse ;  
He drissede in a derfe schelde, endenttyd with sable,  
With a dragone engowschede, dredfull to schewe, 2053  
Deuorande a dolphyne with dolefull lates,  
In seyne that oure soueraygne sulde be distroyede,  
And alle done of dawez with dynttez of swerdez ;<sup>1</sup>  
ffor thare es noghte bot dede thare the dragone es raiassedde !

The viscount  
boldly prepares  
for the fray.

His device is a  
dragon devour-  
ing a dolphin.

Than the comlyche kynge castez in fewtyre, 2058  
With a crewelle launce cowpez fulle euene  
A-bowne thespayre<sup>2</sup> a spanne, emange the schortte rybbyss,  
That the splent and the spleene on the spere lengez !  
The blode sprente owtte and sprede as the horse spryngez,  
And he sproulez fulle spakely, bot spekes he no more !  
And thus has sir Valyant haldene his a-vowez, 2064  
And venqwyste the viscounte, thathe victor was haldene !

The king lays  
his lance in rest,  
and pierces him  
through the short  
ribs.

And thus has Sir  
Valiant kept his  
vow.

Than sir Ewayne sir Fytz Vriene ffuller enkerlye rydez  
Onone to the emperor his egle to towche ;  
Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes be-lyfe, 2068  
Braydez owt his brande with a blyth chere,  
Reuerssede it redelye, and awaye rydys ;  
fferkez in with the fewle in his faire handez,  
And ffittez in freely one frounte with his feris. 2072

Sir Ewain makes  
a bold attempt to  
reach the em-  
peror.

Now buskez sir Launcelot, and braydez fulle euene  
To sir Lucius the lorde, and lothelye hym hyttes ;  
Thurghe pawnce and platez he percede the maylez,  
That the prowde penselle in his pawnche lengez ! 2076  
The hede haylede owtt be-hynde ane halfe fote large,

Sir Lancelot slays  
the lord Lucius.

<sup>1</sup> MS. swreddez.

<sup>2</sup> MS. the spayre the spayere.

Thurgh *he* hawberke and hanche, *with the* harde wapyne !  
 The stede and the steryne mane strykes to *the* grownde,  
 Strake downe a standerde, and to his stale wendez !

Sir Lott rejoices  
that his turn is  
now come.

“Me lykez wele,” sais *sir* Loth, “*ȝ*one lordez are  
delyuerede !

2081

The lott lengez nowe on me, *with leue* of my lorde :  
 To day *salle* my name be laide, and my life aftyre,

[leaf 75, back]

Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, *that one* *ȝ*one lawnde houez !”  
 Thane strekez the steryne, and streynys his brydylle,  
 Strykez in-to the stowre on a stede ryche,

He slays a giant,

Enjoynede with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe !  
 Jolyly this gentille for-justede a-other,

2088

Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, werryande knyghtez,  
 And wondes alle wathely, *that in the* waye stondez !  
 ffyghtez with alle the ffrappe a furlange of waye,  
 ffelled fele appone felde *with his* faire wapene,

2092

and many war-  
riors beside.

Venqwiste and has the victorie of valyaunt knyghtez,  
 And alle enverounde the vale, and voyde whene hym  
 likede !

The British bow-  
men discharge  
their arrows.

Thane bowmene of Bretayne brothely ther-aftyre  
 Bekerde with bregaundez of ferre in tha laundez,  
 With flonez fletterede *thay* fliit fulle frescly *ther* frekez,  
 ffichene with fetheris thurgh *the* fyne maylez :  
 Siche flyttinge es foule *that so* *the* flesche derys,  
 That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stedez ;

2100

The Dutchmen  
throw darts.

Dartes the Duche-mene daltene aȝaynes,  
 With derfe dynttez of dede, dagges thurgh scheldez ;  
 Qwarelles qwayntly swappez thorowe knyghtez,  
 With iryne so wekyrly, *that* wynche they neuer.

2104

Many are slain  
by the sharp  
arrows.

So they scherenkene fore schotte of *the* scharppe arowes,  
 That alle the scheltrone schonte, and schoderide at ones !  
 Thane riche stedes rependez, and rasches one armes ;  
 The hale howndrethe one hye appone heyghe lygges,  
 Bott ȝitte *the* hathelieste on hy, haythene and other ;

2110

But the giants  
make a terrible  
charge.

Alle hoursches ouer hede harmes to wyrke.  
 And alle theis geauntez be-fore, engenderide with fendez,  
 Ioynez on sir Ienitalle, and gentille knyghtez,

With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes,  
Craschede dounē crestez, and eraschede braynez ;

and with their  
steel clubs destroy  
many knights  
on white steeds.

Kyllede cou[r]sers and couerde stedes, 2115

Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.

Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-ȝaynez,  
Bot stonays and strykez dounē, that in the stale houys.

Nothing can  
stand against  
them until Ar-  
thur comes.

Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghtez,

With crewelle contenaunce he cryede fulle lowde,—

“I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lyttile,  
And fore bare-legyde boyes, *that one the bente houys!*”

He despises  
them,

**H**e elekys owtte Collbrande fulle elenlyche burneschite,  
Graythes hymē to Golapas, *that greuyde moste* ;  
Kuttē hymē euene by the knees clenly in sondyre.

and plucking out  
Colbrand, quickly  
cuts the giant  
Golapas in two  
at the knees,

“Come downe,” quod the kynge, “and karpe to thy ferys !

telling him he is  
too high by half.

Thowe arte to hye by the halfe. I hete *the* in trouthe !  
Thow sallē be handsomere in hyc, with the helpe of my

Lorde !” 2128

With that stelene brande he strake ofe his hede.

Then he strikes  
off his head.

Sterynly in that stoure he strykes a-nother.

Thus he settez on seuene with his sekyre knyghtez :

[leaf 76]  
He and his  
knights slay sixty  
giants.

Whylls sixty ware seruede soo, ne sessede they neuer !

And thus at the joynenye the geauntez are distroyede,  
And at *that* journey for-justede with gentille lordez.

The Romans  
rally and make  
a fierce  
resistance.

Than the Romaynes, and the rennkkez of the Rounde  
Table,

Rewles theme in arraye, rerewarde ande *other*, 2136

With wyghte wapynez of werre, thay wroghtene one  
helmes,

Rittez withi rannke stele fulle ryall maylez ;

Bot they fitt<sup>1</sup> theme fayre, thes frekk byernez,

ffewters in freely one fferaunte stedes, 2140

ffoynes fulle felly with flyschande speris,

ffretene of orfrayes feste appone scheldez.

So fele fay es in fyghte appone the felde leuyde, 2143

So many are left  
dead on the field,  
that each path  
in the forest runs  
with red blood.

That iche a furthe in the firthe of rede blode rynnys !

By that swyftely one swarthe *the* swett es by-leuede,

<sup>1</sup> Or fut.

Swerdez swangene in two, sweltand knyghtez  
 Lyes wyde opyne welterande one walopande stedez ;  
 Wondes of wale mene werkande sydys, 2148  
 ffacez feteled vn-faire in filterede lakes,  
 Alle craysed for-trodyne with trappede stedez,  
 The faireste fygured folde<sup>1</sup> that fygurede was euer,  
 Ahs ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones ! 2152  
 Be than the Romayne ware rebuykyde a lyttile,  
 With-drawes theyme drerely, and dreches no lengare ;  
 Oure prynce with his powere persewes theyme aftyre,  
 Prekez one<sup>2</sup> the proudeste with his price knyghtez.  
 Sir Kayous, sir Clegis, with clene mene of armez, 2157  
 Enconters theme at the clyffe with clene mene of armes ;  
 ffyghttes faste in the fyrtē, frythes no wapene,  
 ffelled at the firste come fyfe hundrethe at ones !  
 And when they fande theym foresett with oure fers  
 knyghtez, 2161  
 ffewe mene agayne fele mot fyche theme bettyre ;  
 ffeghittez with alle the frappe, foynes with speres,  
 And faughte with the frekkestē that to Fraunce langez.  
 Bot sir Kayous the kene castis in fewtyre,  
 Chasez one a coursere, and to a kynge rydys ; 2166  
 With a launce of Lettowe he thirllez his sydez,  
 That the lyuer and the lunggez on the launce lengez.  
 The schafte sc[h]odyrde and schott in the schire byerne,  
 And soughte thorowowte the schelde, and in the schalke  
 rystez.  
 Bot Kayous at the in-come was kepyd vn-fayre  
 With a cowarde knyghte of the kythe ryche ; 2172  
 At the turnyng that tym the traytoure hym hitte  
 In thorowe the felettes, and in the flawnke aftyre,  
 That the boustous launce the bewells attamede,  
 That braste at the brawlynge, and brake in the myddys.  
 Sir Kayous knewe wele, be that kyde wounde, 2177  
 That he was dede of the dynte, and done owte of lyfe.

The Romans begin to retreat, and Arthur presses on them.

Sir Cayous, Sir Clegis, and their men slay five hundred.

Sir Cayous rides to a king and thrusts him through with his lance,

but is sorely wounded by a coward knight.

[leaf 76, back]

<sup>1</sup> Or felde.

<sup>2</sup> Or over.

Than he raykes in arraye and one rawe rydez,  
One this ryalle his dede to reuenge ; 2180  
"Kepe the, cowarde," and calles hym sone,  
Cleues hym wyt̄h his clere brande clenliche in sondire !

"Hadde thow wele delte thy dynt with̄ thi handes,  
I hade for-geffene the my dede, be Crist now of hewyne !"  
He weyndes to the wyese kynge, and wynly hym gretes,  
"I am wathely woundide, waresche mone I neuer !

Wirke nowe thi wyrchipe, as the worlde askes,  
And brynge me to beryelle, byd I no more ! 2188  
Grete wele my ladye the qwene, ȝife the werlde happyne,  
And alle the burliche birdes that to hir boure lengez,  
And my worthily weife, that wrethide me neuer,  
Bid hire fore hir wyrchipe wirke for my saulle !" 2192

The kynge confessor come, with Criste in his handes,  
ffor to comforthe the knyghte, kende hym the wordes.  
The knyghte coueride on his knees with a kaunt herte,  
And caughte his Creatoure that comfurthes vs alle !

Thane remmes the riche kynge fore rewthe at his herte,  
Rydes in-to rowte his dede to reuenge ; Then Arthur, full  
Presede in-to the plumpe, and with a prynce metes,  
That was ayere of Egipt in thos este marches ; 2200  
Cleues hym with Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre !  
He broches euene thorowe the byerne, and the sadille  
bristes,

And at the bake of the blonke the bewelles entamede !

Manly in his maly[n]e coly he metes a-nother, 2204  
The medille of that myghtty, that hym myche greuede ;  
He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,  
That the myddys of the mane on the mounte fallez,  
The tother halfe of the haunce on the horse leuyde.  
Of that hurte, alis I hope, heles he neuer ! 2209

He schotte thorowe the schiltrouns with his scharpe  
wapene,  
Schalkez he schrede thurghe, and schrenkede maylez ;  
Baneres he bare downne, bryttenede scheldes, 2212

He goes to the king, tells him he is mortally wounded, and bids him greet well the queen, the ladies of the court, and his wife.

Then comes the king's confessor to comfort the knight.

Then Arthur, full of grief, rushes into the fray to avenge him.

He cleaves an Egyptian prince asunder.

and fiercely  
wreaking his  
wrath on his foes. Brothely with browne stele his brethe he *thare* wrekes ;  
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenghe,  
Woundes these whydyrewyns, werrayede knyghttes,  
Threppede thorowe *the* thykkys thryttene sythis, 2216  
Thryngnez throly in the thrange, and chis euene aftyre !

Sir Gawaine goes  
forward and meets  
with the emperor.

Thane sir Gawayne the gude, with wyrchipfulle  
knyghttez,

Wendez in the a-vawewarde be tha wodde hemmys ;  
Was warre of *sir* Lucius, one launde there he houys,  
With lordez and ligge mene, that to hymse selfe lengede.  
Thane the emperor enkerly askes hym sonne, 2222  
“ What wille thou, Gawayne, wyrke with thi wapyne ?  
I watte be thi wauerynge, thou willnez aftyre sorowe ;  
I sall be wrokyne on thi wrethe, fore alle thi grete  
wordez ? ”

[leaf 77]

Lucius with his  
long sword  
wounds Sir  
Lionel,

He laughte owtte a lange swerde, and luyschede one  
ffaste,  
And *sir* Lyonelle in the launde, lordely hym strykes,  
Hittes hym on the hede, *that the* helme bristis ; 2228  
Hurttes his herne-pane an hannde-brede large !  
Thus he layes one *the* lumppe, and lordlye *theme* seruede,  
Wondide worthily wyrchipfulle knyghttez !  
ffighttez with Florent that beste es of swerdez, 2232  
Tille *the* fomande blode tille his fyste rynnes !

and many wor-  
shipful knights.

Thane *the* Romayns releuyde, *that* are ware rebuykkyde,  
And alle to-rattys oure mene with theire riste horsses ;  
ffore they see *thaire* cheftayne be chauffede so sore,  
They chasse and choppedoune oure cheualrous knyghttes !  
Sir Bedwere was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,  
With a burlyche brannde, brode at *the* hiltes ;  
The ryalle rannke stele to his herte rynnys, 2240  
And he rusches to *the* erthe, rewthe es the more !

The Romans, ex-  
cited by his  
bravery, get the  
better of Arthur's  
men.  
Sir Bedwere is  
slain.

Then Arthur  
comes to the  
rescue.

Thane *the* conquerour tuke kepe, and come with his  
strenghes  
To reschewe *the* ryche mene of *the* Rounde Table,  
To owttraye *the* emperor, *ȝif* auntire it schewe, 2244  
Ewyne to *the* egle, and “ Arthure ! ” askryes.

The emperor strikes Arthur on the visor, and wounds his nose.

The emperorour thane egerly at Arthure he strykez,  
Awkwarde on *the vmbbrere*, and egerly hym hittez !

The nakyde swerde at *the nese* noyes hym sare, 2248

The blode of [the] bolde kynge ouer *the breste* rynnys,  
Bebled *at the brode schelde* and *the bryghte mayles* !

Oure bolde kynge bowes *the blonke be the bryghte brydylle*,  
With his burlyche brande a buffette hym reches, 2252

Thourgh *the brene* and *the breste* with his bryghte wapyne,  
O-slante doun fro *the slote* he slyttes at ones !

Thus endys *the emperorour* of Arthure hondes,  
And alle his austeryne oste *thare-ofe* ware affrayede !

Now they ferke to *the fyrthe*, a fewe *that* are leuede,  
ffor ferdnesse of oure folke, by *the fresche strandez* !

The floure of oure ferse mene one fferant stedez  
ffolowes frekly on *the frekes*, thate ffrayede was neuer.

Arthur gives him a buffet that cuts through his cuirass and his breast.

Arthur's men pursue them.

Thane *the kyde conquerour* cryes fulle lowde,— 2261

“Cosyne of Cornewaile, take kepe to *thi selfene*,  
That no captayne be kepyde for none siluer,  
Or *sir Kayous* dede be cruelly vengede !” 2264

“Nay,” sais *sir Cador*, “so me Cryste helpe !  
Thare ne es kaysere ne kynge, *that vndire Criste ryngnes*,  
*That I ne schalle kille colde dede be crafte of my handez !”*

Thare myghte mene see chiftaynes, on chalke whitte stedez,  
Choppe doun in the chaas cheualrye noble ; 2269

Romaynes *the rycheste* and *ryalle kynges*,  
Braste with ranke stele theire rybbyis in sondyre !

Sir Cador declares that he will spare neither king nor kaiser.

Braynes fore-brustene thurghe burneste helmes, 2272

With brandez for-brittenede one brede in *the laundez*.

They hewededoun *haythenemene* with hiltedeswerdez,  
Be hole hundrethez on hye, by *the holte eynyes* !

Heathen men are hewn down by hundreds.

Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure theire  
lyues, 2276

Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senatour of Rome !

Thane releuis *the renkes* of the Rounde Table,  
Be *the riche reuare* that rynnys so faire ;

Lugegez thaym lufye by *tha lyghte strandez*, 2280

Alle on lawe in *the lawnde*, thas lordlyche byernes.

[leaf 77, back]  
A fearful carnage follows.

Arthur's men  
plunder the rich  
camp of the  
Romans.

Horses, camels,  
dromedaries,  
milk-white mules,  
and many mar-  
vellous beasts are  
captured.

The bodies of the  
emperor and  
the chief men of  
Rome are em-  
balmed and  
wrapped in lead,

enclosed in  
chests, and sent  
to Rome with  
their banners  
over them.

Two senators  
come barefoot  
and kneel before  
the conqueror.

Thay kaire to *the karyage*, and tuke whate them likes,  
Kamelles and sekadrisses, and cofirs fulle riche,  
Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes, 2284  
Howsynge and herbergage of heythene kyngez ;  
They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuerse lordes,  
Moylez mylke whitte, and meruayllous bestez,  
Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble, 2288  
*Ther* are of *the Oryent*, with honourable kyngez.  
**B**ot *sir* Arthure onone ayeres *ther-aftyre*  
Ewyne to *the emperor*, with honourable kyngis ;  
Laughte hym vpe fulle louelyly with lordlyche knyghtez,  
And ledde hym to *the layere*, thare the kyng lygges.  
Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordes,  
Hunttes vpe the haythemene, that on heghte lygges,  
The Sowdane of Surry, and certayne kyngez, 2296  
Sexty of *the cheefe senatours* of Rome.  
Thane they bussches and bawmede *thaire honourliche*  
kyngis,  
Sewed theme in sendelle sexti-faulde aftire,  
Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde 2300  
Chawnge or chawffe, *ȝif thay myghte escheffe* ;  
Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome,  
With theire baners a-bowne, theire bagis there-vndyre,  
In whate countré *thay kaire* that knyghttes myghte knawee  
Iche kyng be his colours, in kyth whare [he] lengede.  
Onone one *the secounde* daye, sone by *the morne*,  
Twa senatours ther come, and certayne knyghtez,  
Hodles fro *the hethe*, ouer the holte eynes, 2308  
Barefote ouer the bente, with brondes so ryche,  
Bowes to *the bolde* kyng, and biddis hym *the hiltes*,  
Whethire he wille hang theym or hedde, or halde  
theyme on lyfe ; 2311  
Knelyde be-fore *the conquerour* in kyrtilles allone ;  
With carefullle contenaunce *thay karpide* these wordes,—  
“ Twa senatours we are, thi subgettez of Rome,  
That has sauede oure lyfe by *theise* salte strandys ;  
Hyd vs in *the heghe* wode, thurgh *the helpynge* of Criste ;

Be-sekes the of socoure, as soueraygne and lorde ; 2317

Grante vs lyffe and lyme with leberalle herte,

[leaf 78]

ffor his luffe that the lente this lordchipe in erthe !”

“I graunte,” quod [the] gude kynge, “thurghe grace of 2320 The king grants them their lives on condition of their carrying a message for him to Rome.  
my selfene,

I giffe ȝowe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe,

So ȝe doo my message menskefully at Rome,

That ilke charge *that I ȝow ȝiffe* here be-fore my cheeffe  
knyghtez.”

“ȝis,” sais the senatours, “that sall we ensure, 2324

Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfille ;

We sall lett for no lede *that lyffes* in erthe,

ffore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,

That ne sall lelely in lande thi letteres pronounce, 2328

ffor duke ne fore dussepere, to dye in *the Payne* !”

The Britons cause barbers to shave them, in token of their submission.  
**T**han the banerettez of Bretayne broghte *theme* to  
tentes ;

There barbours ware bownne, with basyns one lofte,

With warme watire<sup>1</sup> i-wys they wette *theme* fulle sone ;

They schouene thes schalkes schappely ther-aftyre,

To rekkene theis Romaynes recreaunt and ȝoldene ;

ffor-thy schoue they *theme* to schewe, for skomfite of  
Rome.

They couylde *the kystys* on kameles be-lyue, 2336 They fasten the chests on camels.

On asses and arrabyes, theis honourable kynges ;

The emperoure for honoure, alle by hym one,

Euene appone ane olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ouere ;

Be-kende *theme* the captifis, the kyngedide hymē selfene,

And alle by-fore his kene mene karpede thees wordes,—

The emperor's body, for honour, is by itself on an elephant.  
**H**ere are the *kystis*,” quod the kynge, “kaire ouer  
the mowntez ;

Mette fulle monee *that ȝe haue mekylle ȝernede*,

The taxe and *the trebutte* of tene schore wynteres, 2344

That was tenefully tynte in tyme of oure elders.

Saye to *the senatoure*, *the ceté* *that ȝemes*,

That I sende hymē *the somme*, assaye how hymē likes !

<sup>1</sup> MS. wartire.

This is the only tribute they will ever get from him.

They hasten to Rome and summon the people to the Capitol.

They perform Arthur's message as he directed.

They have brought the taxes from England and Ireland, and all the west.

[leaf 78, back]  
They declare that they have suffered defeat and great loss,

and bid the Romans beware.

This great battle between Arthur and the Romans was fought in the calends of May.

Arthur buries his knights,

Sir Bedwere at Bayonne,  
Sir Cayons at Came.

Bott byde theme neuere be so bolde, whylles my blode regnes, 2348

Efte for to brawlle *theme* for my brode landez,  
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytle,  
Bot syche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez."

Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes, 2352

Knlyles in the Capatoylle, and comowns assembles,  
Souerayngez and senatours, the ceté *that* ȝemes ;

Be-kende theme the caryage, kystis and *other*, 2355

Alls *the* conquerour comaunde with cruelle wordes.

"We hafe trystily trayuellede *this* tributte to feche,

The taxe and *the* trewage of fowre score wynteris,  
Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and alle *thir* owtt illes,  
That Arthure in the Occidente occupyes att ones. 2360

He byddis ȝow neuere be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,  
To brawle ȝowe fore Bretayne ne his brode landes,  
Ne aske hyme trebute ne taxe be nonkyns title,

Bot syche tresoure as this, whills his tyme lastis. 2364

We haffe foughtene in ffrance, and vs es foule happenede,  
And alle oure myche faire folke faye are by-leuede !  
Eschappide there ne cheuallrye, ne cheftaynes *nother*,

Bott choppedpe downne in the chasse, syche chawnse es  
be-fallene ! 2368

We rede ȝe store ȝowe of stone, and stuffene ȝour walles :  
ȝow wakkens wandrethe and werre ; be ware, ȝif ȝow  
lykes !"

In the kalendez of Maye this caas es be-fallene : 2371  
The roy ryaHe renownde, with his Rownde Table,

One the coste of Costantyne by *the* clere strandez,  
Has *the* Romaynes ryche rebuykede for euer !  
Whene he hade foughtene in Fraunce, and the felde

wonnene,

And fersely his foomene fellde owtte of lyfe, 2376

He bydes for *the* beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,  
That in batelle with brandez ware broughte owtte of lyfe.  
He beryes at Bayone *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche ;  
The cors of Kayone *the* kene at Came es be-leuefede,

Koueride with a crystalle clenly alle ouer ; 2381  
 His fadyre conqueride that kyt̄ knyghtly with hondes.  
 Seyne in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knyghtez,  
 Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar the ryche,  
 Gud sir Cador at Came, as his kynde askes.

Thane sir Arthure onone, in the Auguste ther-aftyre,  
 Enteres to Almayne wyth ostez arrayed ; 2387  
 Lengez at Lusscheburghe, to lechene hys knyghtez,  
 With̄ his lele ligge mene, as lorde in his awene.

And on Christofre daye a concelle he haldez,  
 Withe kynges and kaysers, clerkkes and other,  
 Comandez them kenely to caste alle theire wittys, 2392  
 How he may conquer by crafte the kythe that he claymes.

Bot the conquerour kene, curtais and noble,  
 Karpes in the concelle theys knyghtly wordez,—  
 “Here esa knyghte in theis kleuys, enclesside with̄ hilles,  
 That I haue cowayte to knawe, be-cause of his wordez,  
 That es Lorayne the lele, I kepe noghte to layne ;  
 The lordchipe es louely, as ledes me telles. 2399

I wille that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,  
 And seyne dresse wyth̄ the duke, if destyny suffre :  
 The renke rebelle has bene vn-to my Rownde Table,  
 Redy aye with̄ Romaynes, and ryotte my landes !

We sall rekken fulle rathe, if resone so happene, 2404  
 Who has ryghte to that rente, by ryche Gode of heuene !

Thane wille I by Lombardye lykande to schawe,  
 Sett lawe in the lande, that laste sall euer ;  
 The tyrauntee of Turkayne tempeste a littyle, 2408  
 Talke with̄ the temperalle, whilles my tyme lastez ;  
 I gyffe my protteccioñe to alle the pope landez,  
 My ryche penselle of pes my pople to schewe.

It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndire Gode, 2412  
 Owther Peter or Paule, tha postles of Rome.  
 3if we spare the spirituelle, we spedē bot the bettire ;  
 Whills we haue for to speke, spille sallē it neuer !”

Now they spedē at the spurres, with̄-owtayne speche  
 more, 2416

In the August after Arthur enters into Germany, and tarries at Luxemburg to heal his knights.

He holds a council to devise how he may conquer all the territory that he claims.

He makes a speech in the council, saying that he much desires the possessions of the duke of Lorraine,

who has long been a rebel to his Round Table.

Full soon will he reckon who has right to the reut.

Afterwards he will go to Lombardy and then visit the tyrants of Turkey,

but he will give protection to all the lands of the [leaf 79] Pope, for it is folly to offend our father under God.

If we spare the goods of the spirituality we shall speed the better.

To the marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghe<sup>tez</sup>,  
That es Lorryn alofede, as Londone es here ;

Arthur straight-way leads his  
knights to lay  
siege to Metz.

Ceté<sup>1</sup> of that seynȝowre, that soueraynge es holdene.

The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede, 2420

With Ferrer and<sup>2</sup> Ferawnte, and other foure knyghe<sup>tez</sup> ;  
A-bowte the ceté tha seuene, they soughte at the nextte,

They seek a place  
to fix the engines.

To seke theme a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes ;

The bowmen  
shoot at them.

Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse, 2424

The king, without his shield,  
remains close to  
the walls within  
range of the  
arrows.

Bekyrs at the bolde kynge with boustouse lates,

Allblawsters at Arthure egerly schottes,

ffor to hurte hym or his horse with that hard wapene.

The kynge schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,

Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys ; 2429

Lenges alle at laysere, and lokes one the wallys,

Whare they ware laweste the ledes to assaille.

Sir Ferrere remonstrates with  
him for exposing  
himself to such  
danger.

“Sir,” said sir f ferrere, “a ffoly thowe wirkkes,

Thus nakede in thy noblaye to neghe to the walles,

Sengely in thy surcotte, this ceté to reche, 2434

And schewe the with-ine, there to schende vs alle.

Hye vs hastylye heynne, or we mone fulle happene,

ffor hitt they the or thy horse, it harmes for euer !”

Arthur scorns  
him, and tells  
him

“Ife thou be ferde,” quod the kyng, “I rede thou  
ryde vttere, 2438

that he would be  
afraid of a fly  
that lighted on  
him.

Lesse that they rywe the with their rownd wapyne !

Thow arte bot a fawntkyne, no ferly me thynkkys !

Thou wille be flayed for a flye that on thy flesche lyghttes !

I ame nothynge agaste, so me Gode helpe ! 2442

Thof siche gadlynges be greuede, it greues me botlyttille !

Thay wyne no wirchipe of me, bot wastys their takle !

They sall wante or I weende, I wagene myne hevede !

Salle neuer harlotte haue happe, thorowe helpe of my  
Lorde,

Never knave will  
be allowed to kill  
a crowned king.

To kylle a corownde kynge with<sup>3</sup> krysome enoynttede !”

Then come the  
gallant troops of  
Arthur,

Thane come the herbariours, harageous knyghe<sup>tez</sup>, 2448

The hale batelles one hye harrawnte ther-aftyre ;

And oure forreours ferse, appone fele halves,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Pety.    <sup>2</sup> MS. ferreranne.    <sup>3</sup> MS. with.

Come flyeande be-fore one ferawnt stedes ;  
fferkande in arraye theire ryalle knyghtez, 2452

The renkez renownde of *the Rownnd Table*.  
Alle the frekke mene of Fraunce folowede thare-aftyre,  
ffaire fittyde one frownte, and one the felde houys.  
Thane the schalkes scharpelye scheftys theire horsez,  
To schewene them semly in theire scheene wedes ; 2457

Buskes in batayle withi baners displayede,  
Withi brode scheldes embrassede, and burlyche helmys,  
Withi penouns and penselles of ylke prynce armes, 2460  
AppayreHde withi perrye and *precious* stones.

The lawnces withi loraynes, and lemande scheldes,  
Lyghtenande as *the leuenyng*, and lemand al ouer.  
Thane the price mene prekes, and proues theire horsez,  
Satilles to *the ceté*, appone sere halves ; 2465

Enserches the subbarbes sally thare-aftyre,  
Discoueris of schotte-mene, and skyrmys a lyttile ;  
Skayres thaire skottefers, and theire skowtte-waches,  
Brittenes theire barrers with theire bryghte wapyns ;  
Bett downe a barbycane, and *the brygge* wynnys. 2470

Ne hade the garnysone bene gude at *the grete ȝates*,  
Thay hade wonne that wone be theire awene strenghe !  
Thane withi-drawes oure mene, and drisses theme bettyre,  
ffor dred of *the drawe-brigge* dasschede in sondre ;  
Hyes to *the harbergage*, thare the kynge houys  
Withi his batelle one heghe, horsyde on stedys ; 2476

Thane was *the prynce* puruayede, and theire places  
nommene,

Pyghte pauyllions of paHe, and plattes in seegge.  
Thane lenge they lordly, as *theme* leefe thoghte,  
Waches in ylke warde, as to *the werre* falles, 2480  
Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes.

One Sonondaye be *the Sooñe* has a flethe ȝoldene.  
The kynge calles one Florente, *that flour* was of Arthur calls Sir  
knyghtez,— Florent,

“The Fraunche-meñe enfeblesches, ne farly me thynkkys !  
They are vn-fondyde folke in *tha faire* marches, 2485

and the renowned  
champions of the  
Round Table ;  
and all the bold  
men of France  
following them.

[leaf 79, back]

They proceed in  
battle-array with  
banners and broad  
shields, and  
pennons adorned  
with precious  
stones.

The lances gleam  
like lightning.

They encompass  
the city on divers  
sides,

skirmish with the  
garrison,  
and break down  
their defences.

But the garrison  
at the great gates  
checks them.

Arthur's men  
withdraw to  
where the king  
is waiting.

They pitch their  
tents, and pre-  
pare for a regular  
siege.

ffor theme wantes *the flesche* and fude that theme lykes.  
Here are ffօrestez faire appone fele halues, 2487

and sends him to  
forage for cattle.

And thedyre feemene are flede with freliche bestes !  
Thow sall foonde to *the felle*, and forraye the mountes ;  
Sir fforawnt and *sir Florydas* sall folowe thi brydylle ;  
Vs moste with some fresche mette refresche oure pople,  
That are feedde in *the fyrthe* with *the froyte* of *the erthe*.

Sir Gawayne him-  
self, the wor-  
shipful warden,  
shall accompany  
them,

Thare sall weende to *this viage* sir Gawayne hymselfene,  
Wardayne fulle wyrchipfull, and so hym wele semes ;  
Sir Wecharde, *sir Waltyre*, theis wyrchipfull knyghtes,  
With alle wyldeste mene of *the weste marches* ; 2496  
*Sir Clegis, sir Clarybalde, sir Clarymownde* the noble,  
The capytayne of<sup>1</sup> Cardyfe clenlyche arrayede.

and many other  
knights of re-  
nown.

Goo now, warne alle *the wache*, Gawayne and *other*,  
And weendes furthe on *your waye* withowtynne moo  
wordes." 2500

These fresh men  
of arms start on  
their journey  
through woods  
and over hills.  
[leaf 80]

**N**ow ferkes to *the fyrthe* thees fresche mene of armes,  
To *the felle* so fewe, theis fresclyche byernes,  
Thorowe hopes and hymlande hillys and *other* ;  
Holtis and hare woddes with heslyne schawes, 2504  
Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe ;  
And in the myste mornynge one a mede falles,

They fall upon a  
field of grass  
newly mown,

Mawene and vne-made, maynoyrede bott lyttyle,  
In swathes swappene downe, fulle of swete floures. 2508  
Thare vnbrydilles theis blode, and baytes *theire horses*,  
To *the grygyng* of *the daye*, *that byrdez*<sup>2</sup> gane synge,  
Whylles the surs of *the sonne*, *that sonde* es of Cryste,  
That solaces alle synfull, *that syghte* has in *erthe*. 2512

where they bait  
their horses,  
while the birds  
sweetly sing.

Sir Gawayne goes  
forth by himself  
to seek adventures.

Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, *sir Gawayne* hymselfene,

He sees a knight  
well armed,

Alls he *that weysse* was and *wyghte*,<sup>3</sup> wondyrs to seke ;  
Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde,  
Baytand one a wattire banke by *the wodde* eynis, 2516  
Buskede in brenyes bryghte to be-halde,  
Enbrassede a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,  
With birenne ony borne, bot a boye one,

<sup>1</sup> MS. oo. <sup>2</sup> MS. *that byrdez that byrdes* <sup>3</sup> MS. *wyghte wyghte*

Houes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes. 2520 and a page carrying his spear.  
 He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable,  
 With chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte syluer,  
 A charebocle in *the* cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes,  
 And a cheefe anterous, chalange who lykes. 2524

**S**ir Gawayne glyftes on the gome with a glade wille ! On his shield his coat of arms is depicted.

A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes,  
 Gyrdes ewene ouere *the* streme one a stede ryche,  
 To *that* steryne in stour, one strenghe *there* he houys !

Egerly one Inglisce "Arthure !" he askryes, 2529 He shouts his cry, "Arthur."

The tother irouslye ansuers hym sone

On a launde of Lorrayne with a lowde steuen, The other answers with a loud voice.

That ledes myghte lystene *the* lenghe of a myle ! 2532

"Whedyr prykkes thou, pilour, *that* profers so large ?

Here pykes thoue no praye, profire whene *the* lykes ! Then the strange knight declares that Gawayne shall be his prisoner.

Bot thou in *this* perelle<sup>1</sup> put of thebettire,  
 Thow sall be my presonere, for alle thy prowde lates !"

"Sir," sais **sir** Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe ! 2537 Sir Gawayne treats his great words with contempt.

Siche glauerande gomes greues me bot lyttile !

Bot if thoue graythe thy gere, the wille grefe happene,  
 Or thoue goo of *this* greue, for alle thy grete wordes !"

Thane *theire* launces they lachene, thes lordlyche byernez, Then they lay their spears in rest, and meet.

Laggene with longe speres one lyarde stedes ;

Cowpene at awntere be kraftes of armes,

Tille bothe *the* crowelle speres broustene att ones ! 2544 Both the spears strike fair, and wound the knights.

Thorowe scheldys *they* schotte, and scherde thorowe ma[i]les,

Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large !

Thus worthylye *thes* wyes wondede ere bothene ;

Or they wreke *theme* of wrethe a-waye wille *they* neuer !

Than they raughte in the reyne and a-gayne rydes, Then they rein in their horses [leaf 80, back] and return to the fight with swords.

Redely theis rathe mene rusches owtte swerdez, 2550

Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynntys,

Hewes appone hawberkes with fulle harde wapyns !

fulle stowttly *they* stryke, thire steryne knyghttes,

Stokes at *the* stomake with stelyne poyntes, 2554

<sup>1</sup> MS. pererelle.

ffeghettene and floresche withe flawmande swerdez,  
Tille the flawes of fyre flawmes one theire helmes.

Sir Gawaine  
waxes wroth, and  
strikes grimly  
with his sword  
Galuth.

Thanē sir Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide fulle  
sore ;

With Galuthē his gude swerde grymlye he strykes ! 2559  
Clefe the knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre !  
Who lukes to the lefte syde, whene his horse launches,  
With the lyghte of the sonñe men myghte see his  
lyuere !

Thanē granes the gome fore greefe of his wondys,

The knight  
strikes fiercely at  
Sir Gawayne.

And gyrdis at sir Gawayne, as he by glentis ;  
And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes ; 2564

An alet enamelde he oches in sondire,  
Bristes the rerebrace with the bronde ryche,  
Kerues of at the coutere with the clene egge,  
Ane[n]tis the avawmbrace, vrayllede with siluer ! 2568

Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,  
With the venomous swerde a vayne has he towchede !  
That voydes so violently that alle his witte changede !  
The vesere, the aventaile, his vesturis ryche, 2572

He cuts through  
his armour and  
draws blood,

With the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer !  
Thane this tyrante tite turnes the brydille,  
Talkes vn-tendirly, and sais, "thow arte towchede !

which flows over  
all his dress.

Then the knight  
jeers at him, and  
says the blood  
shall never be  
staunched.

Vs bus hauē a blode-bande, or thi ble change, 2576  
ffor alle the barbours of Bretayne sallē noghte thy blode  
stawnche !

Sir Gawayne de-  
spises his words,

ffor he that es blemeste with this brade brande, blyne  
schalle he neuer."

"*3a*," quod sir Gawayne, "thow greues me bot  
lyttile ! 2579

and bids him tell  
what will stop  
the bleeding.

Thowe wenys to gloyne me with thy gret wordez !  
Thow trowes with thy talkynge that my harte talmes !

The knight will  
tell Gawayne if

Thow be-tydes tourfere or thowe hyene turne,  
Bot thow telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere,  
What may staunche this blode that thus faste rynnes."  
"Iise, I say the sothely, and sekire the my trowthe,  
No surgyone in Salarne sallē sauē the bettyre ;

With-thy that thowe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste,  
To schewe schortly my schrifte, and schape for myne  
ende." 2588 he will allow  
him to have  
shrift and pre-  
pare himself for  
his end.

"3is," quod sir Gawayne, "so me God helpe !  
I gyfe the grace and graunt, thofe thou hafe grefe seruede,  
With-thy thowe say me sothe what thowe here sekes,  
Thus sengilly and sulayne alle thi selfe one ; 2592  
And whate laye thou leues one, layne noghete the sothe,  
And whate legyaunce, and whare thou arte lorde."

" My name es sir Priamus ; a prynce es my fadyre,  
Praysede in his partyes with prouede kynges ; 2596 The stranger  
knight tells him  
that he is Sir  
Priamus, son  
of a prince,

In Rome thare he regnes he es riche haldene ;  
He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene theire landes,  
Werreyand weisely wyntters and 3eres, 2599 who rebelled  
against Rome,  
and gained a  
[leaf 81]  
kingdom.

Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe,  
And be wyrchipfuller werre, his awene has he wonne.  
He es of Alexandire blode, ouerlynge of kynges,  
The vncle of his ayele, sir Ector of Troye ; 2603 He is of the blood  
of Alexander and  
Hector of Troy ;

And here es the kynredene that I of come,  
And Iudas and Iosue, thise gentille knyghtes.  
I ame apparaunt his ayere, and eldeste of other ;  
Of Alexandere and Aufrike, and alle tha owte landes,  
I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede. 2608 related also to  
Judas and  
Joshua ;  
and is heir of  
Africa.

In alle the price cetees that to the porte langes,  
I sall hafe trewly the tresour and the londes,  
And bothe trebute and taxe whilles my tyme lastes.  
I was so hawtayne of herte, whilles I at home lengede,  
I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heuene ryche ;  
ffor-thy was I sente hedire with seuene score knyghtez,  
To a-saye of this werre, be sente of my fadire ; 2615 When at home he  
was so proud and  
overbearing,

And I am for Cyrus witrye schamely supprisede,  
And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayedede fore euere !  
Now hafe I taulde the the kyne that I ofe come,  
Wille thou for knyghthede kene me thy name ?" 2619 that he was sent  
by his father to  
this war with a  
band of knights.

" Be Criste," quod sir Gawayne, "knyghte was I neuer !  
With the kydde conquerour a knafe of his chambyre  
Has wroghte in his wardrobe wynters and 3eres, He desires to  
know Sir Ga-  
wayne's name.  
Sir Gawayne an-  
swers deceitfully  
that he is only a  
knafe of Arthur's  
chamber.

One his longe armour that hym beste lykid ; 2623  
 I poyne alle his pavelyouns that to hym selfe pendes,  
 Dyghttes his dowblettez for dukes and erles,  
 Aketouns auenaunt fore Arthure hym selfene,  
 That he vsede in werre alle this aughte wyntter ! 2627  
 He made me ȝomane at ȝole, and gafe me gret gyftes,  
 And c.<sup>1</sup> pounde, and a horse, and harnayse fulle ryche ;  
 Gife I happe to my hele that hende for to serue,  
 I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe !” 2631

“ He made me a  
yeoman at Yule,  
and gave me  
great gifts.”

“ If his knaves  
be such, his  
knights are no-  
ble ! ” exclaims  
Sir Priamus.  
Alexander and  
Hector will be  
nothing to him.

“ Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghtez are noble !  
 Therees no kynge vndire Criste may kempew with hym one !  
 He wille be Alexander ayre, that alle *the* erthe lowttelede,  
 Abillere thane euer was *sir* Ector of Troye. 2635  
 Now fore the krisome *that thou* kaghte *that day thou*  
 was crystenede,

Then Sir Gawayne  
tells him the  
truth.

He is Sir Ga-  
waine, cousin to  
the conqueror,  
the richest knight  
of all the Round  
Table.

Whethire thowe be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now *the*  
 sothe.”  
 “ My name es *sir* Gawayne, I graunt *the* for sothe,  
 Cosyne to *the* conquerour, he knawes it hym selfene ;  
 Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chambyre, 2640  
 And rollede the richeste of alle *the* Rounde Table !  
 I ame *the* dusseper and duke he dubbede with his hondes,  
 Deynttely on a daye be-fore his dere knyghtes ;  
 Gruche noghte, gide *sir*, thofe me this grace happene ;  
 It es *the* gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awene ! ” 2645

[leaf 81, back]  
Then Sir Priamus  
says he is better  
pleased than if he  
were prince of  
Provence and  
Paris.

Then he warns  
Gawaine that the  
duke of Lorraine  
with his knights  
is lying in the  
wood near.

“ Petire ! ” sais Priamus, “ now payes me bettire  
 Thane I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche !  
 ffore me ware leuer preuely be prykkyd to *the* harte,  
 Thane euer any prikkere had siche a prysse wonnyne !  
 Bot here es herberde at hande, in ȝone huge holtes,  
 Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede ȝif the lyke ! 2651  
 The duke of Lorryne the derfe, with his dere knyghtes,  
 The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duche mene many,  
 The lordes of Lumbardye that leders are haldene,  
 The garnysone of Godarde gaylyche arrayede, 2655  
 The wyese of *the* Westuale, wirchipfulle biernez,

Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes enewe ;  
 They are nowmerde fulle neghe, and namede in rollez,  
 Sexty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekyre mene of  
 armes ; 2659 There is a mighty host well armed.

Bot ȝif thou hye fro *this* hethe, it harmes vs bothe,  
 And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer !

Tak heede to *this* hansemene, that he no horne blawe,  
 Are thowe heylly in haste beese hewene al to peces ;  
 ffor they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wylle, 2664 He bids him beware lest they should discover and destroy him.

Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe ;  
 Be thou raghte with *that* rowtt, thou rydes no farther,  
 Ne thou bees neuer rawnsonede for reches in erthe !”

**S**ir Gawayne wente or *the* wathe come, whare hym beste  
 lykede, 2668 Sir Gawayne goes with the wounded knight to Arthur's men,

With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore ;  
 Merkes to *the* mountayne there oure mene lenges,  
 Baytaynde theire blonkes *ther* on *the* brode mede ;  
 Lordes lenande lowe one lemande scheldes, 2672 who are baiting their horses on the broad mead and

With lowde laghttirs one lofte for lykynge of byrdez,  
 Of larkes, of lynkwhyttiez, *that* lufflyche songene,  
 And some was slechte one slepe with slaughter of *the* pople,  
 That sange in *the* sesone in the schenne schawes, listening to the songs of the birds.

So lawe in *the* lawndez so lykande notes.

Thane *sir* Whycher whas warre *thaire* wardayne was  
 wondyde, 2678 Sir Whycher perceives that Sir Gawayne is wounded,

And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes ;  
 Sir Wychere, *sir* Walchere, theis weise mene of armes,  
 Had wondyre of *sir* Gawayne, and wente hym a-gayns, and wonders how he could have conquered this mighty knight.

Mett hym in the mydwaye, and meruaille theme t[h]oghte  
 How he maisterede *that* mane, so myghty of strenghes !

Be alle *the* welthe of *the* werlde, so woo was theme neuer !

“ ffor alle oure wirchipe i-wysse awaye es in erthe !”

“ Greue ȝow noghite,” quod Gawayne, “ for Godis luffe  
 of heuene ; Sir Gawayne makes light of his wounds.

ffore this es bot goesomere, and gyffene one erles ; 2687

*Th*offe my schouldire beschrede, and my schelde thyrllede,  
 And the wielde of myne arme werkkes a littille,

His prisoner, Sir Priamus, has salves that will heal them.

They assist him to dismount.

[leaf 82]

The knights lift Sir Priamus from his horse.

They lay him down, and take off his weeds.

A knight dresses their wounds.

Then wine and provisions are brought to them.

The scouts bring news of the army in the wood.

Sir Gawaine is for attacking them,

This prisone *sir Priamus*, that has perilous wondes,  
Sais that he has saluez salle softene vs bothene." 2691

Thane stirttes to his sterape sterynfull knyghtez,  
And he lordely lyghttes and laghte of his brydille,  
And lete his burlyche blonke baite on *the flores*;

Braydes of his bacenette and his ryche wedis, 2695

Bownnes to his brode schelde and bowes to *the erthe*,  
In alle the bodye of that bolde es no blode leuede!

Than preses to *sir Priamous* precious knyghtes,  
Auysself of his horse hentes hym in armes; 2699

His helme and his hawberke *thay* takene of aftyre,  
And hastily for his hurtte alle his herte chawngyd;

They laide hym downe in the lawndez, and laghte of  
his wedes,

And he lenede hym one lange, or how hym beste lykede.  
A ffoule of fyne golde they fande at his gyrdille, 2704

*That* es fulle of *the flour* of *the fourr* welle,  
*That* flowes owte of Paradice whene *the* flode ryses,  
*That* myche froyt of fallez, *that* feede schalle vs alle;  
Be it frette on his flesche, *thare* synues are entamede,

*The* freke schalle be fische halle with-in fowre howres.

They vncouere *that* cors with fulle clene hondes;  
With clere watire a knyghte clensis theire wondes,  
Keled theyme kyndly, and comforted *ther* hertes.

*And* whene *the* earffes ware clene, *thay* clede them aȝayne;  
Barelle ferrers they brochede, and broghte them the wyne,

Bothe brede and brawne, and bredis fulle ryche; 2715  
*Whene* *thay* hade etene anone they armede after.

Thane tha awntrende men "*as armes!*" askryes,  
With a claryoune clere, thire knyglitez to-gedyre,  
Callys to concelle, and of this case tellys:— 2719

"*Zondyr* es a companye of clene mene of armes,  
*The* keneste in contek *that* vndir Criste lenges;  
In *ȝone* okene wode an oste are arrayede,  
Vndir-takande mene of *thiese* owte londes; 2723  
*As* sais vs *sir Priamous*, so helpe seynt Peter!"

"*Go, mene,*" quod Gawayne, "*and grape in ȝoure hertez,*

Who sall graythe to zone greue to zone gret lordes ;  
 3if we gettlesse goo home, the kyng wille be greued,  
 And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttile. 2728  
 We are with *sir* Florente, as to-daye falles,  
 That es floure of ffraunce, for he fleede neuer ;  
 He was chosene and chargegide in chambire of *the* kynge,  
 Chiftayne of *this* journee with cheualrye noble ; 2732  
 Whethire he fyghte or he flee, we sall folowe aftyre ;  
 ffore alle *the* fere of zone folke forsake sall I neuer !”

but refers to Sir Florent, the leader of the party.

“ffadyre,” sais *sir* Florent, “fulle faire 3e it telle !  
 Bot I ame bot a fawntkyne, vn-fraystede in armes ;  
 3if any foly be-falle, *the* fawte sall be owrs,  
 And fremdly o Fraunce be flemede for euer ! 2738  
 Woundes noghte 3our wirchipe, my witte es bot symple ;  
 3e are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as 3owe lykes ;  
 3e are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve huñdretre,  
 And *that* es fully to fewe to feghte with theme alle,  
 ffore harlottez and hansemene sall helpe bott littille ;  
 They wille hye theyme hyene for alle *the*ire gret wordes !  
 I rede 3e wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,  
 And warpes wylily a-waye, as wirchipulle knyghtes.”  
 “I grawnte,” quod *sir* Gawayne, “so me Gode helpe !  
 Bot here are galyarde gomes *that* of *the* gre seruis,  
 The kreuelleste knyghtes of *the* kynges chambyre,  
 That kane carpe with the coppe knyghtly wordes ;  
 We sall proue to-daye who sall the prys wyne.” 2751

Sir Florent expresses his deference to Sir Gawayne, the warden of the knights of the Round Table,

**N**owe ferriours fers vn-to *the* fyrthe rydez,  
 And fonngez a faire felde, and on fotte lyghtez ;  
 Prekes aftyre *the* pray, as prycce mene of armes.  
 fflorent and Floridas, with fyve score knyghtez, 2755  
 ffolowede in *the* foreste, and on *the* way fowndys,  
 fflyngande a faste trott, and on *the* folke dryffes.  
 Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundredre  
 Of freke mene to *the* fyrthe, appone fresche horses ;  
 One *sir* Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede, 2760  
 Was fosterde in Famacoste, the fende was his fadyre,

and thinks they are too few to [leaf 82, back] fight with so many.

He is for a careful retreat.

Arthur's men advance to the wood.

A band of 500 of the enemy meet them, headed by Sir Feraunt.

He flenges to *sir Florent*, and pristly he kryes,—  
“Why flees thou, falls knyghte? *thefende hafe thi saule!*”

He calls scornfully on Sir Florent,

Thane *sir florent* was fayne, and in fewter castys;  
One Fawnelle of ffryselande to<sup>1</sup> fferaunt he rydys, 2765  
And raghte in *the reyne* on *the stede ryche*,

And rydes to-warde the rowte, restes he no lengere!  
ffulle butt in *the frounte* he flysches hym euene, 2768  
And alle dysfegoures his face with his felle wapene!  
Thurgh his bryghte bacenette his brayne has he towchede,

And brustene his neke-bone, *that alle his breste stoppedpe!*

who with his lance in rest pierces him through the brain.

Thane his cosyne askryede, and cryede fulle lowde,  
“Thowe has killede colde dede *the kynge* of alle knyghtes!  
He has bene fraistede on felde in fyftene rewmes; 2774  
He fonde neuer no freke myghte feghte with hym one!  
Thow schalle dye for his dede with my derfe wapene,

And alle *the doughty* for dule *that in 3one dale houes!*”

“ffy,” sais *sir ffloridas*, “thow fferyande wryche!  
Thow wenes for to flay vs, ffloke-mowthede schrewe!”  
Bot ffloridas with a swerde, as he by glenttys, 2780  
Alle *the flesche* of *the flanke* he flappes in sondyre,  
That alle *the filthe* of *the freke* and fele of *the guttes*  
ffoloes his fole fotte, whene he furthe rydes! 2783

but Sir Floridas quickly disposes of him.

Than rydes a renke to reschewe *that byerne*,  
*That* was Raynalde of *the Rodes*, and rebelle to Criste,  
Peruerdede with paynmys *that Cristene persewes*;

Presses in prowldy, as *the praye* wendes, 2787  
ffore he hade in Prewsslande myche prycce wonnene;  
ffor-thi in presence thare he profers so large!

Bot thane a renke, *sir Richere* of *the Ronde Table*,  
One a ryalle stede rydes hym aȝaynes; 2791  
Thorowe a rounnde rede schelde he ruschede hym sone,  
That the rosselde spere to his herte rynnes!  
The renke relies a-bowte and rusches to *the erthe*,  
Roris fulle ruydlye, bot rade he no more! 2795

Sir Raynald, the renegade, proudly presses in;

but Sir Richer, of the Ronnd Table, runs him through with a spear.

[leaf 83]

Now alle *that es fere* and vnfaye of *thes fyve hundred*

<sup>1</sup> MS. te.

ffalles on *sir florent*, a ffyve score knyghttes,  
Be-twix a plasche and a flode, appone a flate lawnde ;  
Oure folke fongene theire felde, and fawghte theme  
agaynes. 2799

fall on Sir Florent  
and his men.

Than was lowde appone lofte “ *Lorryne !* ” askryede,  
Whene ledys with longe speris lasschene to-gedyrſ,  
And “ *Arthure !* ” one ouresyde, whenetheymeoghtaylede.

The one side  
shouts “ *Lor-  
raine*,” the other  
“ *Arthur*.”

Than *sir florent* and *Floridas* in fewtyre *they caste*,  
ffruschene one alle *the ffrape*, and biernes affrayede ;  
ffellis fyve at *the frounte* thare they fyrste enteride,  
And, or they ferke forthire, fele of *these othere* ! 2806  
Brenyes browddene they briste, brittenede scheldes,  
Bettes and beres downe the best *that theme* byddes ;  
Alle *that rewlyde* in the rowtſe they rydene awaye,  
So rewldy they rere theys ryalle knyghttes !

Sir Florent and  
Sir Floridas per-  
form great deeds  
of valour.

When *sir Priamous*, that prince, persayuede theire  
gamene, 2811

Sir Priamus be-  
seeches Gawayne  
that he may help  
Arthur's knights  
against the Sar-  
cens.

He hade peté in herte *that he ne durste profire* ;  
He wente to *sir Gawayne*, and sais hym *these wordes*,—  
“ *Thi price mene fore thi praye putt are alle vndyre*,  
They are with Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo *thane* seuene  
hundreth 2815

Of the Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes ;  
Walde *thow* suffire me, *sir*, for sake of thi Criste,  
With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones.”

“ *I grouche noghte*,” quod Gawayne, “ *the gree es  
thaire awene* ! 2819

Sir Gawayne says  
that they have  
not fought their  
fill these fifteen  
winters.

They mone hafe gwerddouns fulle grett graunt of my  
lorde,

Bot the freke mene of Fraunce fraiste theme selfene !  
ffrekſeſ faughte noghte theire fille this fyftene wynter !  
I wille noghte stire with my stale halfe a stede lenghe,  
Bot they be stedde with more stufſe thane one ȝone stede  
houys.” 2824

**T**hanе *sir Gawayne* was warre, with-owttyne *the wode*  
hemmes,

He sees, outside  
the wood,

men of Westphalia,

Wyes of the Westfale appone wyght horsez,  
Walopande wodely, as *the waye forthes*, 2827

With alle *the wapyns i-wys that to the werre longez*.

The erle Antele the olde the avawnwarde he buskes,  
Ayerande one ayther hande heghte thosande knyghez ;  
His pelours and pauysers passede alle nombyre, 2831  
That euer any prynce lede puruayede in erthe !

Than *the duke of Lorrain dresesse thare-aftyre*,  
With dowbille of *the Duche-mene, that doughtty ware holdene* ;

Paynymes of Pruyslande, prekkers fulle noble, 2835  
Come prekkande be-fore with *Priamous knyghtez*.

Than saide the erle Antele to Algere his brother,—  
“ Me angers earnestly at Arthures knyghez !

Thus enkerly one an oste awnters *theme selfene* ; 2839  
They wille be owttrayede anone, are vndrone ryngē,  
Thus folily one a felde to fyghte with vs alle !

Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynkes ! 2842  
Walde they purposse take, and passe one theire wayes,

Prike home to theire prynce, and theire pray leue,  
They myghtelenghenetheirelyefe, and lossene bott littile !

It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure Lorde !”

“ Sir,” sais *sir Algere*, “ thay hafe littile vsede 2847  
To be owttrayede withe oste : me angers *the more* !  
The fayreste schalle be fullefeye, *that in oure floke rydlez*,  
Alls fewe as they bene, are they the felde leue !”

**T**hanē gud Gawayne, gracious and noble, 2851  
Alle with glorious gle he gladdis his knyghtes ;

“ Glopypns noghte, gud mene, for gleterand scheldes,  
3ofe 3one gadlyngez be gaye one 3one gret horses !

Banerettez of Bretayne, buskes vp 3our hertes ! 2855  
Bees noghte baiste of 3one boyes, ne of thaire bryghte wedis !

We sallē blenke theire boste for alle theire bolde profire,  
Als bouxome as birde es in bede to hir lorde !

3effe we feghte to-daye, *the felde schalle be owrs*, 2859  
The fekillē faye sallē faile, and falsede be distroyede !

headed by the  
Earl Antele, who  
leads 8000  
knights.

The Earl is in-  
dignant that Ar-  
thur's knights  
should venture  
to resist so great  
a host.

[leaf 83, back]

They had better  
retreat while  
they are able.

Sir Alger, his  
brother, says that  
though they are  
so few they are  
a match for an  
army.

Sir Gawayne  
encourages his  
knights.

“ If we fight to-  
day, the field  
shall be ours.”

3one folk is one ffrountere, vnfraistede theyme semes ;  
Thay make faythe and faye to *the* fend seluene !

We sall in this viage victoures be holdene, 2863

And avauntede with voycez of valyant biernez ;

Praysede with pryncez in presence of lordes,

And luffede with ladyes in dyuerse londes !

Great shall be the  
rewards and joys  
of victory.

Aughte neuer siche honoure none of oure elders, 2867

Vnwyne ne Absolome, ne none of thies other !

Whene we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,<sup>1</sup>  
That es oure maisters seyne, *that* he myche traistez ;

In distress let  
them complain to  
Mary the mild  
queen.

Melys of *that* mylde qwene, that menskes vs alle ; 2871

Who so meles of *that* mayde, myskaries he neuer !”

Bethese wordes ware saide, they ware noghete ferre be-hynde  
Bot the lenghe of a launde, and “Lorayne !” askryes.

The enemy com-  
upon them.

Was neuer siche a justynge at journé in erthe, 2875

Never was there  
such a jousting.  
Even that in the  
valley of Jehoshaphat  
was not equal to it.

In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,

Whene Iulyus and Ioatalle ware juggede to dy,

As was whene the ryche mene of the Rownde Table

Ruschede in-to the rowte one ryalle stedes ! 2879

ffor so raythely thay rusche with roselde speris,

The rascal rout  
run to the groves.

That the raskaille was rade, and rane to *the* grefes,

And karede to *that* courte as cowards for euer !

“Peter !” sais *sir* Gawayne, “this gladdez myne herte !

Gawaine rejoices  
at the flight of  
the rabble.

That 3one gedlynges are gone, that made gret nowmbré ;

I hope that thees harlottez sall harme vs bot littille,

ffore they wille hyde theme in haste with-in 3one holte

enis ! 2886

Thay are fewere one ffelde than thay were fyrste nombirde,

[leaf 84]

Befourty thousande in faythe, for alle theyrefaire hostes.”

Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge,

A huge giant is  
slain by a justice  
of Wales.

Has jonede one *sir* Ierante, a justis of Walis ;

Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorowe,

And a fyne gesserawnte of gentille mayles, 2892

Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre !

One a jambe stede this jurnee he makes ;

<sup>1</sup> neuene struck out, and mene written instead.

Thus es *the geante for-juste*, that errawnte Iewe, 2895  
And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym *the more* !

Than the genatours of Genne enjoynes att ones,  
Sir Frederick attacks the British forayers.

And frykis one *the frowntere welle* a fyve hundredth ;  
A freke highte *sir ffederike*, with fulle fele *other*, 2899

fferkes one a frusche, and fresclyche askryes

To fyghte with oure fforreours, *that one felde houis*.

And thane the ryalle renkkes of *the Rownde Table*  
Rade furth fulle ernestly, and rydis theme agaynes,

Mellis with the medille-warde, bot they ware ille machede ;  
Of siche a grett multytude was meruayle to here.

Seyne at *the assemblé* the Sarazenes discoueres  
The soueraynge of Sessoyne, that saluede was never ;  
Gyawntis for-justede with gentille knyghtes, 2908

Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to *the herte* !

They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biernez,  
*That the hiltede swerdes to thaire hertes rynnys* !

Than *the renkes renownde* of *the Rownd Table*  
Ryffes and ruyssches downe renayede wreches ; 2913  
And thus they drewene to *the dede dukes and erles*,  
*Alle the dreghe of the daye*, with dredfuller werkes !

**T**hane *sir Priamous the prynce*, in presens of lordes,

Presez to his penowne, and pertly it hentes,  
Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys

To *the ryalle rowte* of *the Rownde Table* ; 2919

And heyly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,  
ffor they his resone had rede on his schelde ryche.

Owte of *the scheltrone* they schede, as schepe of a folde,  
And steris furth to *the stowre*, and stode be *theire lorde* !  
Seyne they sent to *the duke*, and saide hym *thise wordes*, —

“ We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex ȝere and more ;  
We for-sake *the to-daye* be serte of owre lorde ; 2926

We sewe to oure soueraynge in sere kynges londes.

Vs defawtes oure feez of *this foure wyntteres* ;  
Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot faire wordes ;  
Oure wages are werede owte, and *thi werre* endide,

The knights of  
the Round Table  
advance and fight  
valiantly.

Sir Priamus and  
his followers de-  
sert to the side  
of Arthur's men.

They upbraid the  
Duke of Lorraine  
for not having  
paid them their  
wages.

We maye with oure wirchipe weend whethire vs lykes !  
 I red *thowe* trette of a trewe, and trofle no lengere,  
 Or *thow* sall<sup>e</sup> tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euene."

"ffy a debles!" saide *the duke*, "the deuelle haue *your* bones!  
 The dawngere of *yon* doggez drede schalle I neuer !

The Duke answers furiously.  
 [leaf 84, back]

We sall<sup>e</sup> dele this daye, be dedes of armes, 2936

My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes !

Siche sowdeours as *ye* I sett bot att lyttile,  
 That sodanly in defawte for-sakes theire lorde !" 2939

The duke in his schelde and dreches no lengere,

Drawes hym a dromedarie, with dredfull knyghtez ;  
 Graythes to *sir* Gawayne, with fulle gret nowmbyre

He charges Arthur's knights on a dromedary.

Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuous are holdene. 2943

Thas fresche horsesede mene to *the* frownt rydes,  
 ffelles of oure fforreours be fourtly at ones !

His men fell many of the forayers.

They hade foughttene be-fore with a fyve hundrethe ;

It was no ferly, in faythe, *thofe* they faynt waxene.

Thane *sir* Gawayne was grefede, and grypys his spere,  
 And gyrdz in agayne with galycarde knyghtez ; 2949

Sir Gawayne grasps his spear.

Metes *the* maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,  
 As man of *this* medille-erthe, *that* moste hade greuede.

Child Chastelaine slays Sir Cheldrik,

Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of *the* kynges chambyre,  
 Was warde to *sir* Wawayne of *the* weste marches,

Cheses to *sir* Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,

With a chasyng spere he chokkes hym thurgh ! 2955

This chekke hym<sup>e</sup> eschewede be chauncez of armes ;

So *thay* chase *that* childe, eschape may he neuer !

Bot on Swyane of Swecy, with a swerde egge,

and is slain by Swyan.

The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre ! 2959

He swounande diede, *and* on *the* swarthe lengede,

Sweltes ewynne swiftly, and swanke he no more !

Gawayne grieves for him.

*T*han *sir* Gawayne gretes with his gray eghne ;

The guyte was a gude mane, be-gynnande of armes.

ffore the charry childe so his chere chawngide, 2964

That the chillande watire one his chekes rynnyde !

"Woo es me," *quod* Gawayne, "that I ne wetene hade ;

I salle wage for that wye alle *that I welde*, 2967  
 Bot I be wrokene on that wye, that thus has hym wondyde!"

He dresses hym drerily, and to *the duke rydes*,  
 Bot one *sir Dolphyne* the derfe dyghte hym agaynes,  
 And *sir Gawayne* hym gyrd with a grym launce, 2971  
 That the groundene spere glade to his herte !

*then Hardolf,*  
*happy in arms,*  
 And egerly he hente owte, and hurte a-nother,  
 An haythene knyghte, Hardolfe, happye in armes ;  
 Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hym thorowe, 2975  
 That the slydande spere of his hande sleppes !

Thare es slayne in *that slope*, be elagere of his hondes,  
 Sixty slongene in a slade of sleghe men of armes !

*and sixty more.*  
*He avenges the child,*  
*[leaf 85]*  
*and cuts his way through the enemy.*  
*Thoſe sir Gawaynne* ware wo, he wayttes hym by,  
 And was warre of *that wye* that the childe wondyde,  
 And with a swerde swiftly he swappes hym thorowe,  
 That he swyftly swelte, and on *the erthe* swounes !  
 And thane heraykest o *therowte*, and ruysches one helmys ;  
 Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede schyldes ; 2984  
 Rydes one a rawndoune, and his rayke holdes ;  
 Thorow-owte *the rerewarde* he holdes wayes,  
 And thare raughte in the reyne this ryalle *the ryche*,  
 And rydez in-to *the rowte of the Rownde Table*.

*The great deeds of Arthur's chivalrous men secure the victory.*  
**T**hane oure cheualrous<sup>1</sup> men changene theire horsez,  
 Chases and choppes downe cheftaynes noble,  
 Hittes fulle hertely on helmes and scheldes, 2991  
 Hurtes and hewes downe haythene knyghtez !  
 Ketelle-hattes they cleue euene to *the scholdirs* !  
 Was neuer siche a clamour of capitaynes in erthe !  
 Thare was kynges sonnes kaughte, curtays and noble,  
 And knyghtes of *the contré*, that knawene was ryche ;  
 Lordes of Lorayne and Lombardye bothene 2997  
 Laugh[t]e was, and lede in with oure lele knyghtez ;  
 Thas *that* chasede that daye, theire chaunce was bettire,  
 Swiche a cheke at a chace escheude theyme neuer !

**W**hen *sir fflorent*, be fyghte, had *the felde* wonene,  
 He fferkes ine be-fore with fyve score knyghtez ;

*Sir Florent*  
*presses on with*  
*five score*  
*knights.*

<sup>1</sup> MS. *cheualrours*.

Theire prayes and *theire* presoneres passes one aftyre,  
With pylours, and pauysers, and pryse mene of armes.

Thane gudly *sir* Gawayne gydes his knyghtez,  
Gas in at *the* gayneste, as gydes hym telles,  
ffore greffe of a garysone of fulle gret lordes 3007  
Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche.  
ffore-thy they stode at the straytez, and with his stale  
houede,

Tille his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis ;  
Whene they the ceté myghte see that the kyng seggede,  
Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnene. 3012  
An hawrawde hyes be-fore, the beste of the lordes,

Hom at *the* herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes ;  
Tornys tytte to *the* tente, and to the kynge telles 3015  
Alle the tale sothely, and how they hade spedē ;—  
“ Alle thy forreours are fere, that forrayede with-owtayne,  
Sir fflorent, and *sir* ffloridas, and alle thy ferse knyghtez ;  
Thay hafe forrayede and fughtene with fulle gret nowm-  
byre, 3019

And fele of thy foo-mene has broghte owt of lyffe !

Oure wirchipulle wardayne es wele escheuyde,  
ffor he has wonne to-daye wirchipe for euere,  
He has Dolfyne slayne, and *the* duke takyne ! 3023  
Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his hondes !  
He has prisoners price, pryncez and erles,  
Of *the* richestē blode *that* regnys in erthe !

Alle thy cheuallrous mene faire are eschewede, 3027  
Bot a childe Chasteleyne myschance es be-fallene.”

“ Hawtayne,” sais *the* kyng, “ harawde, be Criste !  
Thow has helyd myne herte, I hete the for-sothe !  
I ȝife the in Hamptone a hundredth pownde large.” 3031  
**T**he kynge than to assawte he sembles his knyghtez,  
With somercastelle and sowe appone sere halves ;  
Skyftis his skotiferis, and skayles the wallis,  
And iche wache<sup>1</sup> has his warde with wiese mene of  
armes. 3035

Sir Gawayne fol-  
lows with cau-  
tion,

and sees the city  
which Arthur  
is besieging  
won on the same  
day.

A herald hies  
to Arthur and  
tells him of the  
victory of his  
knights,

and how Sir Ga-  
wayne has won  
worship for ever.

Then the king  
rejoices and gives  
him a hundred  
pounds.

[leaf 85, back]  
Arthur assembles  
his knights to as-  
sault the city.

<sup>1</sup> *Or* wathe.

Thanе boldly *thay* buske, and bendes engynes,  
 Payses in pylotes and proues theire castes ;  
 Mynsteris and masondewes they malle to *the* erthe,  
 Chirches and chapelles chalke-whitte blawnchede. 3039  
 Stone [s]tepelles fulle styffe in *the* strete ligges,  
 Chawmbyrs with chymnés, and many cheefe inns,  
 Paysede and pelid downe playsterede walles ;  
 The pyne of *the* pople was peté for to here ! 3043  
 Thane *the* duchez hire dyghte with damesels ryche,  
 The countas of Crasyne with hir clere maydins,  
 Knelis downe in *the* kyrnelles thare the kyng houede,  
 On a couerde horse comlyli arayede ; 3047  
 They knewe hym by contenaunce, and criede fulle lowde,—  
 “ Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to *these* wordes !  
 We be-seke ȝow, *sir*, as soueraynge and lorde,  
 That ȝe safe vs to-daye, for sake of ȝoure Criste ! 3051  
 Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople,  
 Or *the* ceté be sodaynly with assawte wonnene !”  
 He weres his vesere with a vowt noble ;  
 With vesage vertouous, this valyante bierne 3055  
 Meles to hir myldly with fulle meke wordes,—  
 “ Salle no mysse do ȝow, ma dame, *that* to me lenges ;  
 I gyf ȝow chartire of pes, *and* ȝoure cheefe maydens,  
 The childire and *the* chaste mene, the cheualrous knyghtez ;  
 The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott littylle ! 3060  
 He sall idene *the* fulle wele, dout ȝow noghte eHes.”

Thanе sent he one iche a syde to certayne lordez,  
 ffor to leue *the* assawte, the ceté was ȝoldene ; 3063  
 With *the* erle eldeste sone he sent hym *the* kayes,  
 And seside *the* same nyghte, be sent of *the* lordes.  
 The duke to Douere es dyghte, and alle his dere knyghtez,  
 To duelle in dawngere and dole *the* dayes of hys lyue.

Thare fleede, at the ferrere ȝate, folke withowtynne  
 nombyre, 3068  
 ffor ferde of *sir* fflorent and his fers knyghtez ;  
 Voydes the ceté and to the wode rynnys,  
 With vetaile, and vesselle, and vestoure so ryche. 3071

Churches and  
chapels are beaten  
to earth.

The pain of the  
people is pity to  
hear.

The ladies sue  
for mercy.

Arthur promises  
that no hurt shall  
befall them.

The city is sur-  
rendered.

The Duke is sent  
to Dover as a  
prisoner.

Many of the in-  
habitants escape.

Thay buske vpe a banere abowne *the brode ȝates*.

Of *sir* fflorent, in ffay so fayne was he neuer !

The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to *the wallys*,  
And saide, “I see be ȝone syngne the cete es oures !”

Sir Arthure enters anone with hostes arayede, 3076  
Euene at *the vndrone* etles to lenge.

In iche leuere on lowde the kynge did crye,

Of Payne of lyf and lym and lesynge of londes,

That no lele ligemane, that to hym lonngede, 3080  
Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns,

Ne be no burgesse wyfle, better ne wersse ;

Ne no biernez myse-bide, that to *the burghe* longede.

Whene *the kyng* Arthure hade lely conquerid, 3084  
And the castelle couerede of *the kythe* riche,

Alle *the crowelle* and kene, be craftes of armes,

Captayns and constables, knewe hym for lorde.

He deuysede and delte to dyuerse lordez, 3088

A dowere for *the duchez* and hir dere childire ;

Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle *the londez*,

That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his weise  
knyghez. 3091

Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awene,

Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leefe t[h]oghte ;

And one *the Lammese* day to Lucerne he wendez,

Lengez thare at laysere with lykyng*e* i-nowe ; 3095

Thare his galays ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,

Alle gleterand as glase, vndire grene hyllys,

With cabanes couerede for kynges a-noyntede,

With clothes of clere golde for knyghez and *other* ;

Sone stowede theire stiffe, and stablede theire horses,

Strekis streke ouer *the strem* in-to *the strayte* londez.

Now he moues his myghte with myrthes of herte,

Ouere mowntes so hye, *thase* meruailous wayes ; 3103

Gosse in by Goddarde, the garett he wynnys,

Graythes the garnisone grisely wondes !

Whene he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys

With his hole bataylle, be-haldande a-bowte, 3107

Sir Florent sees  
by a sign that  
the city is won.

Arthur enters  
with his hosts.

[leaf 86]

He forbids his  
liegemen to lie  
with the ladies.

Arthur provides  
for the govern-  
ment of Lorraine  
which he has  
conquered.

At Lammas he  
goes to Lucerne.

His fair galleys  
are assembled.

He leads his  
forces over the  
high mountains  
by marvellous  
ways;

passes the St  
Gothard after de-  
feating the gar-  
rison;

looks down on  
Lombardy, and  
advances to  
Como.

Sir Florent and  
Sir Floridas plant  
an ambush,

and capture the  
city.  
[leaf 86, back]

The conqueror  
holds his court  
in Como.

The lord of  
Milan sends to  
offer submission  
and tribute.

Lukande one Lombarddye, and one lowde melys,—  
“ In ȝone lykande londe, lorde be I thynke.”  
Thane they cayre to Combe, with kyngez a-noyntede,  
That was kyde of *the* coste, kay of alle other. 3111  
Sir florent and sir ffloridas than fowndes be-fore,  
With ffreke mene of ffrance welle a fyve hundredeth ;  
To *the* ceté vn-sene thay soghte at *the* gaynest,  
And sett an enbuschement, als *theme* selfe lykys. 3115  
Thane ischewis owt of *that* ceté, fulle sone be *the* morne,  
Slale discouerours, skyftes theire horses ;  
Than skyftes *thes* skouerours, and skippes one hyllis,  
Diskoueres for skulkers that they no skathe lymppe ;  
Poueralle and pastorelles passede one aftyre, 3120  
With porkes to pasture at the price ȝates ;  
Boyes in *the* subarbis bourdene ffulle heghe,  
At a bare synglere that to *the* bente rynnys.  
Thane brekes oure buschemeñt, and the brigge wynnes,  
Brayedez in-to *the* burghe with baners displayede, 3125  
Stekes and stabbis<sup>1</sup> thorowe that them a-ȝayne-stondes ;  
fflowre stretis, or *thay* stynte, they stroyene fore euere !  
**N**ow es the conquerour in Combe, and his courte holdes  
With-in the kyde castelle, with kynges enoynttede ;  
Reconsaillez<sup>2</sup> the comouns *that* to *the* kyth lengez,  
Comfourthes the carefullie with knyghtly wordez ; 3131  
Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awene ;  
Bot alle *the* contré and he fulle sone ware accordide.  
The syre of Melane herde saye *the* ceté was wonnene,  
And send to Arthure sertayne lordes, 3135  
Grete sommes of golde, sexti horse chargegid,  
Be-soghte hym as souerayne to socoure *the* pople,  
And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for euer,  
And make hym seruece and snytte for his sere londes ;  
ffor plesaunce of Pawnce, and of Pownte Tremble, 3140  
ffor Pyse, and for Pavys, he profers fulle large,  
Bothe purpur, and palle, and precious stonyss,  
Palfrayes for any prynce, and prouede stedes ; 3143

<sup>1</sup> MS. stablis.

<sup>2</sup> Or Beconsaillez.

And ilke a ȝere for Melane a melione of golde,  
 Mekely at Martynmesse to menske with his hordes ;  
 And euer withowtynge askynge he and his ayers  
 Be homagers to Arthure, whilles his lyffe lastis. 3147 He pays homage  
to Arthur at  
Como.

The kynge be his concelle a conde the hym sendis,  
 And he es comene to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde.  
 In-to Tuskane he tournez, whene *thus* wele tymede, Arthur enters  
Tuscany,  
 Takes townnes fulle tyte with towrrres fulle heghe ;  
 Walles he welte downe, wondyd knyghtez, 3152  
 Towrres he turnes, and turmentez *the* pople,  
 Wroghte wedewes fulle wlonke, wrotherayle synges,  
 Ofte wary and wepe, and wryngene theire handis ; 3155  
 And alle he wastys with werre, thare he awaye rydez,  
 Thaire welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandrethe he  
 wroghthe ! and ravages the  
country.

Thus they spryngenz and sprede, and sparis bot lyttile,  
 Spoylls dispetouslye, and spillis theire vynes ; 3159  
 Spendis vn-sparely, *that* sparde was lange,  
 Spedis theme to Spolett with speris inewe !  
 Iffro Spayne in-to Spruyslande the worde of hym  
 sprynges, 3162  
 And spekynngs of his spencis, dissprise es fulle hugge !  
 Towarde Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes ;  
 Avissely in *that* vale he vetailles his biernez, In the Vale of  
Viterbo he  
victuals his men.  
 With vernage, and *other* wyne, and venysone bakene ;  
 And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge. 3167  
 Vertely the avawmwarde voydez theire horsez,  
 In the Vertennone vale, the vines i-mangez ;  
 Thare suggeournes this souerayne, with solace in herte,  
 To see whene the senatours sent any wordes ; 3171  
 Reuelle with riche wyne, riotes hym selfene,  
 This roy with his ryalle mene of *the* Rownde Table,  
 With myrthis, and melodye, and manykyne gamfnes ; The king and his  
knights make  
[leaf 87]  
great merriment.  
 Was neuuer meriere men made one this erthe ! 3175

Bot one a Seterdaye at none, a seuenyghte thare-aftyre,  
 The konyngeste cardynalle that to the courte lengede  
 Knelis to *the* conquerour, and karpes thire wordes, The cunningest  
Cardinal of Rome  
is sent to him,

Prayes hym for *the* pes, and profyrs fulle large, 3179  
 To hafe peté of *the* pope, *that* put was at-vndere ;  
 Be-soghte hym of surrawns, for sake of oure Lorde,  
 Bot a seuenyghe daye to *thay* ware alle semblede,  
 And they schulde sekerlye hym see the Sonondaye  
*ther-aftyre,* 3183

In the eeté of Rome, as soueraynge and lorde ;  
 And crowne hymē kynldy with krysomedē hondes,  
 With his eepstre, as soueraynge and lorde.

Of this vndyrtakynge ostage are comyne, 3187  
 Of ayers fulle auenaunt awughite score childdrenne,  
 In toges of tarsse fulle richelye attyryde,  
 And be-tuke theme the kynge, and his elere knyghtes.  
 When they had tretide thiere trewe, with trowmpyne  
*ther-after* 3191

They tryne vn-to a tente, whare tables whare rayssede ;  
 The kynge hymē selfene es sette, and certayne lordes,  
 Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the burdez,  
 Alle the senatours are sette sere be *thame* one, 3195

Serfed solemplly with selcouthe metes :  
 The kynge myghty of myrthe, with his mylde wordes,  
 Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table,  
 Comforthes the cardynalle so knyghtly<sup>1</sup> hymē seluene ;  
 And this roye ryalle, as romawns vs tellis, 3200  
 Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table.

The tawghte mene and *the* conyngē, whene theme tyme  
 thoghte,

Tas theire lefe at *the* kynge, and tornede agayne ; 3203  
 To *the* ceté *that* nyghte thaye soughte at *the* gaynestē,  
 And thus the ostage of Rome with Arthure es leuede.

**T**han this roy royalle rehersys theis wordes,—

“ Now may we reuelle and riste, fore Rome es oure  
 awene ! 3207

Make oure ostage at ese, *thise* auenaunt<sup>2</sup> chilidryene,  
 And luk *ȝe* hondene theme alle that in myne oste lengez,  
 The emperor of Almayne, and alle theis este marches ;

and offers that  
the Pope shall  
crown him as  
sovereign in  
Rome.

Hostages are  
given for the  
truth of his  
words.

The Roman sena-  
tors are solemnly  
feasted.

Arthur glorifies  
himself for his  
great success.

<sup>1</sup> MS. kynghly.

<sup>2</sup> MS. auenaunt.

We sall be ouerlynge of alle that one the erthe lengez !  
 We wille by the Crosse dayes encroche<sup>1</sup> theis londez,  
 And at the Crystynmesse daye be crowned<sup>2</sup> ther-aftyre ;  
 Ryngne in my ryalltés, and holde my Rownde Table,  
 Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykes ; 3215  
 Syne graythe ouer the grette see with gud mene of armes,  
 To reuenge the renke that one the rode dyede !”  
 Thane this comlyche kynge, as cronycles tellys,  
 Bownnys brathely to bede with a blythe herte ; 3219 He goes to bed  
 Of he slynges with slechte, and slakes gyrdille,  
 And fore slewthe of slomowre one a slepe fallis.  
 Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte alle his mode changede ;  
 He mett in the morne-while fulle meruaylous dremes ! [leaf 87, back]  
 And whene his dredefulle drem whas drefene to the ende,  
 The kynge dares for dowte, dye as he scholde ; 3225  
 Sendes aftyre phylosophers, and his affraye telles,—  
 “ Sene I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I neuer !  
 ffor-thy rawnsakes redly, and rede me my swefennys,  
 And I sall redily and ryghte rehersene the sothe.  
 Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myne one,  
 That I ne wiste no waye whedire that I scholde, 3231 He was in a  
 ffore waluez, and whilde swynne, and wykkyde bestez ;  
 Walkede in that wasterne, wathes to seche ;  
 Thare lyouns fulle lothely lykkyde theire tuskes,  
 Alle fore lapyng of blude of my lele knyghtez ! 3235 which were licking  
 Thurgh that foreste I flede, thare floures whare heghe,  
 ffor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thynges ;  
 Merkede to a medowe with montayngnes enclosyde,  
 The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde ! He flew to a  
 The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,  
 With clauer and clereworte clede euene ouer ;  
 The vale was enuerownde<sup>3</sup> with vynes of siluer,  
 Alle with grapis of golde, gretter ware neuer, 3243  
 Enhорilde with arborye and alkyns trees,  
 Erberis fulle honeste, and hyrdez there-vndyre ;

He will be crowned  
at Christmas  
in Rome, and  
hold his Round  
Table there.

He goes to bed  
and dreams.

He sends for his  
philosophers, and  
tells them the  
dream.

He was in a  
wood among wild  
beasts.

which were licking  
from their  
teeth the blood  
of his knights.

He flew to a  
beautiful meadow  
enclosed with  
mountains, and  
having vines of  
silver and grapes  
of gold.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Encroche encroche.      <sup>2</sup> MS. crownend.  
<sup>3</sup> MS. euene rownde.

Alle froytez foddeneid was *that floreschede in erthe,*  
 ffaire frithed in frawnke appone tha free bowes ; 3247  
 Whas thare no downkyng of dewe that oghte dere  
 scholde,

With the drowghte of the daye alle drye ware *the flores !*

A beautiful  
duchess de-  
scended from the  
clouds,

dressed in gor-  
geous apparel.

She whirled a  
strange wheel  
with her hands.

Thereon was a  
chair of silver,  
ornamented with  
carbuncles.

Kings clave to  
the wheel one  
after another.

Six had fallen  
from the settle,  
and lamented  
their misfortune.

[leaf 88]

The first was a  
little man with  
lean loins and  
long hair.

Than discendis in the dale, downe fra *the clowddez,*  
 A duches dereworthily dyghte in dyaperde wedis, 3251  
 In a surcott of sylke fulle selkouthely hewede,  
 Alle with loyotour ouer-laide lowe to *the hemmes,*  
 And with ladily lappes the lenghe of a ȝerde,  
 And alle redily reuerside with rcbanes of golde, 3255  
 Bruchez and besauntez, and *other bryghte stonyz,*  
 With hir bake and hir breste was brochede alle ouer,  
 With kelle and with corenalle clenliche arrayede,  
 And *that so comly of colour one knowene was neuer !*

A-bowte cho whirllide a whele with hir whitte hondez,  
 Ouer-whelme alle qwayntely *the whele as cho scholde ;*  
 The rowelle whas rede golde with ryalle stonyz,

Raylide with reched and rubyes i-newe ; 3263  
 The spekes was splentide alle with speltis of siluer,  
 The space of a spere lenghe springande fulle faire ;

There-one was a chayere of chalke-whytte siluer,  
 And chekyrde with charebocle chawngynge of hewes ;  
 Appone *the compas ther clewide kyngis one rawe,*  
 With corowns of clere golde *that krakede in sondire :*  
 Sex was of *that setille fulle sodaynliche fallene,* 3270  
 Ilke a segge by hymse selfe, and saide theis wordez,—  
 ‘That euer I rengnede one thir rog, me rewes it euer !

Was neuer roye so riche that regnede in erthe !  
 Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I noghte elles,  
 Bot reuaye, and reuelle, and rawnsone the pople ! 3275  
 And thus I drife forthe my dayes, whilles I dreghe  
 myghte,

And there-fore derflyche I am dampned for euer !’  
 The laste was a litylle mane that laide was be-nethe,  
 His leskes laye alle lene and latheliche to schewe, 3279

The lokkes lyardre and longe the lenghe of a ȝerde,  
His lire and his lyghame lamede fulle sore ;  
The two eyne of the byeryne was brighttere thane siluer,  
The tother was ȝalowere thene the ȝolke of a naye.

‘ I was lorde,’ quod the lede, ‘ of londes i-newe, 3284 He had been lord of many lands, but now was lost.  
And alle ledis me lowttede that lengede in ert̄he ;  
And nowe es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,  
Bot lightly now ame I loste, leue iche mane the sothe ! ’

The secunde sir for-sothe that sewede theme aftyre,  
Was sekerare to my sighte, and saddare in armes ;  
Ofte he syghede vn-sownde, and said theis wordes,—  
‘ On ȝone see hafe I sittene, als souerayne and lorde,  
And ladys me louede to lappe in theyre armes ; 3292  
And nowe my lordchippes are loste, and laide for euer ! ’

The thirde thorowely was throo, and thikke in the schuldrys, The third was stout and strong.

A thra man to thrette of, there thretty ware gaderide ;  
His dyademe was droppedede downe, dubbyde with stonyis,  
Endente alle with diamawndis, and dighte for the nonis ;  
‘ I was dredde in my dayes,’ he said, ‘ in dyuerse rewmes, He had been dreaded in his day.  
And now dampnede to the dede, and doles the more ! ’

The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes,  
The fayreste of fegure that fourmede was euer !  
‘ I was frekke in my faithe,’ he said, ‘ whilles I one

The fourth was a fair man, but foul mischance had now happened to him.

fowlde regnede,  
ffamows in fferre londis, and floure of alle kynges ; 3303  
Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapnede,  
ffor I am fallene fro ferre, and frendles by-leuyde ! ’

The fifte was a faire mane thane fele of *thies other*,  
A fforsesy mane and a ferse, with fomand lippis ; 3307

The fifth was very fierce and violent.

He fongede faste one the feleyghes, and fayled his armes,  
Bot ȝit he failede and felle a fyfty fote large ;  
Bot ȝit he sprange and sprente, and spraddene his armes,  
And onethe spere-lenghe spekes, he spekes thire wordes—  
‘ I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myne one, 3312  
As souerayne and seyngnour of sere kynges londis ;

He had been sovereign in Syria, but was now fallen.

Now of my solace I am fulle sodanly fallene,  
And for sake of my syn, ȝone sete es me reweде !'

The sixth had a  
psalter well-  
bound, a harp,  
and a sling.

The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bowndene,  
With a surepel of silke sewede fulle faire, 3317  
A harpe and a hande-slynge with harde flynte stones ;  
What harmes he has hente he halowes fulle sone,—  
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes  
One of the doughtyeste that duelled in erthe ;

Bot I was merride one molde in my moste strengthis,  
With this maydene so mylde, *that mofes vs alle.*' 3323

Two kynges ware clymbande, and clauerande one  
heghe,

The creste of *the compas* they couette fulle ȝerne ;  
'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange  
here-aftyre,

As two of *the cheffeste* choseনe in erthe !' 3327

The childire ware chalke-whitte, chekys and *other*,  
Bot the chayere a-bownne cheuede they neuer :

The forthirmaste was freely, *with* a frount large,  
The faireste of fyssnamy *that fourmede* was euer ; 3331

And he was buskede in a blee of a blewe noble,

With flourdelice of golde floreschede al ouer ;

The tother was cledde in a cote alle of clene siluer,

With a comliche crosse coruene of golde, 3335

fflowre crosselettes krafty by *the crosse* ristes,

And ther-by knewe I the kyng, *that* crystned hyme  
semyde.

**T**hanе I went to *that* wlonke, and wynly hire gretis,  
And cho said, 'welcome i-wis ! wele arte thou  
fowndene ; 3339

The aughte to wirchipe my wille, and thou wele cowthe,  
Of alle the valyant men that euer was in erthe ;

ffore alle thy wirchipe in werre by me has thou wonnene,  
I hafe bene frendely, frke, and fremmede tille *other* ;

That has *thow* fowndene in faithe, and fele of *thi* biernez,  
ffore I fellid downe *sir* Frolle with frowarde knyghtes ;  
ffore-thi the fruytes of Fraunce are freely thynne awene.

He had been  
among the  
[leaf 88, back]  
doughtiest in  
his day, but had  
been marred by  
the maiden.

Two kings were  
climbing to the  
chair, but failed  
to reach it.

The one was pass-  
ing fair of feature,  
and arrayed in  
blue with fleurs-  
de-lis of gold.

The other was  
clad in silver,  
with a cross of  
gold.

Arthur greeted  
the Duchess, who  
welcomed him.

Thow sallē *the chayere escheue*, I chese *the my selfene*, He was chosen to achieve the chair,  
Be-fore alle *the cheftaynes chosene* in this erthe.' 3348

Scho lifte me vp lightly with hir lene hondes,  
And sette me softly in the see, *the septre me rechede* ; and was set there-in.  
Craftely with a kambe cho kembede myne heuede, 3351

That the krispane kroke to my crownne raughte ;  
Dressid oñe me a diademe, that dighte was fulle faire,  
And syne profres me a pome pighte fulle of faire stonye,  
Enamelde with azoure, the erth there-one depayntide,  
Selkylde with the salte see appone sere halfes, 3356  
In sygne *that I sothely was souerayne in erthe*.

Than broght cho me a brande with fulle bryghte hiltes,  
And bade me brawndysche *the blade*, 'the brande es  
myne awene :' 3359 A sword with a bright hilt was brought to him.

Many swayne with *the swyngē* has the sw[e]tte leuede ;  
ffor whilles thow swanke with *the swerde*, it swykkede  
*the neuer.*'

Than raykes cho with roo, and riste whene hir likede,  
To *the ryndes* of *the wode*, richere was neuer ; 3363  
Was no pomarie so pighte of pryncez in erthe,  
Ne nonne apparaylle so prowde, bot paradys one.

Scho bad *the bewes scholde bewe downe*, and bryng to  
my hondes 3366 He was taken to the wood, and the boughs were made to yield their fruit to him.

Of *the beste* that they bare one brawnches so heghe ;  
Than they heldede to hir heste alle holly at oñes,  
The hegheste of iche a hirste, I hette ȝow for-sothe :  
Scho bade me fyrthe noghte *the fruyte*, bot fonde whilles  
me likede, He was bid take [leaf 89] freely of the finest.

'ffonde of *the fyneste*, thow freliche byerne, 3371

And reche to *the ripeste*, and ryotte thy seluene !

Riste, thow ryalle roye, for Rome es thyne awene !

And I sallē redily rolle *the roo* at *the gaynestē*,

And reche the *the riche wyne* in *rynsede coupes*.' 3375 The lady drew wine for him from the spring,

Thane cho wente to *the welle* by *the wode* enis,

That alle wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnes ;

Kaughte vp a coppe-fulle, and couerde it faire ; 3378

Scho bad me dereliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfene. and bade him drink to her.

And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owre,  
 With alle likynge and luffe, *that* any lede scholde ;  
 Bot at *the* myddaye fulle ewyne alle *hir* mode chaungede,  
 And mad myche manace with meruayllous wordez ;  
 Whene I cryede appone hire, cho kest downe *hir* browes :  
 ' Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste *that* me made !  
 ffor thow sall lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,  
 Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe !'

But at mid-day  
all was chaunged.

She spoke to  
him fiercely, and  
told him that he  
should lose his  
life.

She whirled the  
wheel round, till  
his quarters were  
quashed and his  
chine chopped  
asunder by the  
chair.

Abowte scho whirles the whele, and whirles me vndire,  
 Tille alle my qwarters *that* whille whare qwaste al to  
 peces !

3389

And with that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire !  
 And I hafe cheueride for chele, sen me this chance  
 happenede.

Than wakkenyde I iwys, alle very for-dremyde, 3392  
 And now wate thow my woo, worde as *the* lykes."

The philosopher  
interprets the  
dream, and tells  
Arthur that his  
good fortune is  
passed.

He is to prepare  
for his end,

and to found ab-  
beys in France.

He is bid take  
heed of the other  
kings who tried  
the chair.

The first was  
Alexander,  
the second  
Hector,  
the third Julius  
Cesar,

the fourth Judas  
the Maccabee,

"ffreke," sais the philosophre, "thy fortune es passede !  
 ffor thow sall fynd hir thi foo, frayste whene the lykes !

Thow arte at *the* hegheste, I hette the for-sothe ! 3396

Chalange nowe when thow wille, thow cheuys no more !

Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes destroyede,

Sakeles, in cirquytrie, in sere kynge landis ; 3399

Schryfe the of thy schame, and schape for thyne ende !

Thow has a schewynge, *sir* kynge, take kepe *ȝ*if the lyke,

ffor thow sall fersely falle with-in fyve wynters ! 3402

fflownde abbayes in ffaunce, *the* froytez are theyne awene,

ffore ffroille, and for fferawnt, and for thir ferse knyghtis,

That thowe fremydly in ffaunce has faye be-leuede ;

Take kepe *ȝ*itte of *other* kynge, and kaste in thyne herte,

That were conquerours kydde, and crownnede in erthe ;

The eldeste was Alexandere, *that* alle *the* erthe lowttede ;

The tother Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gume ;

The thirde Iulyus Cesare, *that* geant was holdene,

In iche jorné jentille, a-juggede with lordes ; 3411

The ferthe was *sir* Iudas, a justere fulle nobille,

The maysterfulle Makabee, the myghtyeste of strenghes ;

The fyfte was Iosue, that joly mane of armes, 3414 the fifth Joshua,  
 That in Ierusalem oste fulle myche joye lymppede ;

The sexte was Dauid the dere, demyd with kynges

One of the doughtyeste that dubbede was euer,

ffor he slewe with a slynge, be sleyghte of his handis,

Golyas the grette gome, grymmeste in erthe ; 3419

Syne endittede in his dayes alle the dere psalmes,

That in the sawtire ere sette with selcouthie wordes.

the sixth David,  
 who slew the  
 great Goliath.

[leaf 89, back]

The two elymbande kynges, I knawe it for-sothe,  
 Salle Karolus be callide, the kyng sone of Fraunce ;  
 He salle be crowelle and kene, and conquerour holdene,  
 Couere be conqueste contres ynnewe ; 3425

Of the two kings  
 who were clim-  
 bing, one shall  
 be Carolus of  
 France ;

He salle eneroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfene,  
 And that lifeliche launce, that lepe to his herte,  
 When he was crucyfiede one crose, and alle the kene  
 naylis,

he shall win the  
 crown that Christ  
 bare, and the  
 lance that leapt  
 to his heart ;

Knyghtly he salle conquere to Cristyne men hondes.

The tother salle be Godfraye, that Gode schalle reuenge  
 One the Gud Frydaye with galyarde knyghtes ; 3431  
 He salle of Lorrayne be lorde, be leefe of his fadire,  
 And syne in Ierusalem myche joye happyne,  
 ffor he salle couer the crosse be craftes of armes, 3434

the other shall be  
 Godfrey, the lord  
 of Lorraine, who  
 shall recover the  
 true cross.

And synne be corownde kynge, with krysome enoyntede ;  
 Salle no duke in his dayes siche destanye happyne,  
 Ne siche myschefe dreghe, whene trewthe salle be tryede !

Arthur is needed  
 to make up the  
 number of the  
 nine nobles.

ffore-thy ffortune the fetches to fulfille the nowmbyre,  
 Ahs nynne of the nobileste namede in erthe ; 3439  
 This salle in romance be redde with ryalle knyghtes,

He shall be cele-  
 brated for ever  
 as the doughtiest  
 on earth.  
 Many clerks shall  
 tell of his deeds.

Rekkenede and renownde with ryotous kynges,

And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes, 3442

ffor the doughtyeste that euer was duelland in erthe :

So many clerkis and kynges salle karpe of ȝoure dedis,

And kepe ȝoure conquestez in cronycle for euer !

Bot the wolfes in the wode, and the whilde bestes,

Are some wikkyd mene that werrayes thy rewmes, 3447

Es entirde in thyne absence to werraye thy pople,

The wolves in  
 the wood and the  
 wild beasts are  
 wicked men that  
 are warring on  
 his people.

And alyenys and ostes of vncouthe landis.

He wili have  
some tidings  
within ten days.

Thow getis tydandis I trowe, with-in tene dayes, 3450

That some torfere es tydde, sene thow fro home turnede;

I rede thow rekkyne and reherse vn-resonable dedis,

Ore the repenttes fulle rathe alle thi rewthe werkes!

Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappene,

And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule!" 3455

**T**hane rysezthe riche kynge, and rawghte one his wedys,

A reedde actone of rosse, the richeste of floures,

A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdille;

And one he hentis a hode of scharlette fulle riche,

A pauys pillione hatt, that pighte was fulle faire 3460

With perry of the Oryent, and precyous stones;

His gloues gayliche gilte, and grauene by the hemmys,

With graynes of rubyes fulle gracious to schewe;

His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no byerne  
elles, 3464

And bownnes ouer a brode mede, with breth at his herte;

ffurth he stalkis a stye by *tha* stille enys,

Stotays at a hey strette, studyande hyme one;

Att the surs of *the* sonne, he sees there commande,

Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes, 3469

A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowmme clothes,

With hatte, and with heyghe schone homely and rownde;

With flatte ferthynges the freke was floreschede alle ouer;

Manye schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hynnges,

With scrippe, ande with slawyne, and skalopis i-newe,

Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde. 3475

The gome graythely hym grette, and bade gode morwene;

The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,

Of Latyne corroumppede alle, fulle louely hym menys,—

“ Whedire wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyne onne?

Qwhyllies this werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde;

Here es ane enmye with oste, vndire ȝone vynes;

And they see the, for-sothe, sorowe the be-tyddes;

Bot ȝif thow hafe condethe of *the* kynge selfene, 3483

The king rises  
and puts on his  
robes.

He sees a man  
approaching in  
the garb

[leaf 90]

of a pilgrim.

He asks him  
whither he is  
going,

Knaues wille kille the, and keppe at thou haues ;  
 And if thou halde the hey waye, they hente the also,  
 Bot if thou hastyly hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes."

and tells him the  
dangers of the  
way.

**T**hanе karpes *sir* Cradoke to the kynge selfene, 3487

" I sallе for-gyffe hym my dede, so me Gode helpe ! The stranger  
says that he fears  
no dangers.  
 Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes !

Latte the keneste come, that to *the* kyng langes,

I sallе encountire hymе as knyghte, so Cristе hafe my  
sawle ! 3491

ffor thou may noghte reche me, ne areste thy selfene,  
 Thoffe thou be richely arayede in fulle riche wedys ;  
 I wille noghte wonde for no werre, to wende whare me  
likes, 3494

Ne for no wy of this werlde, *that* wroghte es one erthe !

Bot I wille passe in pilgremage *this* pas vn-to Rome,  
 To purchese me *pardon*ne of the pape selfene ;

He is bound in  
pilgrimage to  
Rome.

And of paynes of purgatorie be plenerly assoyllede ;  
 Thane sallе I seke sekirly my souerayne lorde, 3499

Sir Arthure of Inglande, that auenaunt byerne !

Then he has to  
find Arthur of  
England.

ffor he es in this empire, as hathelle men me telles,  
 Ostayande in this Oryente with awfulle knyghtes."

" **F**ro qwyne come *thoue*, kene mane," quod the kynge  
thane, 3503

The king asks  
him whence he  
comes, and  
whether he knows  
Arthur and his  
knights.

" That knawes kynge Arthure, and his knyghttes also ?

Was *thoue* euer in his courte, qwylls he in kyth lengede ?

Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myne herte !

Well wele has *thou* wente, and wysely *thou* sechis,

ffor *thoue* arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche."

" Me awghte to knowe *the* kynge, he es my kydde lorde,  
 And I calde in his courte a knyghte of his chambire ;  
 Sir Craddoke was I callide, in his courte riche, 3511

He tells him that  
his name is Sir  
Cradok, a knight  
of Arthur's cham-  
ber, and keeper of  
Caerleon.

Kepare of Karlyone, vndir the kynge selfene ;

Nowe am I cachede owtt of kyth, with kare at my herte,  
 And that castelle es cawglite with vneowthe ledys."

Than the comliche kynge kaughte hym in armes, 3515  
 Keste of his ketille-hatte, and kyssede hymе fulle sone,

The king kisses  
and welcomes Sir  
Cradok.

Saide, "welcome, *sir* Craddoke, so Criste mott me helpe!  
 Dere cosyne of kynde, thowe coldis myne herte !  
 How faris it in Bretaynne, with alle my bolde berynns ?  
 Are they brettenede, or brynte, or broughte owt of lyue ?  
 Kene thou me kyndely whatte caase es be-fallene ; 3521  
 I kepe no credens to crafte, I knawe the for trewe."

"Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys ;  
 ffor he wandreth has wroghte, sen thou a-waye passede ;  
 He has castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,  
 Kaughte in alle *the* rentis of *the* Rownde Tabille ;  
 He devisede *the* rewme, and delte as hym likes ; 3527  
 Dubbede of *the* Danmarkes, dukes and erles,  
 Disseueride *them* sondirwise, and cites dystroyede,  
 To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appone sere halues,  
 He has semblede a sorte of selcouthie berynes, 3531  
 Soueraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,  
 Of Peyghtes, and paynymms, and prouede knyghttes  
 Of Irelande and Orgaile, owtlawede berynes ;  
 Alle thaa laddes are knyghttes *that* lange to *the* mowntes,  
 And ledynge and lordeckippe has alle, ahs theme selfe  
 likes ; 3536

And there es *sir* Childrike a cheftayne holdyne,  
 That ilke cheualrous mane, he chargges thy pople ;  
 They robbe thy religeous, and ravische<sup>1</sup> thi nonnes, 3539  
 And redy ryddis with his rowtte to rawnsone *the* pouere ;  
 ffor Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his awene,

And alle *the* countré of Kent be couenawnte entayllide ;  
 The comliche castelles that to the corowne langede,  
 The holttes, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,  
 Alle *that* Henguste and Hors hent in *theire* tyme ;  
 Att Southamptone on the see es seuene skore chippes,  
 ffrawghte fulle of ferse folke, owt of ferre landes, 3547  
 ffor to fyghte with thy ffrappe, whene *thow* theme  
 assailles.

Bot zitt a worde witterly, thowe watte noghte *the* werste !  
 He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wieffe holdis,

Sir Cradok tells  
him of the evil  
[leaf 90, back]  
deeds of Modred.

He has gathered  
forces of paynims  
and outlaws,

who rob the re-  
ligious and ravish  
the nuns.

He has seized the  
whole of England  
and all Arthur's  
castles.

He has a fleet of  
seven score ships  
at Southampton.

But, worst of all,  
he has taken  
Guinever, and  
holds her as  
his wife !

<sup>1</sup> MS. ravichse

And woñnys in the wilde bowndis of *the* weste marches,  
 And has wroghte hire withi childe, as witnesse tellis !  
 Off alle *the* wyes of *this* worlde, woo motte hym worthe,  
 Ahs wardayne vnworthye womene to ȝeme !

Thus has *sir* Modrede merrede vs alle ! 3555  
 ffor-thy I merkede ouer thees mowntes, to mene *the* the  
 sothe."

Than the burliche kynge, for brethe at his herte,  
 And for this botelesse bale alle his ble chaungede !

"By *the* rode," sais *the* roye, "I sallit revenge ! 3559  
 Hym sallit repente fulle rathe alle his rewthe werkes !"

Alle wepande for woo he went to his tentis ;  
 Vnwynly this wyesse kynge, he wakkenysse his berynes,  
 Clepid in a clarioune kynges and othire, 3563

Callys theme to concelle, and of *this* cas tellys,—  
 "I am with tresone be-trayede, for alle my trewe dedis !

And alle my trauayle es tynt, me tydis nobettire !  
 Hym sallit torfere be-tyde, *this* tresone has wroghte,  
 And I may traistely hym take, as I am trew lorde !

This es Modrede, *the* mane that I moste traystede,  
 Has my castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,  
 With renttes and reches of the Rownde Table ; 3571  
 Has made alle hys retenewys of renayede wrechis,

And devysed my rewme to dyverse lordes,  
 To sowdeours and to Sarazenes owtte of sere londes !

He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyefe holdes,  
 And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es nobettire !  
 They hafe semblede on the see seuene schore chippis,  
 ffulle of ferrome folke, to feghte with myne one !

ffor-thy to Bretayne the brode buske vs by-houys, 3579  
 ffor to brettyne *the* berynne that has this bale raysede !

Thare sallit no freke men fare, bott alle one fresche horses,  
 That are fraistede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghtez :

Sir Howelle and *sir* Hardolfe here sallit be-leue, 3583  
 To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges ;  
 Lokes in-to Lombardye, *that* thare no lede chaunge,—

Arthur is over-  
 come by the  
 tidings, and vows  
 revenge.

He calls a council  
 and tells them the  
 ill news.

[leaf 91]

They must pro-  
 ceed to Britain  
 with all speed.

Sir Howelle and  
 Sir Hardolfe shall  
 remain behind to  
 govern Rome and  
 Italy.

And tenderly to Tuskayne take tente alls I byde ;  
 Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwene *thay* are rekkenede ;  
 Take sesyne the same daye that laste was assygnede,  
 Or elles alle *the* ostage, with-owtynne *the* wallys, 3589  
 Be hynggyde hye appone hyghte alle holly at ones ! "

Arthur and his  
best knights  
journey rapidly  
towards Britain.

**N**owe bownes the bolde kynge with[his] besteknyghtes,  
 Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forthi aftyre ;  
 Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, taries bot littile, 3593  
 Lyghte noghte in Lombarddye bot whene *the* lyghte  
 failede ;

Merkes ouer the mowntaynes fulle mervaylous wayes,  
 Ayres thurgh Almaygne evyne at the gayneste ; 3596  
 fferkes evynne in-to fflawndresche with hys ferse  
 knyghtes ;

In fifteen days his  
fleet is assembled.  
He embarks and  
sets sail.

Withi-in fyftene dayes his flete es assemblede,  
 And thane he schoupe hym to chippe, and schownnes  
 no lengere, 3599

He discovers the  
fleet of the enemy  
armed and pre-  
pared for fight.

Scherys withi a charpe wynde ouer *the* schyre waters ;  
 By *the* roche withi ropes he rydes one ankkere,

Thare the false mene fletyde, and one flode lengede,  
 With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode to-gedyr,

Charggede evyne chekfulle of cheualrous knyghtes ;  
 And in *the* hynter one heghte, helmes and crestes,

Hatches with haythene mene hillyd ware thare vndyre,  
 Prowdliche purtrayed<sup>1</sup> with payntede clothys, 3607

Iche a pece by pece prykkyde tylle *other*,  
 Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they seme ;  
 And thus *the* derfe Danamarkes had dyghte alle theyre  
 chippys, 3616

That no dynte of no darte dere theme ne schoulde.

Than the roye and *the* renkes of the Rownde Table  
 Alle ryally in rede arrayes his chippis ;

That daye ducheryes he delte, and doubbyde knyghtes,  
 Dresses dromowndes and dragges, and drawene vpe  
 stonyss ; 3615

Then he makes  
ready his ships  
for the battle.

<sup>1</sup> MS. prutrayede.

The toppe-castelles he stuffede *with* toyelys, as hym  
lykyde,

Bendys bowes of vys brothly *thare-aftyre* ;

Tolowris tently takelle they ryghttene,

Brasene hedys fulle brode buskede one flones,

Graythes for garnysones gomes arrayes ; 3620

Gryme gaddes of stele, ghywes of iryne,

Stiȝtelys<sup>1</sup> steryne one sterynne with styffe mene of armes,

Mony lufliche launce appone lofte stonndys,

Ledys one leburde, lordys and *other*, 3624

Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheledes,

One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghez.

Thus they scheftene foreschotys one thas schirestrandys,

Ilke schalke in his schrowde, fulle scheene ware *theire*  
wedys. 3628

The bolde kynge es in a barge and a-bowtte rowes,

Alle bare-heuvede for besye with beueryne lokkes ;

And a beryne with his bronde, and ane helme betyne,

Mengede with a mawneelet of maylis of siluer, 3632

Compaste with a coronalle, and couerde<sup>2</sup> fulle riche ;

Kayris to yche a cogge, to comfurthe his knygghtes :

To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—

“ O Gawayne ! O Galyrane ! thies gud mens bodyes.”

To Loth and to Lyonelle fulle louefly he melys, 3637

And to sir Lawncelot de Lake lordliche wordys,—

“ Lat vs couere the kythe, the coste es owre ownne ;

And gere theme brotheliche blenke, alleȝone blod-hondes !

Bryttyne them with-in bourde, and brynnne theme *thare*  
aftyre ! 3641

Hewe downe hertly ȝone heythene tykes !

Thay are harlotes halfe, I hette ȝow myne honnde ! ”

Than he coueres his cogge, and caches one ankere,

Kaughte his comliche helme *with* the clere maylis ;

Buskes baners one brode, betyne of gowles,

With corowns of clere golde clenliche arraiede ; 3647

The tool-men  
righten the  
tackle,

grim goads of  
steels and gyves  
of iron.

[leaf 91, back]

The bold king in  
a barge rows  
about bareheaded.

He cries aloud to  
Cleges and Cleremound, to Lionel  
and Lancelot,

“ let us recover  
our land and  
make you blood-  
hounds banch ;  
hew down heartily  
the heathen  
hounds.”

He reaches his  
ship, takes his  
helmet and mail,  
and displays his  
banners.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Stirttelys.

<sup>2</sup> MS. couererde.

His chief device  
is a picture of our  
Lady and the  
Child.

Bot thare was chosene in the chefe a chalke-whitte  
maydene,

And a childe in hir arme, that chefe es of hevynne :  
With-owttene changynge in chace, thies ware the cheefe  
armes 3650

Of Arthure the auenaunt, qwhylls he in erte lengede.

The sailors busy  
themselves to get  
the ships under  
weigh.

Thane the marynerse mellys, and maysters of chippis,  
Merily iche a mate menys tille other ;

Of theire termys they talke, how thay ware tydd,  
Towyne trvsselle one trete, trvssene vpe sailes, 3655

Bet bonettez one brede, bettrede hatches ;

Brawndeste browne stele, braggede in trompes ;  
Standis styffe one the stamyne, steris one aftyre ;

Strekyne ouer the streme, thare stryvyng be-gynnes.  
ffro the wagande wynde owte of the weste rysses, 3660

Brethly bessomes with byrre in berynes sailles ;  
With hir bryngges one burde burliche cogges,  
Qwhylls the bilyng and the beme brestys in sondyre ;  
So stowtly the forsterne one the stam hyttis, 3664

That stokkes of the stere-burde strykkys in peces !

Be thane cogge appone cogge, krayers and other,  
Castys crepers one crosse als to the crafte langes : 3667  
Thane was hede-rapys hewene that helde vpe the mastes ;  
Thare was conteke fulle kene, and crachynge of chippys !  
Grett cogges of kampe crasseches in sondyre !

Mony kabane clevede, cabilles destroyede ! 3671

Knyghtes and kene mene killide the braynes !  
Kidd castelles were corvene with alle theire kene wapene,  
Castelles fulle comliche, that coloured ware faire !

Vpeynes eghelynge thay ochene thare-aftyre, 3675

With the swynge of the swerde sweys the mastys ;  
Ovyre-fallys in the firste frekis and othire,  
ffrekke in the forchipe fey es byleuefede !

Than brothely they bekyre with boustouse tacle, 3679

Bruschese boldlye one burde brynyede knyghtes,  
Owt of botes one burde was buskede with stonys,  
Bett downe of the beste, brystis the hetches ;

They strike across  
the stream and  
the strife begins.

There is great  
dashing together  
of ships.

Grapplings are  
thrown out.

A mighty strug-  
gle ensues.

Masts fall and kill  
the mariners.

[leaf 92]  
Boardings are  
made and hand-  
to-hand fights  
take place.

Som gomys thourghe-gyrdē with gaddys of yryne,  
Gomys gayliche clede<sup>1</sup> englaymous wapene ! 3684

Archers of Inglande fulle egerly schottes,  
Hittis thourghe *the* harde stèle fulle hertly dynntis !

The archers of  
England make  
havoc among the  
heathen knights.

Sonne hotchene in holle the *hēthenne* knyghtes,  
Hurte thourghe *the* harde stèle, hele they neuer ! 3688

Than they falle to *the* fyghte, ffoynes with sperys,

Alle the frekkestē one frownte *that* to *the* fyghte langes ;  
And ilkone frechely fraystez theire strenghes, 3691

Were to fyghte in *the* flete with theire felle wapyne.

Thus they dalte *that* daye, thire dubbide knyghtes,

Tille alle *the* Danes ware dede, and in *the* depe throwene !  
Than Bretones brothely with brondis they hewene,

The Danes of  
Modred's fleet  
are all slain.

Lepys in vp one lofte lordeliche berynes ; 3696

When ledys of owt-loñdys leppyne in waters,

Alle oure lordes one lowde laughene at ones !

Arthur's lords  
laugh to see their  
foes leap into the  
water.

Be thane speris whare spronngene, spalddyd chippy's,  
Spanyolis spedily sprentyde ouer burdez ; 3700

Alle *the* kene mene of kampe, knyghtes and *other*,  
Killyd are colde dede, and castyne ouer burdez !

All Modred's  
keen men are  
killed.

Theire swyers sweyftly has *the* swete leuyde,  
Hethene heuande on hatche in *ther* hawe ryses, 3704

Synkande in *the* salte see seuene hundrethe at ones !

Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude, he has *the* gree wonnene,  
And alle *the* cogges grete he gafe to his knyghtes, 3707

Sir Gawayne gives  
the ships to his  
knights.

Sir Geryne, and *sir* Grisswolde,<sup>2</sup> and othir gret lordes ;  
Garte Galuth, a gud gome, girde of thaire hedy's !

Thus of *the* false flete appone *the* flode happenede,  
And thus *theis* feryne folke fey are beleuede ! 3711

Thus befell the  
false fleet.

3itt es *the* traytoure one londe with tryede knyghtes,  
And alle trompede they trippe one trappede stedys,

But Modred the  
traitor has a land  
army of tried  
knights.

Schewes theme vndir schilde one *the* schire bankkes ;  
He ne schowntes for no schame, bot schewes fulle heghe !

Sir Arthure and Gawayne avyede theme bothene 3716  
To sixty thosandez of mene, *that* in theire syghte houede.

Bethis the folke was fellyde, thane was *the* flode passede ;

<sup>1</sup> Or clade.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Grifswolde.

Than was it slyke a slowde in slakkes fulle hugge,  
 That let *the kyng* for to lande, and the lawe watyre ;  
 ffor-thy he lengede one laye for lesynng of horsesys,  
 To loke of his lege mene, and of his lele knyghtes,  
 3if any ware lamede or loste, life 3ife they scholde.  
 Than *sir Gawayne* the gude a galaye he takys, 3724  
 And glides vp at a gole with gud mene of armes ;  
 Whene he growndide, for grefe he gyrdis in *the watere*,  
 That to *the girdylle* he gos in alle his gylte wedys ;  
 Schottis vpe appone *the sonde* in syghte of *the lordes*,  
 Sengly with hys soppe, my sorowe es the more !

[leaf 92, back]

With baners of his bagys beste of his armes, 3730  
 He braydes vp-on the banke in his bryghte wedys ;  
 He byddys his baneoure, “ buske *thow* be-lyfe  
 To 3one brode batayle that one 3one banke houes ;  
 And I ensure 3ow sothe I salle 3owe sewe aftyre ; 3734  
 Loke 3e blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte wapyne,  
 Bot beris downe of *the beste* and bryng theme o-dawe !  
 Bees noghte abayste of theire boste, abyde one *the erthe* ;  
 3e haue my baneres borne in batailles fulle hugge ;  
 We salle felle 3one false, *the fende* hafe theire saules !  
 ffligtes faste with *the frape*, *the felde* salle be owres ;  
 May I that traytoure ouer-take, torfere hyme tyddes,  
 That this tresone has tymbyrde to my trewe lorde !

Of siche a engendure fulle littylle joye happyns, 3743  
 And that salle in this journee be juggede fulle euene ! ”

Now they seke ouer *the sonde* this soppe at *the gayneste*,  
 Sembles one *the sowdeours*, and settys theire dyntys ;  
 Thourgh *the scheldys* so schene schalkes *they towche*,  
 With schaftes scheueride schorte of *thas schene launces* ;  
 Derfe dyntys they dalte with daggande sperys ;  
 One *the danke* of *the dewe* many dede lyggys, 3750  
 Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghtys ;  
 The doughtyeste of Danemarke vndone are for euer !  
 Thus thas renkes in rewthe rittis theire brenyes,  
 And rechis of *the richeste* vn-rekene dyntis ; 3754  
 Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to *the erthe*

Arthur waits for  
the tide to rise  
before he lands.

Sir Gawaine  
wades ashore.

He bids his  
standard-bearer  
advance against  
Modred's host.

“ We shall fell  
yon false men,  
the field shall be  
ours.”

He and his little  
band charge the  
whole army.

Of the thraeste mene thre hundrethe at ones ! 3756 They slay three hundred of the bravest.  
 Bot sir Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agayne-stande,  
 Vmbegrippys a spere, and to a gome rynnys,  
*That bare of gowles fulle gaye, with gowces of syluere ;*  
*He gyrdes hym in at the gorge with his gryme<sup>1</sup> launce,*  
*That the growndene glayfe graythes in sondyre ! 3761* Sir Gawayne kills the king of Goth-land.  
*With that boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye !*  
*The kynge of Gutlande it was, a gude mane of armes.*  
 Thayre avawwarde than alle voydes *thare-aftyre,* The vanguard of the army flies.  
*Ahs venqueste verrayely with valyant berynes ; 3765*  
 Metis with medilwarde, that Modrede ledys !  
 Oure mene merkes theme to, as theme myshappenede—  
*ffor hadle sir Gawayne hade grace to halde the grene hille,*  
*He had wirchipe i-wys wonnnene for euer ! 3769* Gawaine rashly advances against the centre, where Modred is, with the Montagus and other great lords.  
 Bot *thane sir Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym wele*  
*Towreke hyme on this werlaughe, that this werremouede ;*  
*And merkes to sir Modrede amonge alle his beryns,*  
*With the Mownttagus, and other gret lordys.*  
*Than sir Gawayne was greuede, and with a gret wylle* 3775 Gawaine puts a good spear in rest, and assails Modred with reproaches.  
*ffewters a faire spere, and freschely askryes,—*  
*“ ffals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys !*  
*fy one the, felonie, and thy false werkys !*  
*Thow sall be dede and vndone for thy derfe dedys,*  
*Or I sall dy this daye, if destanye worthe !” 3779*  
**T**han his enmye, with oste of owtlawede berynes, [leaf 93]  
*Alle enangylles abowte oure excellente knyghtez,* The host of the enemy, numbering sixty thousand men, surround Gawaine and his little band.  
*That the traytoure be tresone had tryede hym seluene ;*  
*Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes fulle sone, 3783*  
*And leders of Lettowe, with legyons inewe,*  
*Vmbylappyde oure mene with launcez fulle kene,*  
*Sowdeours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,*  
*Sexty thosande mene semlyly arrayede, 3787*  
*Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,*  
*Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strandes.*  
*Thane sir Gawayne grette with his gray eghene,* Gawaine weeps and laments for the danger of his men.  
*ffor grefe of his gud mene that he gyde schulde ; 3791*

<sup>1</sup> growne struck out, and gryme written instead.

He wyste that *thay* wondyde ware, and wery for-foughttene;

And what for wondire and woo, alle his witte faylede.

And thane syghande he saide, *with* sylande terys,—

“We are with Sarazenes be-sett appone sere halfes!

I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde ; 3796

Bot for to [see] vs supprysede, my sorowe es the more.

Bes dowghtty to-daye, ȝone dukes schalle be ȝoures!

ffor dere Dryghtyne this daye, dredys no wapyne.

We sall ende this daye ahs excellent knyghttes, 3800

Ayere to endelesse joye with angelles vnwemmyde.

*Thofe* we hafe vnwittly wastede oure selfene,

We sall wirke alle wele in *the* wirchipe of Cryste.

We sall for ȝone Sarazenes, I sekire ȝow my trowhe,

Souppre with oure Saueoure solemnly in heuene,

In presence of that precious, prynce of alle other 3806

With prophetes, and patriarkes, and apostlys fulle nobillie,

Be-fore his freliche face that fourmede vs alle!

ȝondire to ȝone ȝaldsones, he *that* ȝeldes hym euer,

Qwhyllies he es qwykke and in qwertre vnquellyde with handis,

Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socourede with Cryste,

Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke in-to heHe ! ” 3812

**T**han grymly sir Gawayne gryppis hys wapyne,

Agayne *that* gret bataille he graythes hym sone ;

Radly of his riche swerde he reghettes *the* cheynys,

In he schokkes his schelde, schountes he no lengare ;

Bot ahs vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at *the* gayneste,

Wondis of thas wedirwyns *with* wrakfull dynttys,

Alle wellys fulle of blode, thare he awaye passes ; 3819

And *thofe* hym ware fulle woo, he wondys bot lyttile,

Bot wrekys at his wirchipe *the* wrethe of hys lorde !

He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenefull knyghttes,

That sterynemene in theire sterapesstone-dede *thay* lygge !

He ryvys *the* ranke stele, he ritte *the* mayles ; 3824

Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his resone was

passede !

He comforts them with promises of blessings in heaven.

They shall sup with prophets, patriarchs, and apostles.

He that yields unslain, be he nevermore saved or socoured of Christ!

Then Gawayne grimly grips his weapon,

and rushes into the fray.

He performs mighty deeds of arms.

He felle in a fransye for fersenesse of herte, He fights like a madman.  
 He feghtis and fellis downe *that hym be-fore standis* !  
 ffelle neuer fay mane siche fortune in erthe ! 3828

In-to the hale bataile hedlyngs he rynnys,  
 And hurtes of the hardieste *that one the erthe lenges* !  
 Letande ahs a lyone, he lawnches theme thorowe,  
 Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes ! 3832 [leaf 93, back].

ȝit sir Gawayne for wo wondis bot lyttile,  
 Bot woundis of thas wedirwynes with wondirfull dyntes,  
 Alls he *that wold wilfully wastene hym selfene* ;  
 And for wondsome and wille alle his wit failede, 3836

That wode ahs a wylde beste he wente at *the gaynest* ;  
 Alle walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede ;  
 Iche a wy may be warre, be wreke of an-other ! 3839

**T**han he moues to sir Modrede amange alle his knyghtes,  
 And mett hym in *the myde schelde*, and mallis hym  
 thorowe ;

Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schowntes a littile,  
 He schare hym one *the schorte rybbys* a schaftmonde  
 large ! 3843

The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire beryne,  
*That the schadande blode ouer his schanke rynnys*,  
 And schewede one his schynbawde, *that was schire  
 burneste* ! 3846

And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to *the erthe* ;  
*With the lussche of the launce he lyghte one hysschuldrys*,  
 Ane akere lenghe one a launde, fulle lothely wondide.  
 Than Gawayne gyrde to *the gome*, and one *the groffe  
 fallis* ; 3850

Ahs his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre !  
 He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede with siluere,  
 And scholde haue slottede hym in, bot no slytte  
 happenede ;

His hand sleppid and slode o slante one *the mayles*,  
 And *the tother* sleyly slynges hym vndire : 3855

With a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes, The traitor hits him  
 MORTE ARTHURE. 8

through the  
helmet and the  
head.

Gawaine is gone,  
the good man of  
arms!

King Frederick  
asks who he was.

Modred tells  
him that he was  
Sir Gawaine the  
good, the merr-  
est, the kindest,  
and the bravest  
of knights!

The hardiest of  
hand, the hap-  
piest in arms, the  
most courteous in  
hall!

[leaf 94]

Modred weeps  
and curses his  
destiny,

Thorowe *the helme* and *the hede*, one *heyghe* one *the  
brayne* :

And thus *sir* Gawayne es gone, the gude man of armes,  
With-owtynne reschewe of renke, and rewghe es *the more* !

Thus *sir* Gawayne es gone, that gyede many othire ;  
ffro Gowere to Gernesay, alle *the gret lordys* 3861

Of Glamour, of Galys londe, *this galyarde knyghtes*,  
ffor glent of gloppynyng<sup>1</sup> glade be they *neuer* !

**K** yng ffroderike of Fres faythely *thare-aftyre*, 3864  
ffraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte ;

“ Knew thou euer this knyghte in thi kithe ryche,  
Of whate kynde he was comene? be-knowe now *the sothe* ;  
Qwat gome was he this *with the gaye armes*, 3868  
With *this gryffoune* of golde, *that es one growfle fallyne*?  
He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe !

Gyrde downe oure gude mene, and greuede vs sore !

He was *the sterynneste* in stoure that *euer* stede werryde,  
ffore he has stonayede oure stale, and stroyede for *euer* !”

Than *sir* Mordrede with mouthe melis fulle faire ; 3874

“ He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe ;  
This was *sir* Gawayne the gude, *the gladdeste* of othire,  
And the graciouseste gome that vndire God lyffede,  
Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes, 3878  
And *the* hendeste in hawle vndire heuene riche ;  
*The lordelieste* of ledynge qwhylles he lyffe myghte,  
ffore he was lyone allossenede in londes i-newe ;

Had thou knawene hym, *sir* kynge, in kythe thare he  
lengede, 3882

His konynge, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,  
His doyng, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,  
Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede *the dayes* of thy  
lyfe !”

*3it that traytour ahs tite teris lete he falle*, 3886  
Turnes hym furthe tite, and talkes no more,  
Went wepan a-waye, and weries the stowndys,

<sup>1</sup> MS. gloppynyng.

That euer his werdes ware wroghte siche wandrethe to  
wyrke : that ever he was  
fated to work  
such woe.

Whene he thoghte on *this thynge*, it thirllede his herte ;  
ffor sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys ; 3891

When *that renayede renke remembirde hym seluene*,  
Of reuerence and ryotes of *the Rownde Table*,  
He remyd and repent hym of alle his rewthe werkes, He repents of his  
Rode awaye with his rowte, ristys he no lengere, 3895  
ffor rade of oure riche kynge, ryve *that he scholde*.

Than kayres he to Cornewaile, carefulle in herte, goes into Corn-  
Be-cause of his kynsemane that one the coste ligges : wall,  
He taries tremlande ay, tydandis to herkene. 3899

Than the traytoure treuntede *the Tyseday thar-aftyre*,  
Trynnys in with a trayne tresone to wirke,  
And by *the Tambire that tide* his tentis he reris, and pitches his  
And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendes, tents by the Ta-  
And wraite vn-to Waynor how the werlde chaungede, mar,  
And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede, 3905  
One floode foughtene with his fleete, and fellyd theme  
o lyfe ; and from thence  
Bade hir ferkene oo ferre, and fflye with hir childire,  
Whills he myghte wile hym awaye, and wyne to hir  
speche, 3908  
A yere in-to Irelande, in-to *thas owte-mowntes*, bidding her fly  
And wonne thare in wildernesse with-in *tha wast landys*. into Ireland.

Than cho ȝermys and ȝee at ȝorke in hir chambire,  
Gronys fulle grysely with gretand teres, 3912  
Passes owte of *the palesse with alle hir pryce maydenys*,  
Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir *the wayes*,  
Dighte hir ewyne for to dye with dule at hir herte ;  
Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile,  
Askes thare *the habite in the honoure of Criste*,  
And alle for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde !  
Bot whene oure wiese kyng wiste *that Gawayne was*  
landede, 3919  
He al to-wrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes, Arthur is grieved

for Gawaine's  
rash landing, and  
follows him  
wading through  
the water.

He hastens to the  
field where ten  
thousand of the  
traitor's men and  
seven score of  
his own knights  
lie dead.

[leaf 94, back]

Arthur slays  
dukes and earls;

He seeks for the  
knights of the  
Round Table,

and finds Sir Ga-  
waine lying dead.

With groans and  
tears he kisses  
the body.

He bitterly la-  
ments the good  
knight.

Gers lawnche his botes appone a lawe watre,  
Londis als a lyone with lordliche knyghtes,  
Slippes in in the sloppes o-slante to *the girdylle*,  
Swalters vpe swyftly with his swerde drawene, 3924  
Bownnys his bataile and baners displayes,  
Buskes ouer *the brode sandes* with bret<sup>h</sup> at his herte,  
fferkes frekkly one felde *thare the feye lygges* ;  
Of the traytours mene one trappede stedis, 3928  
Ten thosandez ware tynte, *the trewghe to acownt*,  
And certane on owre syde seuene score knyghtes  
In soyte with their souerayne vn-sownde are beleuede !  
**T**he kynge comly ouer-keste knyghtes and othire,  
**E**rlles of Awfrike, and Estriche berynes 3933  
Of Orgaile and Orekenay, *the Iresche kynges*,  
The nobileste of Norwaye, nowmbirs fulle hugge,  
Dukes of Danamarke, and dubbid knyghtes ;  
And the guchede kynge in the gay armes 3937  
Lys gronande one *the grownnde*, and girde thoroweevene !  
The riche kynge ransakes with rewthe at his herte,  
And vp rypes the renkes of alle *the Rownde Tabylle* ;  
Ses theme alle in a soppe in sowte by theme one, 3941  
With *the Sarazenes* vn-sownde enserchede a-bowte ;  
And sir Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,  
Vmbegrippede the girse, and one grouffe fallene, 3944  
His baners braydene downe, betyne of gowlles,  
His brand and his brade schelde al blody be-rouene ;  
Was neuer oure semliche kynge so sorowfull in herte,  
Ne that sanke hym so sade, bot *that sighte one*. 3948  
**T**han gliftis *the gud kynge*, and gloypns in herte,  
**G**ronys fulle grisely with gretande teris ;  
Knelis downe to *the cors*, and caught it in armes,  
Kastys vpe his vmbre, and kyssis hym sone, 3952  
Lokes one his eye-liddis, *that lowkkide ware faire*,  
His lippis like to *the lede*, and his lire falowede !  
*Than the corownde kyng cryes fulle lowde,—*  
“ Dere kosyne o kynde, in kare am I leuede ! 3956

ffor nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide !  
 Here es *the* hope of my hele, my happyng of armes !  
 My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede !  
 My concelle, my comforthe, *that* kepide myne herte !  
 Of alle knyghtes *the* kynge *that* vndir Criste lifede,  
*Thou* was worthy to be kynge, *thofe* I *the* corowne bare !  
 My wele and my wirchipe of alle *this* werlde riche 3963  
 Was wonnene thourghe *sir* Gawayne, *and* thourghe his  
 witt one !

It was through  
his wit that all  
his conquests  
were made.

Allas ! " saide *sir* Arthure, " nowe ekys my sorowe !  
 I am vttirly vndone in myne awene landes !  
 A dowttouse derfe dede, *thou* duellis to longe ! 3967  
 Why drawes *thou* so one dreghe ? thow drownnes myne  
 herte ! "

Than swe[!]tes the swete kynge and in swoune fallis,  
 Swafres vp swiftly, and swetly hym kysses,  
 Tille his burliche berde was blody be-rowne, 3971  
 Alls he had bestes birtenede, and broghte owt of life ;  
 Ne had *sir* Ewayne comene, and othire grete lordys,  
 His bolde herte had broustene for bale at *that* stownde !

Arthur swoons  
for grief; then  
starts up and  
kisses the dead  
knight.  
His beard is  
smeared in the  
blood of Gawaine.

" **B**lyne," sais thies bolde mene, " thow blondirs *thi*  
 selfene, 3975

Sir Ewaine and  
his knights re-  
strain him.

*This* es bottes bale, for bettir bees it neuer !  
 It es no wirchipe i-wysse to wryng thyne hondes,  
 To wepe als a womane it es no witt holdene !  
 Be knyghtly of contenaunce, als a kyng scholde, 3979  
 And leue siche clamoure for Cristes lufe of heuene ! "

[leaf 95]  
He excuses him-  
self on account  
of the greatness  
of the grief.

" ffor blode," said the bolde kynge, " blyne sall I neuer,  
 Or my brayne to-briste, or my breste other !  
 Was neuer sorowe so softe that sanke to my herte,  
 Itt es fulle sibb to my selfe, my sorowe es the more !  
 Was neuer so sorowfulle as yghthe seyne with myne eyghene !  
 He es sakles suprysede for syne of myne one ! "  
 Downe knelis *the* kynge, and kryes fulle lowde ; 3987  
 With carefull contenaunce he karpes thes wordes,—  
 " O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe thow be-holde !

*This ryalle rede blode ryne appone erthe ;  
It ware worthy to be schrede and schrynede in golde,  
ffor it es sakles of syne, sa helpe me oure Lorde !*" 3992

He collects Gawaine's blood in a helmet,  
Downe knelis *the kyng with kare at his herte,*  
Kaughte it vpe kyndly *with his clene handis,*  
Keste it in a ketille-hatte, and couerde it faire, 3995  
And kayres furthe *with the cors in kyghte thare he lenges.*

"**H**ere I make myn avowe," *quod the kynge thane,*  
"To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwenne of  
heuene,

*I sall neuer ryvaye, ne racches vn-cowpylle  
At roo ne rayne-dere, that rynnes apponne erthe ;* 4000  
Neuer grewhownde late glyde, ne gossehawke latt flye,  
Ne neuer fowle see fellide, *that flieghes with wenge ;*  
ffawkone ne formaylle appone fiste handille,  
Ne ȝitt with gerefawcone rejoysse me in erthe ; 4004  
Ne regnne in my royaltez, ne halde my Rownde Table,  
Tille thi dede, my dere, be dewly reuengede !  
Bot euer droupe and dare, qwylls my lyfe lastez,  
Tille Drightone and derfe dede hafe done qwate theme  
likes !"

4008  
Than kaughte they vpe *the cors with kare at theire hertes,*  
Karyed [it] one a coursere with *the kynge selfene ;*  
The waye vn-to Wynchestr *thay wente at the gayneste,*  
Wery and wandsomdly, *with wondide knyghtes ;* 4012  
Thare come *the prior of the plas, and professide monnkes,*

*Apas in processione, and with the prynce metys ;*  
And he be-tuke *thame the cors of the knyghte noble.*  
"Lokis it be clenly kepyd," he said, "and in *the kirke*  
holdene,

4016  
*Done for derygese, as to the ded fallys,*  
*Menskede with messes, for mede of the saule :*  
*Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,*  
*And at the body be bawmede, and one erthe holdene,*  
*ȝiff thou kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe* 4021  
*At my comyng a-gayne, ȝif Crist wille it thole ;*

and carries away  
his body.

Then he makes a  
solemn vow that  
he will take no  
pleasure in the  
chase till Ga-  
waine be  
avenged.

The body was  
sent straight to  
Winchester,

and met by a pro-  
cession of monks.

Arthur gives or-  
ders that all hon-  
our should be  
paid to the dead.

A-byde of *the beryenge* tille they be broughte vndire,  
That has wroghte vs this woo, and *this werre mouede.*"

**T**han sais sir Wychere *the wy*, a wyese mane of armes,  
"I rede *ȝe* warely wende, and wirkes the beste ;  
Soiorne in *this ceté*, and semble thi berynes, 4027

And bidde *with* thi bolde mene in thi burghe riche :  
Get owt knyghtez of contres, that castelles holdes,  
And owt of garysons grete gude mene of armes,  
ffor we are faithely to fewe to feghte *with* theme alle,  
*That we see in his sorte appone the see bankes.*" 4032

With krewelle contenance thane the kyng karpis theis  
wordes,—

"I praye the kare noghte, *sir knyghte*, ne caste *thou no* dredis !

Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone, 4035  
And I may hym see *with* sighte, or one hym sette hondis,  
I salle evene amange his mene malle hym to dede,  
Are I of *the stede* styre halfe a stede lenghe !

I salle [stryke] hym in hisstowre, and stroye hymeforauer,  
And *thare-to* make I myne avowe devoutly to Cryste,  
And to hys modyre Marie, *the mylde* qwene of heuene !

I salle neuer soiourne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte,  
In *ceté* ne in subarbe sette appone erthe, 4043

Ne ȝitt slomyre ne slepe *with* my slawe eyghne,  
Tille he be slayne *that* hym slowghe, ȝif any sleyghte  
happene :

Bot euer pursue the payganys *that* my pople distroyede,  
Qwylls I may pare theme and pynne, in place *thare me*  
likes." 4047

Thare durste no renke hym areste of alle *the Rownde Table*,  
Ne none paye *that* prynce *with* plesande wordes,

Ne none of his lige mene luke hym in the eyghne,  
So lordely he lukes for losse of his knyghttes ! 4051

Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,  
Derefulle dredlesse *with* drowppande teris ;  
Kayeris in-to Korneawayle *with* kare at his herte,

Sir Wycher ad-  
vises that he  
should stay in  
Winchester and  
rally his forces.

Arthur declares  
that though he be  
alone, if he may  
see Modred he  
will mall him to  
death among all  
his men.

He will never  
sojourn in city  
or town till Mc-  
dred be slain.

None of his liege  
men dare look  
him in the eyes.

Arthur follows  
Modred into  
Cornwall and at-  
tacks him.

A vast host of  
aliens assault Ar-  
thur's men.

There were sixty  
thousand against  
eighteen hun-  
dred.

Arthur on a  
charger arranges  
his men.

He beseeches  
them to do well  
that day and not  
to fear.

[leaf 96]

The trays of *the traytoure* he trynys fulle euenne ; 4055  
And turnys in be *the Treyntis* *the traytoure* to seche,  
ffyndis hym in a foreste *the Frydaye* there-aftire ;  
The kyng lyghttes one fott, and freschely askryes,  
And with his freliche folke he has *the felde nommene* !  
**N**ow isschewis his enmye vndire *the wode* eynys,  
With ostes of alynes fulle horrebille to schewe !  
Sir Mordrede the Malebranche, with his myche pople,  
ffoundes owt of the foreste appone fele halves, 4063  
In seuene grett batailles semliche arrayede,  
Sexty thowsande mene, the syghte was fulle hugge,  
Alle fyghtande folke of *the ferre lanndes*,  
ffaire fettede one frownte be tha fresche strondes !  
And alle Arthurs oste was amede with knyghtes 4068  
Bot awghtene hundrethe of alle, entrede in rolles ;  
This was a mache vn-mete, bot myghtis of Criste,  
To melle with *that* multitude in *thase* man londis.  
Than the royalle roy of *the Rownde Table* 4072  
Rydes one a riche stede, arrayes his beryns,  
Buskes his avawmwarde, als hym beste likes ;  
Sir Ewayne, and sir Errake, and othire gret lordes,  
Demenys the medilwarde menskefully thare-aftyre,  
With Merrake and Meneduke,<sup>1</sup> myghty of strenghes ;  
Idirous and Alymere, *thire* auenaunt childrene,  
Ayers with Arthure, with seuene score of knyghtes ;  
He rewlis *the rerewarde* redyly thare-aftyre, 4080  
The rekeneste redy mene of *the Rownde Table*,  
And thus he fittis his folke, and freschely askryes,  
And syene comforthes his mene with knyghtlyche  
wordes—  
“ I be-seke ȝow, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde, 4084  
That ȝe doo wele to-daye, and dredis no wapene !  
ffighttes fersely nowe, and fendis ȝoure seluene,  
ffellis downe ȝone feye folke, the felde sall be owr !  
They are Sarazenes ȝone sorte, vn-sownde motte they  
worthe ! 4088

<sup>1</sup> Or Menyduke.

Sett one theme sadlye, for sake of oure Lorde !  
 3if vs be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,  
 We sall be hewede vn-to heuene, or we be halfe colde !

If they are slain  
 they will be taken  
 straight up to  
 heaven.

Loke 3e lett for no lede lordly to wirche ; 4092  
 Layes 3one laddes lowe be the layke ende !  
 Take no tente vn-to me, ne tale of me rekke,  
 Bes besy one my baners with 3oure brighte wapyns,  
 That they be strenghely stufedde with steryne knyghtes,  
 And holdene lordly one lofte ledys to schewe ; 4097  
 3if any renke theme arase, reschowe theme sone.

Wirkes now my wirchipe, to-daye my werre endys !  
 3e wotte my wele and my woo, wirkkys as 3ow likys !  
 Crist comly with crowne) comforthe 3ow alle, 4101  
 ffor the kyndeste creatours that euer kynge ledde !

I gyffe 3ow alle my blyssyng with a blithe wille,  
 And alle Bretowns bolde, blythe mote 3e worthe !”

To-day his war  
 ends !

He gives them  
 his parting bless-  
 ing.

They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approches theme nere,  
 Pris mene and priste proues theire strenghes ;  
 Bremlly the brethemen bragges in troumpes, 4107  
 In cornettes comlyly, whene knyghtes assembles,  
 And thane jolyly enjoynys theis jentylle knyghtes ;  
 A jolyere journé ajuggede was neuer,  
 Whene Bretones boldly embraces theire scheldes, 4111  
 And Cristyne encroyssede theme, and castis in fewtire !

The Britons at-  
 tack the enemy,  
 without delay.

**T**han sir Arthure oste his enmye askryes,  
 And in they schokke theire scheldes, schontes no  
 lengare ;  
 Schotte to the schiltronnes, and schowttes fulle heghe,  
 Thorowe scheldis fulle schene schalkes they touche !  
 Redily thus rydde mene of the Rownde Table 4117  
 With ryalle rannke stele rittys theire mayles ;  
 Bryneys browddene they briste, and burneste helmys,  
 Hewes haythene mene downe, halses in sondre !  
 ffyghtande with fyne stele, the feye blod rynnys, 4121  
 Of the frekkestes of frounte, vn-fers ere be-levede.  
 Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges  
 Enverounes oure avawmwarde with venymmos berynes ; The vanguard is

surrounded by  
the enemy, and  
many of them  
slain.

Peghttes and paynymes with perilous wapyns, 4125  
With speres disspetously disspoylles oure knyghttes,  
And hewede downe the hendeste with hertly dynntys !  
Thorow the holle batayle they holdene theire wayes ;  
Thus fersly they fyghte appone sere halfes, 4129  
That of the bolde Bretones myche blode spillis  
Thare durste non rescowe theme, for reches in erthe,  
The steryne ware thare so stedde, and stuffede wit[h] othire :  
He durste noghte stire a steppe, bot stodde for hym  
seluene, 4133  
Tille thre stalis ware stroyede be strenghe of hym one !  
“Idrous,” quod Arthure, “ayre the by-houes !  
I see sir Ewayne ouer-sette with Sarazenes kene ! 4136  
Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone !  
Hye the with hardy mene in helpe of thy ffadire !  
Sett in one the syde, and socoure ȝone lordes ;  
Bot they be socourrede and sownde, vnsawghte be I  
neuer !” 4140  
Idrous hyme ansuers ernestly thare-aftyre,—  
“He es my fadire in faithe, for-sake sallē I neuer,  
He has me fosterde and fedde, and my faire bretherene,  
Bot I for-sake this gate, so me Gode helpe, 4144  
And sothely alle sybredyne bot thy selfe one ;  
I breke neuer his biddynge for beryne one lyfe,  
Bot euer bouxvme as beste blethely to wyrke !  
He commande me kyndly, with knyghtly wordes, 4148  
That I schulde lelely one the lenge, and one noo lede elles ;  
I sallē hys commandement holde, ȝif Criste wil me thole !  
He es eldare thane I, and ende sallē we bothene ;  
He sallē ferke be-fore, and I sallē come aftyre : 4152  
ȝiffe hymē be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,  
Criste comly with crowne take kepe to hys saule !”

**T**han remys the riche kynge with rewthe at his herte,  
Hewys hys handys one heghte, and to the heuene  
lokes,— 4156  
“Qwythene hade Dryghtyne destaynedeat his dere wille,

“If he be destined  
to die, Christ  
keep his soul !”

That he hadde demyd me to-daye to dy for 30w alle !  
 That had I leuer than be lorde alle my lyfe tyme, 4159  
 Off alle that Alexandere aughte qwhilles he in erthe  
 lengede."

Arthur wishes  
that he might die  
instead of his  
knights.

Sir Ewayne and sir Errake, *thes excellente beryns*,  
 Enters in one *the oste*, and egerly strykes ; 4162  
 The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irische kynges,  
*Thay gobone of the gretteste with growndene swerde*,  
*Hewes one thas hulkes with theire harde wapyns*,  
*Layed downe thas ledes with lothely dynntys* ; 4166  
*Schuldirs and scheldys thay schrede to the hawnches*,  
*And medilles thourghe mayles thay merkene in sondire* !  
*Siche honoure neuer aughte none erthely kyng*  
*At theire endyng daye, bot Arthure hym seluene* !

Sir Ewaine and  
Sir Errak per-  
form great deeds  
of valour before  
they are over-  
powered and  
slain.

So *the droughte of the daye dryede theire hertes*, 4171  
*That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was the more* !  
*Now mellys oure medille-warde, and mengene to-gedire*.  
 Sir Mordred *the Malebranche with his myche pople*,  
*He had hide hym be-hynde with-in thas holte eynys*,  
*With halle bataile one hethe, harme es the more* ! 4176  
*He hade sene the conteke al clene to the ende*,  
*How oure cheualrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes* !  
*He wiste oure folke was for-foughtene, that thare was*  
*feye leuede* ;

The centre of Ar-  
thur's army en-  
gages.  
Sir Modred has  
been watching  
the battle, and  
preparing to at-  
tack the king.

To encowntere *the kyng he castes hym sone*, 4180  
*Bot the churles chekyne hade chaungyde his armes* ;  
*He had sothely for-sakene the sawturore engrelede*,  
*And laughte vpe thre lyons alle of whitte siluyre*,  
*Passande in purpre of perrie fulle riche*, 4184  
*ffor the kyng sulde noghte knawe the cawtelous wriche* !  
*Be-cause of his cowardys he keste of his atyre* ;  
*Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym fulle swythe*,  
*Karpis to sir Cadors *thes kyndly wordez*,— 4188*  
*"I see the traytoure come 30ndyr trynande fulle 3erne* ;  
*3one ladde with the lyones es like to hym selfene* !  
*Hym sall torfere be-tyde, may I touche ones*, 4191

But first he  
changes his arms  
to conceal him-  
self.

[leaf 97]  
But Arthur knows  
him at once, and  
points him out  
to Sir Cador.

The two famous  
swords, Clarent  
and Caliburn,  
shall this day be  
tryed one against  
the other.

ffor alle his tresone and trayne, als I am trew lorde !  
To-day Clarente and Caliburne sall kythe theme to gedirs,  
Whilke es kenere of kerfe, or hardare of eghge !

ffraiste salle we fyne stele appone fyne wedis. 4195

Itt was my derlynge daynteuos, and fulle dere holdene,  
Kepede fore encorownmentes of kynges enoynttede,  
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erles ;  
It was burliche borne be *the* bryghte hiltes ;  
I durste neuer dere it in dedis of armes, 4200  
Bot euer kepide clene, be-cause of my seluene.

ffor I see Clarent vn-clede, *that* crowne es of swerdes,  
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede ;  
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluene, 4204  
Scho hade *the* kepynge hir selfe of *that* kydde wapyne,  
Off cofres enclosede *that* to *the* crowne lengede,  
With rynges and relikkes, and *the* regale of ffraunce,  
That was ffowndene one *sir* ffrolle, whene he was feye  
leuyde." 4208

Sir Marrik fights  
with Modred  
and is forced to  
withdraw,

Than *sir* Marrike in malyncly metys hym sone,  
With a mellyd mace myghtly hym strykes ;  
The bordoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,  
*That the* schire rede blode ouer his brene rynnys ! 4212  
The beryne blenkes for bale, and alle his ble chaunges,  
Bot ȝitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes !  
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als euer ony syluer,  
*That was* *sir* Arthure awene, and Vtere his fadirs, 4216  
In the wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede ;  
*Thare-with the* derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,  
*The tother with-drewe* one drege and durste do none  
other ;

for Sir Marrik  
was marred with  
old age.

ffor *sir* Marrake was mane merrede in elde, 4220  
And *sir* Mordred was myghty, and [in] his moste  
strengthis ;

Come none with-in the compas, knyghte ne none other,  
With-in the swyng of swerde, *that* ne he *the* swete leuyd.  
*That persayfes* oure prynce, and presses to faste, 4224

Strykes in-to the stowre by strenghe of hys handis ; Arthur forces his way to Modred,  
 Metis with sir Mordred, he melis vn-faire,—

“ Turne, traytoure vntrewe, *the* tydys no bettyre ; 4227 and upbraids him.  
 Be gret Gode, thow sall dy with dynt of my handys !

The schalle rescowe no renke ne reches in erthe !”

The kyng with Calaburne knyghtly hym strykes, Then he strikes him with Cali-  
 The cantelle of the clere schelde he kerfes in sondyre, burn and cuts through his  
 In-to the schuldyre of the schalke a schaftmonde large, shield and into the shoulder.  
 That the schire rede blode schwede one the maylys !

He schodirde and schrenkys, and schontes bott lyttile, [leaf 97, back]  
 Bott schokkes in scharpely in his schene wedys ; 4235 Modred, though wounded, strikes Arthur and gives him a terrible wound in the side.

The ffelonne with the ffyne swerde freschely he strykes, The ffelettes of the fferre syde he flassches in sondyre,  
 Thorowe jopowne and jesserawnte of gentille mailes !

The freke fichede in the flesche an halfe fotte large ; That derfe dynt was his dede, and dole was the more  
 That euer that doughty sulde dy, bot at Dryghtyns  
 wylle ! 4241

3itt with Calyburne his swerde, fulle knyghtly he Arthur with Cali-  
 strykes, burn cuts off the sword-hand of Modred,

Kastes ine his clere schelde, and coueres hym fulle faire ; Swappes of the swerde hande, als he by glentes, 4244  
 Ane inche fro the elbowe, he ochede it in sondyre,  
 That he swounnes one the swarthe,<sup>1</sup> and one swym fallis ; Thorowe bracer<sup>2</sup> of browne stele, and the bryghte mayles,  
 That the hilte and the hande appone the hethe ligges !

Thane frescheliche the freke the ffente vpe rererys, Brochis hym in with the bronde to the bryghte hiltys, and pierces him with his sword.  
 And he brawles one the bronde, and bownes to dye.

“ In faye,” says the feye kynge, “ sore me for-thynkkes That euer siche a false theefe so faire an ende haues.” Arthur declares that his end is too good for him.

Qwene they had ffenyste this feghte, thane was the felde  
 wonnene, 4254  
 And the false folke in the felde feye are by-leuede !

Tille a fforeste they fledde, and felle in the greuys,

<sup>1</sup> MS. swrathe.<sup>2</sup> MS. brater.

Modred's men  
are defeated and  
pursued.

And fers feghtande folke folowes theme aftyre ;  
Howntes and hewes downe the heythene tykes,  
Mourtherys in the mowntaygnes *sir* Mordrede knyghtes ;  
Thare chapyde neuer no childe, cheftayne ne other,  
Bot choppes theme downe in the chace, it chargys bot  
littylle !

4261

Arthur finds the  
dead bodies of his  
knights.

**B**ot whene *sir* Arthure anone *sir* Ewayne he fyndys,  
And Errake *the auenaunt*, and *other* grett lordes,  
He kawghte vp *sir* Cador with care at his herte,  
Sir Clegis, *sir* Cleremonde, *thes* clere mene of armes,  
Sir Lothe, and *sir* Lyonelle, *sir* Lawncelott, and Lowes,  
Marrake and Meneduke, *that* myghty ware euer ; 4267  
With langoure in the launde thare he layes theme to-  
gedire,

Lokede one theyre lighames, and with a lowde steuene,  
Ahs lede *that* liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis ;  
Than he stotays for made, and alle his strenghe faylez,  
Lokes vpe to *the* lyfte, and alle his lyre chaunges, 4272  
Downne he sweys fulle swythe, and in a swoune fallys,  
Vpe he coueris one kneys, and kryes fulle oftene,—

He swoons for  
sorrow,

and bitterly  
grieves over his  
knights.

“ Kyng comly with crowne, in care am I leuyde !  
Alle my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre ! 4276  
That me has gyfene gwerdones, be grace of hym seluene,  
Mayntenyde my manhede be myghte of theire handes,  
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe ;

In a tenefull tyme this torfere was rereryde, 4280  
That for a traytoure has tynte alle my trewe lordys !  
Here rystys the riche blude of the Rownde Table,

[leaf 98]

Rebukkede with a rebawde, and rewthe es the more !  
I may helples one hethe house be myne one, 4284  
Ahs a wafulle wedowe *that* wanttes hir beryne !

Now he may  
weep and wring  
his hands, for his  
worship is gone  
for ever.

I may werye and wepe, and wryng myne handys,  
ffor my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for euer !  
Off alle lordchips I take leue to myne ende ! 4288  
Here es *the* Bretones blode broughte owt of lyfe,  
And nowe in *this* journee alle my joy endys !”

Thane relies *the renkes* of alle *the Rownde Table*,

To *the ryalle roy* thay ride *tham alle* ;

Than assembles fulle sonne seuene score knyghtes,

In sighte to *thaire souerayne*, *that was vnsownde leuede* ;

Than knelis the crownede kynge, and kryes one lowde,—

“ I thanke *the*, Gode, of thy grace, with a gud wylle ;

That gafe vs vertue and witt to vencows *this beryns* ;

And vs has grauntede *the gree* of theis gret lordes !

He sent vs neuer no schame, ne schenchiipe in erthe,

Bot euer *ȝit the ouer-hande* of alle *other kynges* : 4300

We hafe no laysere now *these lordys* to seke,

ffor *ȝone laythely* ladde me lamede so sore !

Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes none *other* ;

Thare we may ryste vs with roo, and raunsake oure wondys.

Of *this dere day* werke, *the Dryghtene* be louede, 4305

That vs has destaynede and demyd to dye in oure awene.”

Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,

And graythes to Glasschenbery *the gate* at *the gaynest* ;

Entres *the Ile* of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes,

Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire :

A surgyne <sup>1</sup> of Salerne enserches his wondes, 4311

The kyng sees be asaye *that sownde* bese he neuer,

And sone to his sekire mene he said theis wordes,—

“ Doo calle me a confessour, with Criste in his armes ;

I wille be howselde in haste, whate happe so be-tyddys ;

Constantyne my cosyne he sallie the corowne bere, 4316

Ahs be-commys hym of kynde, ȝife Cristewille hym thole !

Beryne, fore my benysone, thowe berye *ȝone* lordys,

That in baytaille with brondez are broghte owte of lyfe ;

And sythene merke manly to Mordredre childrene, 4320

That they bee sleyghely slayne, and slongene in watyrs ;

Latt no wykkyde wede waxe, ne wrythe one this erthe ;

I warne fore thy wirchiipe, wirke ahs I bydde !

I fore-gyffe alle greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuene ! 4324

ȝife Waynor hafe wele wroghte, wele hir be-tydde !”

4292 The remnants of  
his men rally  
round him.

He thanks God  
for the victory,  
and all the glory  
which he and his  
knights had won.

He desires to be  
taken to Glaston-  
bury.

He enters the  
Isle of Avelon  
and is taken to a  
manor there; for  
he could go no  
further. A sur-  
geon examines  
his wounds.

Arthur sends for  
a confessor.

He appoints Con-  
stantine, his  
kinsman, his heir.

He orders Mo-  
dred's children to  
be slain, and  
slung in waters.

“ If Guinever  
have well  
wrought, well her  
betide.”

<sup>1</sup> MS. susgyne.

Then he says "In manus," and his spirit passes away.

[leaf 98, back]

The barons of Britain bury Arthur at Glastonbury.

Great mourning was made at his funeral.

This was the end of Arthur of the blood of Hector and of Priamus of Troy.

He saide *In manus* with mayne one molde whare he ligges,  
And thus passes his speryt, and spekes he no more !  
The baronage of Bretayne thane, bechopes and othire,  
Graythes theme to Glaschenbery with gloppynnande  
hertes,  
To bery thare the bolde kynge, and brynge to *the erthe*,  
With alle wirchipe and welthe *that* any wy scholde.  
Throly belles thay ryng, and *Requiem* syngys, 4332  
Dosse messes and matyns with mournande notes :  
Relygeous reueste in theire riche copes,  
Pontyficalles and prelates in precyouse wedys,  
Dukes and dusszeperis in theire dule-cotes, 4336  
Cowntasses knelande and claspande theire handes,  
Ladys languessande and lowrande to schewe ;  
Alle was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,  
That schewede at the sepulture, with sylande teris ;  
Whas neuer so sorowfulle a syghte seene in theire tyme !  
Thus endis kyng Arthur, as auctors alegges, 4342  
That was of Ectores blude, the kynge sone of Troye,  
And of *sir* Pryamous, the prynce, praysede in erthe ;  
ffro thethene<sup>1</sup> broghte the Bretons alle his bolde eldyrs  
In-to Bretayne the brode, as *the Bruytte* tellys. 4346  
et c'. explicit.

*Hic jacet Arthurus, rex quondam rex que futurus.*

Here endes *Morte Arthur*, writene by Robert of Thorntone.

*R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen!*

<sup>1</sup> *Or* thythene.

## INDEX OF NAMES.

Absolone, 2868.  
 Achinour, 1824.  
 Acres, 903, *Acre*.  
 Affrike, 574, Affryke, 1869, Au-  
     frike, 2607, Awfrike, 3933, *Africa*.  
 Akyne, 496, *Aix-la-Chapelle*.  
 Aladuke, 1739, Alidoyke of  
     Towelle, 1916, Alyduke, 1824.  
 Alexander, 2634, Alexandere,  
     3408, 4160, Alexandire, 2602,  
     *Alexander*.  
 Alexandere, 2607, Alysaundyre,  
     572, *Alexandria*.  
 Algere, 2837, 2847.  
 Alidoyke. *See* Aladuke.  
 Almaygne, 3596, Almayne, 45,  
     496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210, *Ger-  
     many*.  
 Alyduke. *See* Aladuke.  
 Alymere, 4078.  
 Alysaundyre. *See* Alexandere.  
 Amazonnes, 584.  
 Ambyganye, 572.  
 Antele, 2829, 2837.  
 Anyone, 42, *Aniane (in France)*.  
 Araby, 1175, Arraby, 576, *Ara-  
     bia*.  
 Argayle, 4123, *Argyle*.  
 Arthur, 26, 496, Arthure, 172,  
     288, 305, 470, &c.  
 Askanere, 1739.  
 Asye, 574, *Asia*.  
 Aueloyne, Ile of, 4309, *Isle of  
     Avelon*.  
 Aufrike. *See* Affrike.  
 Aungers, 288.  
 Awguste, 1967, *Augsburg*. Lat.  
     *Augusta Vindelicorum*.  
 Babyloyne, 586, *Babylon*.  
 Baldake, 586, *Bagdad*.  
 Bareflete, 629, 1182, 1223, Bar-  
     flete, 835, *Barfleur*. Lat. *Baro-  
     fluctum*.  
 Barouns, 1908.  
 Basille, 907.  
 Bawdewyne, 277, Bawdwyne,  
     1606, 2384.  
 Bayone, 38, 2379, *Bayonne*.  
 Bayous, 587.  
 Bedvere, 893, 1170, Bedwar,  
     2384, Bedwere, 1162, 1264, 1606,  
     1744, 2238, 2379.  
 Bedwyne, 1408. Probably a  
     mistake for *Bedwere*.  
 Belyne, 277.  
 Berade, 2384.  
 Berelle, 1605, 1775, 1914,  
     Berille, 1264, 1771, Berylle,  
     1433.  
 Bernarde, Mounte, 566.  
 Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456,

Boyce, 1483, 1485, 1605, Boys, 1378.

Borghete, 1698. A mistake for *Brut*.

Boyce, Boys. *See* Boice.

Brabane, 36, *Brabant*.

Bremyne, 277.

Bretayne, 2095, 2330, 2362, &c., Bretaynne, 3519, Bretayne the brade, 106, B. the brode, 3579, 4346, B. the braddere, 55, 1699, B. the more, 1018, *Britain*.

Bretayne, 852, B. the lesse, 36, B. the lyttylle, 304, *Brittany*.

Bretones, 1011, 1484, 1617, 4111, Bretons, 1403, 1407, Bretouns, 1348, Bretowns, 4104, *Britons*. Bretowne, *sg.*, 3508.

Brut, 1695, *Brutus*.

Bruytte, the, 4346, *the Brut*.

Bryane, 1606.

Burdeux, 38, *Bordeaux*.

Burgoyne, 36, 1018, 1241, 2383, *Burgundy*.

Cador, 247, 1718, 1724, 1777, &c., Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707, Cadors, 4188, Cadour, 259.

Caerlyone, 61, Karelyone, 3916, Karlyone, 3512, *Caerleon*.

Calaburne, 4230, Caliburne, 4193, Calyburne, 4242, *Caliburn*, Arthur's sword.

Came, 2380, 2385.

Capados, 580, *Cappadocia*.

Capatoylle, the, 2353, Capitoile, 280, Capyoile, 96, *the Capitol*.

Cardyfe, 2498, *Cardiff*.

Carelele, 480, 839, Carlelele, 64, 476, *Carlisle*.

Castelle Blanke, 1225.

Catrike, 482.

Cayme, 1311, *Cain*.

Cayous, 156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997, Kayous, 1152, 1194, 2157, &c., *Kay*, Arthur's chief butler.

Chartris, 1619, *Chartres*.

Chastelayne, 2952, Chasteleyne, 3028.

Cheldrike, 2954.

Chestyre, 3914, *Chester*.

Childrike, 3537.

Christofre, 2390.

Clarent, 4202, Clarente, 4193, Arthur's best sword.

Clarybalde, 2497.

Clarymownde, 2497. *See* Cleremonde.

Clegis, 1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, &c., Clegys, 1692, 3635.

Clemente, 1828.

Cleremonde, 1603, 4265, Cleremownde, 3635, Cleremownnde, 1638.

Cleremus, 1603, 1638.

Clowdmur, 1604.

Clyme, the close of, 1639.

Collbrande, 2123, 2201, one of Arthur's swords, perhaps = *Caliburn*.

Colome, 623.

Combe, 3110, 3128, 3149, *Como*.

Constantyne, 282, an emperour of Rome

Constantyne, 4316, Arthur's heir.

Constantyne, 628, 848, Costantyne, 2373 Constantyne landez, 1187.

Cordewa, 1866, *Cordova*.

Cornett, 600, Cornette, 1909, *Corneto*.

Cornewaile, 1848, 2002, 2262, 3897, Cornewale, 1791, Cornewalle, 1637, Cornewayle, 247, 1777, Korneawayle, 4054, *Cornwall*.

Craddoke, 3511, 3517, Cradoke, 3487.

Crasyne, countas of, 3045.  
 Creette, 200, Crete, 204, 580.  
 Crist, 136, 467, 482, &c., Criste, 227, 285, 296, &c., Cryste, 257, 308, 346, &c., *Christ*.  
 Cyrus. *See* Cirquytrie in Glossary.  
 Cyprys, 596, *Cyprus*.

Damaske, 578, *Damascus*.  
 Damyat, 578, *Damietta*.  
 Danamarke, 3936, Danemarke, 3752, 3783, Danmarke, 46, *Denmark*.  
 Danamarkes, 3610, Danmarkes, 3528, *Danes*.  
 Danes, 3694.  
 Danuby, 622, *the Danube*.  
 Dauid, 3416.  
 Dolfinede, 2653, *Dauphiné* (?).  
 Dolfyne, 3023, Dolphyne, 2970.  
 Dorsett, 4052.  
 Douere, 3066.  
 Duche-men, 1251, Duche-mene, 2030, 2101, 2653, 2834, *Germans*.  
 Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343, *Hector*.  
 Egipit, 576, 2200.  
 Elamet, 575.  
 Ermonye, 573, *Armenia*. *See* *The Romans of Partenay*, ll. 1637, 5321, 5372, &c.; where it is spelt *Hermenye*.  
 Ermyngalle, 1825.  
 Errake, 4075, 4161, 4263.  
 Eruge, 42.  
 Esexe, 1740, *Essex*.  
 Estriche, 45, 3933, *Austria*.  
 Ewandre, 1868, Ewandyre, 1622, Ewaynedyre, 1904.  
 Ewayne, 357, 1572, 3973, 4075, &c., Ewayne fytz Henry, 1558, Ewane fytz Vryence, 337, Ewayne fytz Vriene, 2066.  
 Ewfrates, 573, *Euphrates*.  
 Ewrope, 574.  
 Famacoste, 2761, *Famagosta* in Cyprus. *See* *The Romans of Partenay*, l. 1299, and Mr Skeat's note thereon.  
 Federike, 2899.  
 Feltemour, 1382.  
 Feraunt, 2760, 2765, Ferawnt, 3404, Ferawnte, 2421.  
 Ferrer, 2421, Ferrere, 2432.  
 ff. Names beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F*.  
 Flaundres, 495, Flaundrez, 34, 494, Flawndresche, 3597, *Flanders*.  
 Florent, 2735, 2762, 2764, 2797, &c., Florente, 2483, 2729.  
 Florent, 2232, Lucius's sword.  
 Floridas, 2755, 2778, 2780, 2803, 3018, 3112, Florydas, 2490.  
 Forawnt, 2490. *Read* *Feraunt*.  
 France, 2365, Fraunce, 34, 110, 367, 435, &c.  
 Fraunche-mene, 2484, *French-men*.  
 Fres, 3864.  
 Freselannd, 110, Friselande, 367, Fryselande, 2765, *Friesland*.  
 Froderike, 3864.  
 Froille, 3404, Frolle, 3345, 4208, *Frollo*.  
 Fryselande. *See* Freselannd.  
 Galelé, 592, *Galilee*.  
 Galuthī, 1387, 1470, 3709, Galuthē, 2558, *Gawayne's sword*.  
 Galyrane, 3636.  
 Galys londe, 3862, *Wales*.  
 Garyere, 592.  
 Gawaync, 1265, 1352, 1368, 2218,

&c. Gawaynne, 2979, 3860, Gawayne, 1468, Gaywayne, 233, Wawayne, 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953, Arthur's nephew.

Gaynour, 84, 705, Waynor, 3904, 4204, 4325, Waynore, 3550, 3575, Waynour, 233, 652, 657, 697, Arthur's wife.

Gayous, 1346, 1385, uncle of Lucius.

Geene, 559, 843, 863, Genne, 2897, Iene, 2889, 2909, *Genoa*.

Gerarde, 2896.

Gernaide, 2943, *Granada*.

Gernesay, 3861, *Guernsey*.

Gerone, 863.

Geryne, 3708.

Glamorgane, 59.

Glamour, 3862.

Glaschenbery, 4303, 4329, Glas-schenberye, 4308, *Glastonbury*.

Godarde, 562, 2655, Goddarde, 3104, Mount Goddarde, 497, *Mount St Gothard*.

Godfraye, 3430.

Golapas, 2124.

Golyas, 3419, *Goliath*.

Gothelande, 37, Gutlande, 3763.

Gowere, 3861.

Grece, 37, 1000, Greke, 1463, *Greece*.

Grekkes See, 594, the eastern part of the Mediterranean.

Grisswolde, 3708.

Gryme, 1265.

Gutlande. See Gothelande.

Gyane, 37, *Guienne*.

Hamptone, 3031, *Southampton*.

Hardelfe, 1741, Hardolfe, 2974, 3583.

Hawyke, 3541.

Henawde, 35, *Hainault*.

Henguste, 3545, *Hengist*.

Herygalle, 1742.

Herylle, 1742.

Hillary, 625.

Holaund, 35, *Holland*.

Hors, 3545, *Horsa*.

Howelle, 1180, 1741, 3583.

Humbyre, 3541.

Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039, *Jaffa, the ancient Joppa*.

Idirous, 4078, Idrous, 4135, 4141. Idrus, 1439, 1510, Idrus sitz Ewayne, 1490, 1498.

Iene. See Geene.

Ienitalle, 2112.

Ierante, 2890.

Ierusalem, 3415, 3433.

Iewe, 2895.

Ihesu, 863, *Jesus*.

Inde, 573, *India*.

Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685, Yuglande, 283, 710, 724.

Ioatalle, 2877.

Iolyan, 2889.

Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905.

Iosephate, vale of, 2876.

Iosue, 2605, 3414, *Joshua*.

Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909.

Irritayne, 575.

Iudas, 2605, 3412, *Judas Macca-beus*.

Iulius Cesar, 115, Iulyus Cesare, 3410.

Iulyus, 2877.

Karelyone, Karlyone. See Caer-lyone.

Karolus, 3423, *Charlemagne*.

Kayne, 2380, a mistake for

*Kayous*, caused by the word *Bayone* in the line before.

Kayous. *See* Cayous.

Kentt, 3542.

Kornewayle. *See* Cornewaile.

Lancelott, 1720, Launcelot, 2073, Launcelott, 368, Launcelotte, 1999, Lawncelot de Lake, 3638, Lawnce-lott, 4266.

Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817, 1827, 1900.

Leo, 1971.

Lettow, 605, Lettowe, 2167, 3784, *Lithuania*.

Lewlyne, 1826.

Londone, 2418.

Lorayne, 350, 1460, 2398, &c. Lorryne, 429, 2418, 2531, &c.

Lothī, 2081, 3637, Lothe, 4266, Lott, 1999.

Lottez, 382.

Lowelle, 1516.

Lowes, 4266.

Lucerne, 3094.

Lucius, 128, 251, 383, &c. Lucciūs, 23, Lucius Iberius, 86.

Lumbarddye, 3108, 3594, Lumbardye, 2406, 2654, 2997, 3585, Lumberddye, 498, Lumberdye, 135, 350, 429, 1972, *Lombardy*.

Lusscheburghe, 2388, *Luxemburg*.

Lyonelle, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266.

Macedone, 603.

Makabee, 3413.

Marie, 2869, 3998, 4041.

Marrake, 4220, 4267, Marrike, 4209, Merrake, 4077.

Marschalle de Mowne, 1397.

Mawrelle of Mauncez, 1918.

Mawrene, 1918.

Mees, 2950, Meyes, 2417, *Metz*.

Melane, 3134, 3144, Meloyne, 351, 428, *Milan*.

Meneduke, 4077, 4267, M. of Mentoche, 1919.

Merrake. *See* Marrake.

Messie, 3998, *Messiah*.

Meyes. *See* Mees.

Mighelle, Saynt, 940, Seynt M., 1069, Myghelle, 1166, *St Michael*.

Mighelle Mount, Seynt, 899, *St Michael's Mount*.

Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766, 3772, 3840, Mordrede, 645, 711, 3874, 4221, 4226, &c. Mordrede the Malebranche, 4062, 4174.

Mownttagus, 3773.

Myghelle. *See* Mighelle.

Nauerne, 44, *Navarre*.

Nazarethe, 591.

Normandye, 834, Normaundye, 44.

Norwaye, 44, 3935.

Nylus, 591, *the Nile*.

Oreage, 572.

Orgaile, 3534, 3934, Orgayle, 30.

Origge, 1825.

Orkenay, 30, Orekenay, 3934, Orkkenaye, 4163, *Orkney*.

Owghtreth, 234.

Pamphile, 588, *Pamphilia*.

Paradice, 2706, Paradyse, 2039.

Paresche, 1340, 1888, 2647, Parys, 1609, 1631, *Paris*.

Paule, 2413.

Pavy, 3141, Pavye, 568, *Pavia*.

Pawnce, 3140.

Peghttes, 4125, Peygh̄tes, 3533, *Picts*.

Perce, 588, 1520, Perse, 1377, 1544, *Persia*.

Peter, 2413, 2724, 2883, Petire, 2646, Petyr, 1256, the apostle.

Peter, 1476, 1519, 1631, Petir, 1610, Petire, 1543, Petyr, 1419, a senator.

Petyrsande, 352.

Peygħtes. *See* Pegħħtes.

Peyters, 40, *Poictiers*.

Porte Iaffe. *See* Iaffe.

Portyngale, 1028, *Portugal*.

Pounche Tremble, 327, 352, Pownte T., 3140.

Preter Iohne, 588, *Prester John*.

Prewsslande, 2788, Pruyslande, 604, 2835, *Prussia*.

Priamous, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916, Priamus, 2595, 2646, 2690, Gawayne's prisoner.

Prounce, 40, Provynce, 2647, *Provence*.

Pruyslande. *See* Prewsslande.

Pryamous, 4344, *Priam*.

Pulle, 604, *Apulia*.

Pys, 352, Pyse, 3141, *Pisa*.

Rawlaunde, 1607, Rowlande, 1745.

Raynalde, 1607, 1995, Raynallde, 1745.

Raynalde of the Rodes, 2785.

Reone. *See* Rone.

Reynes, 853.

Richeere, 1745, Richere, 1607, 1995, 2790.

Romayne, 310, 1704, 1733, *Roman*; *pl.* Romaynes, 120, 174, 221, &c. Romayne, 1761, 1877, &c. Romayns, 1291, 1361, &c.

Rome, 23, 80, 86, 93, &c.

Rone, 1338, Reone (? Roone), 424, *Rhone*.

Roodes, 597, *Rhodes*.

Rowlande, 1745.

Rowne, 1996, *Rouen*.

Salarne, 2586, Salerne, 4311, *Salerno*.

Sandewyche, 447, Sandwyche, 490, 635, 720.

Sarazene, 2277, *Saracen*; *pl.* Sarazenes, 624, 1846, 1911, &c. Sarazene, 1960, Sarezenes, 599, 607, Sarzane, 1854, Sarzyne, 1626.

Satanase, 3812, *Satan*.

Sayne, 1336, *Seine*.

Scottlande, 32, 292.

Segramoure, 1871.

Sessoyn, 1977, 2657, 2907, Sexone, 1964, *Saxony*.

Sessoynes, 3530, *Saxons*.

Sexone. *See* Sessoyn.

Sextenour, 1700, Sextynour of Lyby, 1625.

Soone, 2482, *Saone*.

Sotere. *See* Sutere.

Southampton, 3546.

Spanyolis, 3700, *Spaniards*.

Spayne, 999, 3162.

Spolett, 3161, *Spoleto*.

Spruyslande, 3162.

Surgenale, 3532.

Surry, 608, 1687, 1844, &c. Surrye, 590, 1626, 3312, Surylande, 2657, *Syria*.

Sutere, 1627, 1910, Sotere, 1871 Suters (?), 501.

Swaldye, 57.

Swetherwyke, 47.

Swyane of Sweey, 2958.

Swynne, 47.

Tambire, 3902, *Tamar*.

Tartary, 582.

Thebay, 583.

Tholus, 39, Tolouse, 1567, *Toulouse*.

Towelle, 1916.

Treyntis, (?) 4056.  
 Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635,  
     3409, 4343.  
 Troys, 1629, *Troyes*.  
 Turkayne, 2408. *Read* Tuskayne.  
 Turky, 582, *Turkey*.  
 Turkys, 1917, *Turks*.  
 Turoyne, 39, *Touraine*.  
 Turry, 234.  
 Tuschayne, 431, Tuskane, 3150,  
     Tuskayne, 328, 499, 3586, 3593,  
     *Tuscany*.  
 Valence, 41.  
 Valewnce, Viscownte of, 2047.  
 Valyant, 2064, V. of Vyleris,  
     1982.  
 Venyce, 204, Venyse, 2025.  
 Vertennone vale, 3169.  
 Viterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048,  
     3164, *Viterbo*.  
 Vnwyne, 2868.  
 Vryelle, 1744.  
 Vryenee. *See* Ewayne.  
 Vter, 29, Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216,  
     Arthur's father.  
 Vtere, 1904, mistake for Vtolfe (?).  
 Vtolfe, 1622, 1868.  
 Vyenne, 41, *Vienne* (*in France*).  
 Wade, 964.  
 Walchere, 2680.  
 Wales, 33, 56, Walis, 2890, West  
     Walys, 322.  
 Walschelande, 334, *Wales*.  
 Waltyre, 2495.  
 Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217.  
 Watlyng-strette, 450, *Watling-  
     street*.  
 Wawayne. *See* Gawayne.  
 Waynor, Waynore, Waynour.  
     *See* Gaynour.  
 Wecharde, 2495.  
 Westfale, 2826, Westuale, 2656,  
     Westwale, 621, *Westphalia*.  
 Whycher, 2678, Wycher, 2680,  
     4025.  
 Wyghte, 334, *the Isle of Wight*.  
 Wynchestre, 4011.  
 Ynglande. *See* Inglande.  
 3orke, 636, 3911, *York*.

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

A, *conj.* and, 2522, 2797.  
 A, *int.* ah ! 320, 1671, 1791.  
 Abaischite, *p.p.* abashed, 255.  
 Abaiste, Abayste, *p.p.* cast down, 1423, 3737.  
 Abbayes, *s. pl.* abbeys, 3403.  
 Abillere, *adj. comp.* abler, 2635.  
 Abouen, 903, 904, Abouenn, 564,  
     Aboune, 511, Abowene, 823,  
     Abowne, 2060, Abwene, 775, *prep.*  
     and *adv.* above. A.S. *abufan*.  
 Accorde, *v.* agree, 344; *p.p.* accordide, 3133.  
 Accountes, *v.* 3 *s.* reckons, 1102; 1 *s.* acounte, make account of, care for, 405; *inf.* acownt, tell, 3929.  
 Actone, *s.* acton, 902, 3457; *pl.* aketouns, 2626.  
 Affraye, *s.* fright, terror, 3226.  
 Affrayede, *v. pret.* frightened, 2804; *p.p.* affrayede, 2256.  
 Aftire, Aftyr, Aftyre, after, 64, 82, &c.  
 Agaste, *adj.* aghast, afraid, 2442, 2728.  
 Agayne, Agaynes, Agaynez, Agayns, *prep.* against, towards, 774, 1268, 2681.  
 Agayne-stande, *v.* resist, 3757; *pl.* aȝayne-stondes, 3126.  
 Ajournede, *p.p.* adjourned, put off, 340.

Ajuggede, *p.p.* judged, deemed, 862, 1658, 3411, 4110.  
 Ake, *s.* oak, 1096. A.S. *āc*.  
 Akere, *s.* acre, 3849.  
 Aketouns. *See* Actone.  
 Alde, 13, 986, Awlde, 279, *adj.* old.  
 Alegges, *v. pl.* allege, 4342.  
 Alet, *s.* ailette, shoulder-plate, 2565.  
 Alfyne, *s.* 1343, a term of reproach; it literally means the *bishop* in chess. *See* *Promptorium Parvulorum*.  
 Algarde, *s.* a kind of wine, 202.  
 Alkyne, Alkyns, *adj.* of every kind, 928, 1730, 3244.  
 Allblawsters, *s. pl.* crossbow-men, 2426.  
 Alle-weldand. *See* Alweldande.  
 Allone, *adj.* alone, only, 541, 2312.  
 Allossenede, *p.p.* renowned, esteemed, 3881.  
 Alls. *See* Als.  
 Alofede. *Read* Alosede, *p.p.* praised, renowned, 2418.  
 Alouer, *adv.* all over, 2027.  
 Alowe, *v.* praise, 1036; 3 *s.* allowes, 396.  
 Als, Alls, *conj.* as, 845, 1701, 1989, 1590; also, 1194.

Alweldande, 397, Alle-weldand, 1059, *adj.* all-ruling, all-powerful.

Alynes, *s. pl.* aliens, 4061.

Amange, *prep.* among, 4037; *adv.* at times, sometimes, 1238.

Ame = am, 2606, 2642, &c.

Amede, *p.p.* estimated, 4068. “Aësmer, aasmer, aemer, aumer, easmer: Juger, estimer, comparer, croire, penser, être d’avis.”—*Rouquerfort*. Lat. *estimare*.

Ancestres, Auncestres, *s. pl.* ancestors, 276, 521, 1310.

And = an, if, 134, 339, 1023.

Ane, *adj.* an, a, 1079, 1148, 1661.

Anely, Anly, *adv.* only, alone, 98, 1499, 1981.

Anentis, *prep.* against, 2568.

Anes, *adv.* once, 360. *See* Ones.

Angerde, *p.p.* angered, angry, 265, 1938, 1957.

Angers, *impers. v.* Me angers = I am angry, 1662, 2838, 2848.

Ankkere, *s.* anchor, 3601; *pl.* ankers, 740, ankyrs, 493.

Anlace, *s.* a sort of dagger, 1148. “Besides the dagger, Chaucer, in his Canterbury Tales, mentions the anelace, which was broad bladed, but lessening from the hilt to a sharp point, and having a sharp edge on each side.” Meyrick, *Critical Inquiry into Antient Armour*, vol. ii. p. 100.

Anly. *See* Anely.

Anone, *adv.* anon, soon, 2716.

Ansuere, *v.* answer, 98, 306; *pret.* answarde, 288.

Ansuere, *s.* answer, 1324.

Anter. *See* Awntre.

Anterous, *adj.* adventurous, bold, 2524.

Apas, *adv.* with measured step, 4014.

Apone, 195, Appone, 262, Apponne, 4000, *prep.* upon.

Appairelles, *v. pl.* apparel, dress, 500; *p.p.* appayrellde, 2461.

Apparant, Apparaunt, *adj.* apparent, 1944, 2606.

Apparaylle, *s.* apparel, 3365.

Apperte, *adj.* open, 688.

Appertly, 1478, Appertlyche, 589, *adv.* openly.

Appone. *See* Apone.

Approches, *ref. v. pl.* draw near, 4105.

Ar, Are, *adv.* & *conj.* before, 254, 331, 1722.

Arase, *v.* snatch away, 4098.

Araysede, *p.p.* raised, drawn up, 1677.

Arborye, *s.* trees, 3244.

Ardant, Ardaunt, *adj.* burning, 193, 1087.

Are. *See* Ar.

Are, *conj.* or, 1944.

Areste, *v.* arrest, stop, capture, 633; *pret.* areste, 329, arrestede, 1429.

Areste, *s.* arrest, 1456, 1473; place of meeting, 311, 548.

Arowes, *s. pl.* arrows, 2105.

Arrabyes, Arrabys, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, perhaps Arabian horses, 2288, 2337.

Arryfede, 835, Aryefede, 600, Aryuede, 3905, *p.p.* come to shore.

As armes, (Fr.) to arms! 2717.

Asawte. *See* Assawte.

Asaye, 2615, Assaye, 2347, *v. try.*

Asaye, *s.* trial, examination, 4312.

Ascente, Assente, *v.* assent, 644, 1506, 1963.

Ascryez, 1367, Askryes, 2245, *v. 3 s.* shouts, cries out; *pl.* ascriez, 1768.

Asches, *v. 2 s.* askest, 343; *3 s.* askys, requires, 157; *pret.* aschede, asked for, 715.

Assawte, Asawte, Asawtte, *s.* assault, 1697, 3012, 3053.

Assemble, *s.* assembly, 1578, 1852, 1962.

Assingnez, *v. pl.* assign, 727; *pret.* assingnyde, 240.

Assoyllede, *p.p.* absolved, 3498.

At = to (with the infinitive), 1165.

At = that = what, 1842, 3484.

Atheliste, *adj.* noblest, 1593. A.S. *æfle*.

Attamede, *v. pret.* broached, pierced, 2175.  
"He let *atame* hys pyement tunne  
To make his gode gestis glad." Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 130, bk. "Attamyn a wesselle wyth drynke,  
or abbrochyn. Attamino, depleo." *Promptorium Parvulorum*.

At-vndere, *adv.* down, 3180.

Atyre, *s.* attire, 4186.

Auctors, *s. pl.* authors, 4342.

Auditoure, *s.* auditor, 1673; *pl.* audytours, 661.

Aughte, Awughte, *adj.* eight, 278, 2627, 3188.

Aughte, *v.* See Awe.

Aughtende, *adj.* eighth, 462.

Auncestres. See Ancestres.

Auntire, Auntyre. See Awnter.

Austerene, Austeryne, *adj.* stern, 306, 414, 571, &c. See Austerne in *Pricke of Conscience*, l. 6181.

Auantid, *v. pret.* praised, 1594; *p.p.* avauntede, 2864.

Avanttwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051, Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmwarde, 2829, 3168, Avawwarde, 3764, *s.* vanguard.

Avawmbrace, *s.* vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568.

Auenaut, *adj.* becoming, graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500.

Aventail, *s.* "a moveable front to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, quæ *ventus hauritur.*" (— Meyriek, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Ventaculum*) 910, 2572.

Auenture, *s.* adventure, chance, fortune, 642.

Avires, *v.* turns towards, directs, 3164. O. Fr. *virer*, turn.

Avisemente, *s.* advice, counsel, 148.

Avissely, Auyssely, *adv.* advisedly, prudently, 2699, 3165.

Avowe, *s.* vow, 296, 308, 347.

Avowe, *v.* vow, 357; *p.p.* avowede, 369.

Auoyeddyde, *v. pret.* quitted, 2051.

Avyede, *v. pret.* showed the way, or made their way towards, 3716. "Avier: Montrer le chemin à quelqu'un." *Roquesfort*. "Avoier, aveier, diriger, indiquer la route, mettre en chemin, en bon chemin, exciter, irriter; s'avoier, se mettre en route, dans la bonne route, se diriger, s'occuper de quelque chose." *Burguy*.

Awe, *v.* owe, 99; *pl.* awes, 455, ought; *pret.* aughte, owned, possessed, 29, 276, 521, &c.; *pret. subj.* aughte, oughtest, 289; 'aughte,' as an impersonal verb, 1583, 1595, 3340, awghte, 3509. Me aughte = I ought.

Awene, *adj.* own, 709, 997, 1594.

Awghtene, *adj.* eighteen, 4069.

Awke, *adj.* perverse, contrary, 13.

Awkewarde, Awkwarde, *adv.* awry, transversely, 2247, 2564.

Awlde. See Alde.

Awncestrye, *s.* ancestry, 1907.

Awntere, Auntire, Awntire, *s.* adventure, chance, risk, 1905, 2617 2244; *pl.* awnters, 1967; at awntere, at random, 2543.

Awntere, Anter, Auntyre, *v. adj.* adventure, 360, 1596, 1660; *3 s. an-*  
*ters, 1498; pl. awnters, 1596.*  
 Awntrende, *adj.* adventuring,  
 bold, 2717.  
 Awntrouseste, *adj.* most adventur-  
 ous, 1624.  
 Awughte. *See* Aughete.  
 Ayele, *s.* grandfather, 2603.  
 Ayere, Ayre, *s. heir, 279, 283,*  
 2634; *pl. ayers, 3146.*  
 Ayere, Ayre, *v. go, 455, 470, 1591;*  
*3 s. ayerez, 617; pl. ayres, 1329;*  
*i. p. ayerande, 2830.*  
 Ayther, Ayttere, Aythyre, *adj.*  
 either, each, 939, 1991, 2830.  
 Ay-ware, *adv.* everywhere, 614.  
 Azoure, Azure, *s. blue, 193, 765,*  
 3355.  
 Aȝayne, *adv.* again, 2713.  
 Aȝaynes, Aȝaynez, *adv.* against,  
 786, 2117, 2791. *See* Agayne.  
 Aȝayne-stondes. *See* Agayne-  
 stande.

Bacenett, *s. cap of steel or other*  
*metal, sometimes worn under the*  
*helm, 906, 2695, 2770; pl. bace-*  
*netez, 1754.*  
 "He butte him on þe helm on hiht,  
 In-to þe Brayn þorw *Bacinet* bricht;  
 Thus is his seruys ȝolde."  
*The Kyng of Turs* (Vernon  
 MS., leaf 306, b.)

Bachelers, Bachellers, *s. pl. novices*  
*in arms, 68, 567, 1424.*  
 Bade, *v. pret. abode, 2383.*  
 Bagis, Bagys, *s. pl. badges, 2303,*  
 3730.  
 Baiste, *p.p. downcast, afraid,*  
 2856.  
 Baite, *v. feed, 2694.*  
 Bake, *s. back, 2203, 3257.*  
 Bakene, *p.p. baked, 3166.*  
 Bakhalfе, *s. backpart, back, 1482.*

Balde, *adj. bold, 1968.*  
 Baldly, *adv. boldly, 630.*  
 Bale, *s. harm, grief, sorrow, 805,*  
 3976; *adj. hurtful, 1483. A.S.*  
*bealu.*  
 Balefulle, *adj. hurtful, 791; sor-*  
*rowful, wretched, 1029, 1136.*  
 Bale-fyre, *s. a large fire, properly*  
*a fire lighted as a signal of distress,*  
 1048.  
 Baltyrde, *v. pret. danced about,*  
*capered, 782. See* *Balteres, Allit-*  
*erative Poems* (Reprint), p. 102, l.  
 459.

Banarettez. *See* Banerettes.  
 Bandez, *s. pl. bonds, 1485; used*  
*metaphorically for "distress,"*  
 1180.

Baneoure, *s. bearer of a banner,*  
 3732. "Banyowre, or bannerberere;  
*Vexillarius, vexillifer, primipilus.*"  
*Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Banerettes, Banerettez, Banaret-  
 tez, *s. pl. knights of the higher*  
*order, 68, 567, 1403, 1424, 2855.*  
 Banke, *s. shore (of the sea), 728,*  
 3731; *pl. bankkes, 3714.*  
 Barayne, *adj. barren, 224.*  
 Barbours, *s. pl. barbers, 2331,*  
 2577.

Barbycane, *s. outer fortification*  
*or defence, fortress at the outlet of*  
*a city, 1183, 2470.*

Bare. *See* Bere.  
 Bare, *s. boar, 3123.*  
 Barefote, *adj. barefoot, 2309.*  
 Bareheuedys, *s. pl. boarheads, 177.*  
 Bare-heuvede, *adj. bareheaded,*  
 3630.  
 Bare-legyde, *adj. barelegged, 2122.*  
 Baronage, *s. company of barons,*  
 587, 1242.  
 Barowes, *s. pl. swine, 191. A.S.*  
*bearh.*  
 Barrers, *s. pl. barriers, 2469.*

Basschede, *p.p.* cast down, 2121.

Bataile, 783, Batelle, 316, Baytaille, 2458, Bataylle, 3107, Baytaille, 4319, *s.* battle; body of troops; *pl.* baitailles, 1425, baitailles, 4064.

Baterde, *p.p.* battered, 189.

Bathe, *conj.* both, 19, 34, 352, &c.

Bawmede, *v.* *pret.* embalmed, 2298; *p.p.* bawmede, 980, 4020.

Baye, *adj.* bay, brown, 918.

Baytaille. *See* Bataile.

Baytand, *i. p.* baiting, 2516; baytaynde, 2671.

Be, Bee, *prep.* by, 60, 164, 174, &c.

Be, Bee, *v.* be; *ind. pres.* *pl.* bez, 97, bene, 2850; *fut.* 1. be (= shall be), 981, 2631, 4140; 2. bees, 1688, 2667, beese, 2663; 3. bees, 3976, bese, 1017, 4312; *imp. pl.* 2. bes, 3798, 4095, bees, 2856, 3737, bez, 222.

Bebledede, *v.* *pret.* made bloody, 2250.

Bechene, *adj.* beechen, 1713.

Bechopes, *s. pl.* bishops, 4328.

Becommys, *v.* becomes, is proper for, 4317.

Bedde, Bede, *s.* bed, 758, 805, 2858.

Bede, *adj.* craving, hungry, lean, 3464. *See* Beddy in Jamieson. A.S. *biddan*, to ask.

Bedes, *v. pl.* offer, 505.

Bedgatt, *s.* going to bed, 1030.

Bee. *See* Be.

Beerynes. *See* Berne.

Bees. *See* Be, *v.*

Begynnande, *i. p.* beginning, 2963.

Behalde, *v.* behold, 2517; *i. p.* behaldande, 3107.

Bekez, *v. 3 s.* bakes, warms, 1048.

Bekende, *v. pret.* committed, en- | trusted, 2340, 2355; bekennyde, 482.

Beknowe, *v.* acknowledge, confess, 3867.

Bekyre, *v.* contend, fight, 3679; *pl.* bekysts, 2425; *pret.* bekerde, 2096.

Bekyne, *s.* beacon, 564.

Belde, *v.* dwell, 8; *pl.* bieldez, 1242; *pret.* beldytt, inhabited, occupied, 38; *p.p.* beyldede, occupied, 566.

Belefede, 1250, Beleuede, 3405, Belcufede, 2380, *p.p.* left.

Beleue, *v.* remain, 3583.

Belyfe, Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 1263, 2068, 2336, 3732.

Beme, *s.* beam, 3663.

Beneyde. *Read* Bendyde, *v.* *pret.* bent, 2424.

Bente, *s.* field, plain, 915, 1054, 1067.

Benysone, *s.* blessing, 4318.

Berde, *s.* beard, 1012; *pl.* berdez, 1002.

Bere, *s.* bear, 775, 790, 802.

Bere, *v.* bear, 51, 615; *pret.* bare, 291, 893; *p.p.* borne, 3738.

Berkes, *v. 3 s.* barks, 1351.

Bernakes, *s. pl.* barnacle geese, 189.

Berne, 962, Beryne, 116, Berynne, 3580, Bierne, 1094, Byerne, 2202, *s.* man; *pl.* bernes, 255, beryns, 148, beerynes, 1050, biernez, 1483, byernez, 2022, byerns, 1391. A.S. *beorn*.

Berouene. *Read* Beronene, *p.p.* run over with, covered, 3946; berowne, 3971. “On me [the cross] lay þe lambe of love, I was plater, hys body above, Whan flessche and veynes alle to-clove, With blood I was bironne.” Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 128.

See *Beronen* in *Percy's Folio MS.* ed. Hales and Furnivall, vol. i. p. 213, l. 31, and vol. iii. p. 63, l. 172.

Berye, *v.* bury, 4318; *3 s.* beryes, 2379; *p.p.* beryede, 980.

Beryelle, *s.* burial, 1776, 2188.

Beryenge, *s.* burying, 2377, 4023.

Bes. *See Be.*

Besauntez, *s. pl.* bezants, 3256.

Bese. *See Be.*

Bessomes, *v.* *3 s.* besoms, *i. e.* sweeps, 3661.

Besy, *adj.* busy, 4095.

Besye, *s.* business, 3630.

Beske, *v.* beseech; *3 s.* besekys, 305; *pl.* besekes, 127; *pret.* besoghte, besoughte, 1234, 1438, 3137.

Bestaile, *s.* beasts, cattle, 1050.

Beste, *s.* beast, 107, 811.

Betakyns, *v.* *3 s.* betokens, signifies, 822, 824.

Bet, *v. pret.* set in order, adjusted; *lit.* improved, 3656. A.S. *bétan.*

Beteche, *v.* hand over, deliver, commit, 1611; *3 s.* beteches, 714; *pret.* betoke, 1889; betuke, 3190, 4015. A.S. *betécan.*

Betoke. *See Beteche.*

Betrappede, *p.p.* entrapped, 1630.

Betuke. *See Beteche.*

Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 801, 2798.

Betydde, *v.* betide, 4325; *3 s.* betyddes, 3482; betyddys, 4315.

Bett, *v. pret.* beat, 2470, 3682.

Bettes, *v. ind. pres. pl.* beat, 2808.

Betyne, *adj.* beaten; hence, adorned with beaten gold, or other such material, 3631, 3646, 3945.

Beueryne = bevering, quivering, 3630. O.E. *biver*, tremble. A.S. *bifian*. Or perhaps beueryne = beaver-coloured; compare *beuer* *hued* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 845.

Bewe, *v.* bow, 3366.

Bewes, *s. pl.* boughs, 3366.

Bewells, *s. pl.* bowels, 2175, 2203.

Bewschers, *s. pl.* (?) the lower parts of the body, 1047. A.S. *scaru*, bowels, &c.; bew = bel, beau, fine, perhaps.

Beyldede. *See Belde.*

Bez. *See Be.*

Bidde, *v.* bide, remain, 4028.

Biddis, *v. ind. pres. pl.* offer, 2310.

Bieldez. *See Belde.*

Bierdez. *See Birde.*

Bilyng, *s.* probably the part of the ship about the *bill* or *rostrum*, 3663. A.S. *bil*, bill, beak, . . . fore-part of a ship. (See *Bosworth.*)

Birdes, 2190, Birdez, 1029, Bierdez, 1052, Byrdez, 999, *s. pl.* women, ladies. A.S. *bryd*, bride, wife, woman.

Birenn, 2519. Mistake for "outene."

Birtenede, 3972. *See Brittene.*

Blake, *adj.* black, 775, 1090, 4339.

Blanke, *s.* horse, 1799; *pl.* blankes, 1860. *See Blonke.*

Blasons, *s. pl.* shields of arms, 1860. See *Blasoun* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 828.

Blawe, *v.* blow, 2662.

Blawene, *p.p.* blown, 1286.

Blawnchede, *p.p.* whitened, 3039.

Ble, Blee, *s.* colour, complexion, 2576, 3332, 3558, 4213.

Blemeste, *p.p.* blemished, hurt, 2578.

Blendez, *v. 3 s.* blends, is mingled, 1799.

Blenke, *v.* blench, wince, 3640, 3735; *3 s.* blenkes, 4213; cause to blench, overcome, 2857.

Bleryde, *v. pret.* mouthed, made wry faces, 782.  
"Deuels sal gadir obout hym þan,  
And grymly grym on hym and *blere*  
And hydus braydes mak hym to fere." Hampole's *Prick of Conscience*, l. 2226.

Blethely, *adv.* blithely, cheerfully, 4147.

Blod, 4121, Blode, 175, 392, Blude, 3235, 4282, *s.* blood.

Blode-bande, *s.* blood-band, a bandage to stop bleeding, 2576.

Blod-hondes, *s. pl.* bloodhounds, 3640.

Blody, Blodye, *adj.* bloody, 793, 3946.

Blondirs, *v. 2 s.* blunderest, 3975.

Blonke, *s.* horse, steed, 453; *pl.* blonkes, 615, blonkkes, 1634. A.S. *blanca*, *blonca*.

Blude. *See* Blod.

Blyne, *v.* cease, 1931, 2578, 3975. A.S. *blinnan*.

Blyschat, *v. pret.* looked, 116. *See blusched*, *Alliterative Poems*, p. 29, l. 980.

Blysse, *s.* joy, 1485.

Blyssyng, *s.* blessing, 4103.

Bonettez, *s. pl.* additional pieces of sail, 3656. "Bonnet (*bonnette*, Fr.), an additional part made to fasten with latchings to the foot of the sails of small vessels with one mast, in moderate winds. It is exactly similar to the foot of the sail it is intended for. They are commonly one-third of the depth of the sails they belong to." (Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney.)

Borde, 79, 171, 630, Bourde, 730, 3641, Burde, 1930, *s.* board, table; board (of a ship).

Bordoure, *s.* border, 4211; *pl.* bordurs, 907.

Bordyrde, *p.p.* bordered, 1002.

Bore, *s.* boar, 188, 4214.

Borne, 2519. Perhaps a mistake for *berne*.

Borne, *p.p.* *See* Bere.

Bosturs, *s. pl.* boasters, 1393.

Bot, Bott, Botte, *conj.* but, 10, 70, except, 516, 521, unless, 1925; bot if, bot ȝif, bot ȝife, 356, 486, 250, unless; *prep.* without, 4070.

Bote, 1786, Botte, 1837, *s.* amends, recompense. A.S. *bót*, *bótū*.

Bothen, Bothene, both, 35, 2547, 2691, 2997, 3716, 4151.

Botelesse, 981, 3558, Botles, 3976, Butelesse, 1014, *adj.* without remedy, cureless.

Bottes, *s. pl.* boats, 748.

Botures, *s. pl.* bitterns, 189. Probably miswritten for *Betures*; see *Betowre* in *John Russell's Boke of Nurture*, ed. Furnivall, ll. 421, 541, 696

Boune, Bowne, *v.* make ready, prepare, hasten, go, 936, 1013, 1034; *3 s.* bownes, 3591, bounnez, 783.

Bourde. *See* Borde.

Bourdene, *v. pl. pres. ind.* jest, 3122; bouredez, *3 s. pres. ind.* 1170.

Boure, *s.* bower, 2190. A.S. *búr*.

Boustous, 2175, Boustouse, 2425, 3679, Boystous, 3762, Bustous, 615, 775, 783, 1379, *adj.* rude, rough, harsh, violent.

Bouxome, 2858, Bouxvme, 4147, *adj.* obedient.

Bouxsomly, *adv.* obediently, 107.

Bowes, *v. 3 s.* turns, 2251; *pl.* bowes, go, 69, 2310.

Bowes, *s. pl.* shoulders, 188; boughs, 1711, 3247. A.S. *boh*, arm, back, shoulder, branch, bough. (*Bosworth*.)

Bowndene, *p.p.* bound, 3316.

Bowne, *v.* *See* Boune.

Bownne, *adj.* ready, 1633, 2331.

Box, *s.* stroke, blow, 1111.  
 Boyes, *s. pl.* 2122, 2856, 3122.  
 Boystous. *See* Boustous.  
 Brace, *v.* fasten, fix, 1182; *3 s.* bracez, puts on his arm, 914.  
 Bracer, 4247, *s.* brassart, a defence for the arm; *pl.* brasers, 1859.  
 Brade, *adj.* broad, 106, 914, 1094; *comp.* braddere, 55, 1699.  
 Bragge, *v.* blow (in a trumpet); *pl. pres. ind.* braggene, 1484, bragges, 4107; *pret.* braggede, 3657.  
 Braggers, *s.* *pl.* boasters, brag-garts, 1348.  
 Brand, 3946, Brande, 893, 914, Braunde, 2239, *s.* sword. A.S. *brand, brynd*, brand, torch, sword.  
 Brankkand, *i. p.* branking, *i. e.* bridling, checking, curbing, repressing, 1861. *See* Brank and Branks in Jamieson.  
 Braste. *See* Briste.  
 Brathely, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely, 1771, 3219.  
 Braunchers, *s.* *pl.* young hawks, 190.  
 Braundesche. *See* Brawndysche.  
 Brawle, Brawlle, *v.* 2349, 2362; *3 s.* brawles, 1349.  
 Brawlynge, *s.* confusion, 2176.  
 Brawnches, *s. pl.* branches, 3367.  
 Brawndysche, *v.* brandish, 3359; *3 s.* braundesche, 1056; *pret.* braundyschte, 782, brawndeste, 3657.  
 Brawne, *s.* boar, 1095.  
 Brayd, *v.* drive, thrust, dash, draw, 1172; *3 s.* braydes, 2695, braydez, 2069, 2073, brayedez, 906; *p.p.* braydene, east, 3945.  
 Brayde, *s.* thrust, 3762.  
 Brede, *s.* bread, 2715.  
 Brede, *s.* roast meat, 79, 190, 1052; *pl.* bredez, 1049, bredis, 2715. A.S. *bréde*.  
 Brede, *s.* breadth, 1224, 2011, 2273, 3656. A.S. *brédo*.  
 Bredes, *v.* *3 s.* breeds, 224.  
 Bregaundez, *s. pl.* brigands, 2096. "These foot-soldiers were clothed in jackets, which were quilted, and had pieces of iron within, hence called brigandines. Such jackets were worn in the time of Elizabeth and James I. by the English archers." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Brigantii*.  
 Breke, *v.* break, 4146; *3 s.* brekes, 3124.  
 Breklesse, *adj.* without breeches, naked, 1048.  
 Breme, *adj.* fierce, 1380.  
 Bremly, *adv.* fiercely, 4107.  
 Brenë, 2253, 4212, Breny, 1482, *s.* cuirass; *pl.* brenyes, 3753, brenys, 1525, 1858, bryneys, 4119. *See* Brini in the Glossary to *Havelok*, ed. Skeat.  
 Brenyede, 316, Brynyede, 3680, *adj.* armed with a cuirass.  
 Breste, *s.* breast, 2253, front of an army, 1990; *pl.* breste, 191.  
 Brestys. *See* Briste.  
 Brethe, *s.* wrath, anger, 107, 117, 2213.  
 Brethly, *adv.* angrily, 3661.  
 Brettened, Brettyne. *See* Brittene.  
 Brigge, 3124, Brygge, 2470, *s.* bridge.  
 Briste, *v.* burst, break, 214; *3 s.* briste, 805, brystez, 1135, 1482; *pl.* briste, 1859, brestys, 3663; *pret.* braste, 2176, 2271; *pret.* pl. broustene, 2544; *p.p.* brustene, 2771, broustene, 3974; *weak pret.* brystedde, 1129.  
 Brittene, 963, Brettyne, 3580, Brytyne, 106, 1350, *v.* cut or dash in pieces, destroy completely; *pret.* brettened, 1487, brittenyde, 802, bryttenede, 2212; *p.p.* brettenede, 3520, brittenede, 1067, brittenede,

3972. A.S. *bryttian*, *brytnian*, to divide into fragments, distribute.

Broche, *v.* pierce, stab, 1172; *3 s.* broches, 2202, brochez, spurs, 918; *pl.* brochez, spur, 1449; *pret.* brochede, broached, tapped, 2714; *p.p.* brochede, spitted, 1050, 1067.

Brochez, *s. pl.* spits, 1029.

Brode, *adj.* broad, 116, 792, 1047. *See* Brade.

Broght, 3358, Broghte, 802, *v.* *pret.* brought; *p.p.* broghte, 1013, 1017.

Brokbreastede, *adj.* having a breast variegated, spotted or streaked with black and white, 1095. *See* Brocked in Jamieson. Compare "Brock-faced, a white longitudinal mark down the face like a badger." Brockett.

Bronde, *s.* sword, 2566, 3631; *pl.* brondes, 2309. *See* Brand.

Brotheliche, 3640, Brothely, 1408, 1449, 1753, 1862, 2095, Brothly, 3617, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely.

Brothy, *adj.* (?) foamy, frothy, 1090.

Browddene, 2807, 4119, Browdene, 1858, *adj.* woven. *See* Brawden in Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ll. 177, 580. A.S. *brogden*, *broden*, *p.p.* of *bregdan*, to weave, braid, &c. The "brenyes" were probably made of small metal rings woven one into the other.

Bruchez, *s. pl.* brooches, 3256.

Bruschese, *v.* *pl.* brush, dash, 3680.

Brustils, *s. pl.* bristles, 1095.

Bryddes, *s. pl.* birds, 181.

Brydille, 453, Brydylle, 2085, *s.* bridle.

Brygge. *See* Brigge.

Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 117, 4214.

Bryne, 106, Brynne, 564, *v.* burn;

3 *s.* brynnez, 1241; *pret.* brynte, 117; *p.p.* brynte, 3520.

Bryneys. *See* Brene.

Brynyede. *See* Brenyede.

Brystedde, Brystez. *See* Briste.

Bryttenede, Bryttyne. *See* Brittene.

Burde. *See* Borde.

Burgesse, 3082, *s.* burgess, citizen; *pl.* burgeys, 857.

Burgh, *s.* city, 1968, 2424, 3083; *pl.* burghes, 1241. A.S. *burh*.

Burliche, 2190, Burelyche, 304, Burlyche, 586, 730, 1002, 1111, 2010, *adj.* tall, stately, grand.

Burliche, *adv.* grandly, 4199.

Burneschte, 906, 1011, 2123, Burneste, 2272, 3846, Burnyscht, 1113, Burnyste, 177, 1859, *p.p.* burnished, polished.

Bus, *impers. v.* behoves, 2576. Vs bus = we must.

Buscayle, 895, Buskayle, 1634, *s.* bushes.

Buschede. *See* Buske, *v.*

Buschement, *s.* ambush, 3124. *See* Enbuschement.

Buskayle. *See* Buscayle.

Buske, *s.* bush, wood, 453, 918; *pl.* buskez, 1142.

Buske, *v.* make ready, prepare, arrange, dispose, manage, hasten, proceed, go; *3 s.* buskes, 1223, 2829, buskez, 2073; *pl.* buskes, 1754, buskez, 729, 1618; *pret.* buskede, 1633; *imp.* *2 s.* buske, 1263; *imp.* *2 pl.* buskes, 2855; *p.p.* buskede, arrayed, dressed, 2517, 3332, 4339, buschede, furnished, 567; buske vpe, raise, 3072.

Bustous. *See* Boustous.

Butelesse. *See* Botelesse.

Byd, Bydde, Byde, *v.* ask, bid, 433, 1181, 2188, 4323; *3 s.* bydde, 1776, byddis, 2361.

Byddynge, *s.* bidding, command, 1030, 1931.

Byde, *v.* remain, abide, tarry, 8, 936, 1968; 3 *s.* byddys, 4214; *pl.* byddes, 2808, bydde, 1030, await, wait for; *imp.* 2 *pl.* bydde, 629.

Byerns, Byeryne. *See* Berne.

Byggly, *adv.* bigly, strongly, 1376.

Byhalue, *s.* behalf, 1674.

Byhoues, 4135, Byhouys, 3579, Byhowys, 1715, *impers. v.* behoves.

Byhyndene, *adv.* behind, 694.

Bylefede, 1538, Byleuede, 2145, 2366, Byleufede, 3678, Byleuyde, 1557, 1885, *p.p.* left.

Bynne, *prep.* within, 804. A.S. *binnan.*

Byrdez. *See* Birdes.

Byrre, *s.* impetus, violence, 3661.

Byswenkez, *v.* 3 *s.* toils, 1128. A.S. *beswincan*, to labour.

Byttes, *v.* 3 *s.* bites, 791.

Caas, 261, 1892, Caase, 3521, Case, 2719, Cas, 3564, *s.* hap, occurrence.

Cabane, 757, Kabane, 3671, *s.* cabin; *pl.* cabanes, 733.

Cabilles, *s. pl.* cables, 3671.

Cachede, *p.p.* chased, 3513.

Cachene, *v. pl.* catch, seize, take, 834; *pl.* catchez, 480; *pret.* caughte, 1105, kaghte, 2636, kaught, 3951, kaughte, 3378, kawghte, 3916; *p.p.* cawghte, 3514, kaughte, 2995.

Caffe, *s.* chaff, refuse, 1064.

Caire. *See* Cayre.

Cantelle, *s.* corner, quarter, lump, piece, 4231. “*Chantel, Cantel*, coin, quartier, morceau, chanteau.” *Burguy.*

Capitayne, 1864, Captayne, 2263, *s.* captain; *pl.* capytaynez, 838.

Captife, 1589, *s.* captive, prisoner; *pl.* captifis, 1580.

Care, 859, Kare, 1838, *s.* sorrow.

Carefulle, *adj.* unhappy, 957, sorrowful, 1777.

Caremane, *s.* male, man, 957. A.S. *carlman.*

Carffes, *s. pl.* cuts, 2713.

Carle, *s.* fellow, 1063, 1107, 1165. A.S. *carl.*

Carpe, 2750, Karpe, 1929, 2126, *v.* talk, speak; 3 *s.* carpys, 132; *pret.* carpede, 143, 220. “*Carpyn*”, or talkyn’. *Fabulor, confabulor, garrulo.*” *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Carpynge, *s.* talk, 1672.

Caryage, *s.* luggage, 2355.

Caste, *v.* cast, consider, purpose; 2 *s.* castes, 261; 3 *s.* castes, 1998; castis, 1769; *pret.* kest, 3384, keste, 118, 280, 943; *imp.* 2 *s.* kaste 3406; *p.p.* castyne, 819, 3240.

Castelles, *s. pl.* castles, 27, 849.

Cawtelous, *adj.* full of artifices, artful, cunning, sly, 4185. Fr. *cauteleux.*

Cayre, 877, Caire, 1192, Kaire, 641, 1319, Kayere, 627, Kayre, 6, 444, *v.* go; 3 *s.* cayres, 243; *pl.* cayers, 480. The original meaning was *turn*. A.S. *cyrran, cérran*, to turn.

Certane, 3930, Certayne, 817, *adv.* certainly.

Certez, 1162, 1342, Certys, *adv.* surely, certainly.

Certyfye, *v.* tell, inform, 1555.

Ceté, 601, 2012, Cetee, 440, 488, *s.* city; *pl.* cetees, 2609, cetese, 1337.

ChaaS, *s.* chace, 2269.

Chalange, *v.* contest, dispute, 1322, challenge, 2524, 3397, claim, 3326. “*Chalonger*, . . . . demander, contester, provoquer, attaquer, défendre, refuser, prohiber, blâmer; de *calumnia* fausse accusation, chicanie.” *Burguy* under *Chalange.*

Champayne, *s.* champaign, level

country, 1226, 1362; *pl.* chamyse, 1822.

Changene, *v. inf.* change, 1405, chawnge, 2301; *pl.* changene, 2989, chaungene, 168; *pret.* chaungede, 3382, chawngyd, 2701, chawngide, 2964; *i. p.* chawngawnde, 2523, chawngynge, 3267.

Chapes, *s. pl.* metal tips of sword-sheaths, 2522. "Chape of a schethe. *Spirula.*" *Prompt. Parv.* "The chape of a sword was a badge assumed by the De la Warr family, in memorial of the part taken by Sir Roger de la Warr, at Poitiers, 1356, in the capture of John, King of France, when he took possession of the royal sword." *Way* in *Prompt. Parv.*

Chapyde, *v. pret.* escaped, 4260.

Charbokle, 3326, Charebocle, 2523, 3267, *s. carbuncle.*

Chare, *s. (?)* 3603.

Chare, *v. (?)* carry, 1886.

Charge, *v.* load, burden, charge, molest, &c.; 3 *s.* chargges, 3538; *pret.* chargede, 1540, chargyde, 1406; *p.p.* chargede, 1549, charegyde, 1552, chargegid, 3136, chargede, 3604, chargegide, 2731.

Chargour, 1026, *s.* dish; *pl.* chargeours, 185.

Charitee, *s.* charity, 1019, 1542.

Charottez, *s. pl.* chariots, 1552.

Charpe, *adj.* sharp, 3600.

Charre, *s.* ear, 3914.

Charry, *adj. (?)* dear, cherished, 2964. Fr. *cher*, dear; *chéri*, cherished.

Chasse, *s.* chace, 2368.

Chasse, *v.* chase, 2237.

Chastye, *v.* chastise, correct, 1019; *p.p.* chastyede, 690.

Chasynge-spere, *s.* hunting-spear, 1823, 2955.

Chauffede, *p.p.* heated, excited, 2236.

Chaunce, *s.* chance, hap, 1749, fortune, 2999; chawnse, 2368; *pl.* chaunceez, 531, 2956.

Chauncelere, 169, 1551, Chauchelere, 1541, *s.* chancellor.

Chawffe, *v.* become heated, 2301.

Chawmbyrs, *s. pl.* chambers, 3041.

Chayere, *s.* chair, seat, 3266, 3329, 3347.

Cheefe, *s.* chief (Her.), 2523.

Cheefe, *adj.* chief, 1363, 1404.

Cheekke. *See* Chekke.

Cheese. *See* Chese.

Chefede. *See* Cheue.

Cheftans, 18, Cheftanes, 1872, Cheftaynes, 1323, 1406, *s. pl.* chieftains.

Chekefulle, *adj.* chockfull, 3604.

Chekke, 1539, 2956, Cheke, 3000. Cheekke, 1986, *s.* check, repulse; but applied to the enemy, and therefore equivalent to *success*. In line 1986 it seems to mean the force which checks the enemy.

Chekyne, *s.* chicken, 4181.

Chekyrde, *p.p.* chequered, 3267.

Chele, *s.* cold, 3391.

Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 2069, 2964.

Chese, 1619, Cheese, 682, *v.* choose; hence, choose a way, go towards; 3 *s.* cheses, 2954, chesez, 1225; *pl.* chesene, 1873; *p.p.* chosene, 2731.

Cheualere, *s.* knight, 208, 1551; *pl.* chenalers, 2116.

Cheualrous, 1362, 1540, Cheuallrous, 1399, *adj.* chivalrous.

Cheualrye, 18, 169, 1404, Cheuallrye, 531, *s.* chivalry, knighthood, knights.

Cheuede, 1117, 1841, Chefede, 869; *p.p.* fared, thriven, succeeded.

Cheuede, *v. pret.* attained, 3329.

Cheueride, *p.p.* shivered, 3391.

Chewyse, *v. save*, 1750. “*Chevir, venir à bout de quelquechose, sortir d'une affaire, se tirer d'embarras . . .*” *Burguy*.

Cheynes, *s. pl. chains*, 2522.

Chiftayne, *s. chieftain*, 2732.

Childe, *s. applied to a grown person*, 2952, 4260; *pl. childire*, 1821, *childre*, 1025, *childrene*, 4078, *childrenne*, 3188, *childyre*, 845, 1051, *childyrene*, 3208.

Chillande, *i. p. chilling, cold*, 2965.

Chippe, *s. ship*, 3599; *pl. chippes*, 3546.

Chippe-burdez, *s. pl. shipboards*, 1699.

Chis, (?) 2217.

Cho, *pron. she*, 655, 659, 715, &c. *See Scho.*

Chokkefulle, *adj. chockfull*, 1552.

Chokkes, *v. 3 s. (?) thrusts*, 2955; *p.p. chokkode*, 3603.

Chullede, *p.p. 1444*. “*Chulle. To bandy about.*” *Halliwell*.

Churles, *adj. churlish*, 4181.

Chymnés, 3041, Chympnés, 168, *s. pl. brasiers, or other receptacles for fire, fireplaces*.

Chyne, *s. chine, backbone*, 3390.

Cirquytrie, 3399, Cyrqwitrye, 2616 (wrongly printed *Cyrus witrye*), *s. pride, arrogance*.

Cité, 1696, 1979, Citee, 60, *s. city*. *See Ceté*.

Clappyde, 956, Clappide, 1137, *v. pret. smote together*.

Clarioune, 3563, Claryoune, 2718, *s. clarion, war-trumpet*; *pl. clarions*, 1758.

Claspande, *i. p. clasping*, 4337.

Clasppis, *s. pl. clasps*, 909.

Clathe-sekkes, *s. pl. cloth-sacks*, 733.

Clauer, *s. clover* 3241.

Clauerande, *i. p. clawing*, 3324.

Clede, *v. pret. clothed*, 2713; *p.p. cledde*, 3334, *clede*, 3241, 3684, *cleede*, 217, *clothed, clad*.

Clef, *v. pret. clave, split*, 2559.

Cleffe, *v. cleave, stick, cling*, 1312.

Clekes, 1865, Clekys, 1164, 2123, *v. 3 s. clutches, seizes*.

Clene, *adj. clean, pure*, 201, 217, *bright, fair, good*, 1197, 1603.

Clenkkede, *v. pret. clanked*, 2113.

Clenliche, Clenly, Clenlyche, *adv. well*, 216, 628, 654, 1586, *entirely, quite*, 581, 673, 850, 2125.

Clepid, *v. pret. called*, 3563. *A.S. clypian.*

Clere, *adj. clear, bright*, 819, 883, 909, *illustrious, 1559, clear, free from obstacles*, 1640.

Clereworte, *s. 3241*. *Perhaps = A.S. clæfer-wyrt, small clover.*

Clergialle, *adj. skilful*, 1758.

Clergally, *adv. cleverly*, 200.

Clergye, *s. learning*, 809.

Clerkis, 3444, Clerkkes, 2391, *s. pl. clerics, scholars*.

Clewes, 1639, Clewez, 2019, Kleuys, 2396, Cloughes, 941, *s. pl. cliffs*.

Clewide, *v. pret. cleaved, clung*, 3268.

Close, *v. enclose*, 1165, 2003.

Close, *s. prison*, 1586, *enclosed space, enclosure*, 1639, 3240.

Closse, *adj. secret*, 1196.

Cloughes. *See Clewes*.

Clowez, *s. pl. claws*, 783.

Clyfe, 883, Clyffe, 2158, *s. cliff*; *pl. cleyffe*, 2019.

Clymbande, *i. p. climbing*, 3324, 3422.

Clynges, *v. 3 s. presses*, 1865.

Coblez, *s. pl. cables*, 742.

Coferez, 733, Cofirs, 2283, Cofres, 4206, *s. pl.* coffers, chests.

Cogge, *s. ship*, 476, 756, 3634; *pl.* coggez, 738. "Cairet on the colde ythes cogges & other." *The Destruction of Troy*, E. E. T. S., l. 3242.

Coldis, *v. 2 s.* makest cold, chill-est, 3518.

Colurez, *s. pl.* colours, 819.

Comandez, 2392, Comaundez, 1637, Commaundez, 71, *v. 3 s.* *pres. ind.* commands; *pref. comande*, 1218, comaunde, 2356, com-aundyd, 1602, commande, 156, 4148; *imp. comaunde*, 1585.

Come, *v. inf.* 1584; *3 s. pres. ind.* comes, 1818, commes, 799, comez, 841, commez, 1439; *pl. commez*, 1545; *pref. come*, 80, 176, 2119; *i. p. commande*, 3468; *p.p. comene*, 582, 865, commyne, 1419, comyne, 987.

Come, *s. coming*, 1203, 1565, 1812.

Comelyche, 1318, Comliche, 3335, Comly, 1203, 3259, Comlyche, 71, 1053, *adj. comely*.

Comes, *impers. v.* becomes, befits, 1579.

Comforth, 830, Comforthe, 944, 1839, Comfurthe, 696, *v. comfort, strengthen*; *3 s. comfourthes*, 3131.

Comforthe, *s. comfort*, 3960.

Comlyli, 3047, Comlyly, 4108, *adv. in a comely manner*.

Commande. *See Come*.

Comone, *v. converse*, 1580.

Comouns, 725, Comowns, 2353, *s. pl. commons*.

Compas, *s. outer part (of an enclosure)*, 3240, (of a wheel), 3268, 3325, compass, reach, 4222.

Compaste, *p.p. surrounded*, 3633.

Concelle, 259, &c. *See Counsaile*.

Concelle, 243, 2395, Consayle, 1959, *s. council*.

Condethe, 3148, 3483, Coundyte, 475, Cundit, 444, *s. safe conduct*.

Condethes, *s. pl. conduits*, 201.

Condycyone, *s. condition*, 1511.

Confundez, *v. 3 s.* confounds, 1922; *p.p. confundede*, 1153.

Connygez, *s. pl. conies, rabbits*, 197.

Conquerid, 284, Conqueryd, 24, *v. pret. won, gained*; *p.p. conqueryde*, 402.

Consayle. *See Concelle*.

Constable, *s.* 1585, 1590.

Contek, Conteke, *s. strife*, 2721, 3669, 4177.

Contenance, Contenaunce, *s. countenance, manner, behaviour*, 123, 222, 542, 2120, 4033.

Contré, 623, 676, Contree, 848, 1640, Countré, 223, 2304, Cowntré, 3542, *s. country*; *pl. contres*, 3425, contreez, 27.

Conuaye, *v. convey*, 1589, 1604.

Conyng, *adj. cunning, skilful*, 3202; *superl. conyngeste*, 809; *konyngeste*, 3177.

Cope-borde, *s. cupboard*, 206.

Copes, *s. pl.* 4334.

Coppe, *s. cup*, 2750.

Coppe-fulle, *s. cupful*, 3378.

Corage, *s. heart*, 536, 1725, 1922.

Corenalle. *See Coronalle*.

Corkes, *s. carcase*, 1091.

Corne, (?) 1786, 1837.

Cornettes, *s. pl.* 1758, 4108.

Cornuse, *s. pl. horns*, 1809. Lat. *cornu*.

Coronalle, 908, 1108, 3633, Core-nalle, 3258, *s.*; a kind of ring or crown round a helmet; also, part of a lady's head-dress.

Corone, 291, Coroune, 28, Corowne, 3543, Crowne, 3426, 4202, Crownne, 3352, *s. crown*; *pl. corowns*, 3269, crounes, 51.

Coroune, 678, Crowne, 3185, *v.* crown; *p.p.* corounde, 142, corounede, 125, corownde, 1654, 2447, 3525, crowned, 3213, crownede, 3049, crownnede, 3407.

Corroumppede, *p.p.* corrupt, 3478.

Cors, 1779, 2380, Corse, 1389, *s.* corpse, body.

Corsaunt, *s.* holy body, body of a saint, 1164. See *Corsant* in *English Gilds*, p. 97, l. 3, and *Corseynt, English Gilds*, p. 188, l. 1.

Corvene. *See* Kerues.

Coseri, *s.* (?) 1582.

Coste, *s.* coast, 834, 877, 1787.

Cosyne, *s.* cousin, kinsman, 338, kinswoman, 864; *pl.* cosyns, 50, 101.

Cote, 1690, 3334, Cotte, 1194, *s.* coat.

Couaitte. *See* Coueite.

Couatys, *s.* covetousness, 1580.

Couaunde. *Read* Conanne, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 558.

Couched, *p.p.* set, 909.

Coueite, 1191, Couaitte, 51, Couette, 3325, *v.* covet; 2 *s. pres.* couettes, 1321; *p.p.* cowayte, 2397.

Couenawnte, *s.* covenant, 3542.

Couent, *s.* convent, 1220, 4021.

Couer, Couere, *v.* recover, 859, 1246, win, 3425, 3434; 3 *s. pres.* couers, 3644, coureris, 941, reaches; coureris vpe, gets up, 4274; *pret.* couerde, won, 274, 280, reached, 858; couerd vp, got up, rose, 124, coueride, got up, 2195; *p.p.* couerde, won, 28, 3085.

Couere, *v.* cover, 1886; 3 *s. pres.* couers, 1110; *pret.* couerde, 3378, 3995; *p.p.* couerde, 1770, 2115, couerde, 3047, 3098.

Couerte, *adj.* sheltered, 1780, secret, 1196.

Coundyte. *See* Condethe.

Coungé, *s.* leave, 479. Fr. *congé*.

Counaile, 291, Conelle, 144, 259, 1023, *s.* counsel, advice.

Counsayles, *v.* 3 *s.* advises, 305.

Countere, *v.* encounter, 1274; 3 *s.* cownterez, 1848; *p.p.* cownterede, 1893.

Countré. *See* Contré.

Couppable, *adj.* blameable, guilty, 1317.

Coupes. *See* Cowpe.

Coupylde, *v. pret.* coupled, fastened, 2336.

Coursere, *s.* 1388, 2166.

Courtays. *See* Curtais.

Coutere, *s.* elbowpiece (in armour), 2567. *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 583.

Couthe, *v. pret.* knew, 21, Cowthe, couldst, 3340.

Cowardys, *s.* cowardice, 1693, 4186.

Cowayte. *See* Coueite.

Cowchide, *v. pret.* lay down (as hounds); and hence, became meek and submissive, 122.

Cowle, *s.* a large tub, 1051. "Cowle, vessel. *Tina, Cath*" *Prompt. Parv.* In *English Gilds*, ed. Toulmin Smith, pp. 371, 382, *Cowle* is used for a tub, or some such vessel to measure ale with.

Cowntas, *s.* countess, 3045; *pl.* countasses, 4337.

Cowntere, *s.* accountant, 1672.

Cownterez. *See* Countere.

Cowpe, *s.* cup, 209; *pl.* cowpes, 210, 237; coupes, 3375.

Cowpez, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes, 799, 2059; *pl.* cowpene, 2543.

Cowthe. *See* Couthe.

Crachynge, *s.* crashing, 3669.

Crafe, *v.* crave, 1681, 3522.

Crafte, *s.* skill, art, 752, 3667; *pl.* craftez, 284, craftys, 24.

Craftely, 3351, Craftyly, 196, *adv.* skilfully.

Crafty, *adj.* skilfully made, 211.

Crage, *s.* crag, 876.

Cramede, *p.p.* crammed, 477, 1051.

Crasseches, *v. pl. pres. ind.* crush, 3670; *pret.* craschede, 2114, crasschede, 1109.

Crauaunde, *adj.* craven, 133.

Crayers, 738, Krayers, 3666, *s. pl.* small vessels. "And, for the Revictallyng and Refreshyng of the said Shippes with Water and other Necessaries, the said Admirall shall, over and above the said Shippes, have Two *Crayers*, the one being of the Portage of Thre Score and fyfty [? fifteen] Tonnes, wherein shall be the Master Twelve Mariners and One Boye, and the other *Crayer* shall be of the Portage of fifty five Tonnes, wherein shall be the Maister with Ten Maryners and one Boye" . . . . *Indentura inter Dominum Regem & Edwardum Howardum Cupitaneum Generalem Armatae super Mare* (A.D. 1512). Rymer, *Fœdera*, tom. xiii. p. 328, col. 2.

Craysed, *p.p.* broken, 2150. Fr. *écrasé*.

Creatoure, *s.* creature, 534, 859; *pl.* creatours, 4102.

Credens, *s.* credentials, 88, 3522.

Creest, Creeste, *s.* crest, 1108, 1133, 1185.

Creette, *s.* a kind of wine, 200.

Crepers, *s. pl.* grapnels, 3667. (*Halliwell*)

Cresmede. *See* Crysmede.

Cretoyne, *s.* 197. "A sweet sauce." *Halliwell*. Compare "Cretons: Lard coupé menu qu'on fait frire dans la poêle." *Roquesfort*.

Crewelle, 132, 1909, Crouelle, 118, Crowelle, 2544, 3424, Cruelle, 43, 88, *adj.* cruel, fierce, angry, &c.

Crispid, *p.p.* 1003.

Cristene, Cristyne, *adj.* Christian, 3429; *sb.* 1187, 2786, 4112.

Cristenly, *adv.* like a Christian, 1208.

Cristyndome, *s.* Christendom, 2036.

Cristynmesdaye, *s.* Christmas-day, 70.

Cristynmese, 64, Cristymes, 839, Crystynmesse, 544, *s.* Christmas.

Cronycle, *s.* chronicle, 3445; *pl.* cronycles, 3218.

Crose, 3428, Crosse, 3335, *s.* cross; one crosse, across, 3667.

Crosse-dayes, *s. pl.* 3212.

Crosselettes, *s. pl.* 3336.

Crouelle. *See* Crewelle.

Crounes. *See* Corone.

Crowelle. *See* Crewelle.

Crownnede. *See* Coroune, *v.*

Cruelle. *See* Crewelle.

Cruschene, *v. inf.* crush, 1134.

Cryande, *i. p.* crying, 1137.

Crysmede, 1051, Cresmede, 1065, Krysomede, 3185, *adj.* anointed with chrism.

Crystenede, Crystnede, *p.p.* christened, 3337.

Crysume, 142, Krysome, 2447, 3435, *s.* chrism.

Cukewalde, *s.* cuckold, 1312.

Cuñdit. *See* Condethe.

Cunvayede, *v. pret.* convoyed, 482.

Cure, *s.* care, 673.

Curius, *adj.* curious, 61.

Curlues, *s. pl.* curlews, 196.

Curtais, 2394, Curtaise, 209, 417, Curtays, 125, 1318, Curtayes, 481, Courtays, 21, *adj.* courteous.

Curtaisie, *s.* courtesy, 1274, 1681.

Cury, *s.* cookery, 1063.

Dagges, *v. pl.* pierce, 2102; *i. p.* daggande, 3749.

Dagswaynnes, *s. pl.* garments "of frize, or some material with long thrums like a carpet," 3609. See *Daggysweyne* and notes thereon in *Promptorium Parvulorum*.

Dalte, Daltene. *See* Dele.

Damesels, *s. pl.* young ladies, 3044.

Dampnede, *p.p.* damned, condemned, 3277, 3299.

Danke, Dannke, *adj.* dank, damp, 313, 3750.

Dare, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007; 3 *s.* dares, 3225. "Daryn", or drowpyn', or prively to be bydde. *Latito, lateo, Cath.* *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Darielles, *s. pl.* a kind of dish, 199. See the recipe *For darials* in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 38.

Dauncesynge, *s.* dancing, 2030.

Daungere, Dawngere, *s.* power, 579, 3067, danger, 1935, 2935.

Daweyng, *s.* dawn, daybreak, 1601.

Dawez, *s. pl.* days; done of dawez, killed, 2056.

Daynteez, *s. pl.* dainties, 199.

Daynteous, *adj.* dainty, 4196.

Daynttehely, *adv.* daintily, 723.

Debles, 2934.

Dede, *s.* deed; *pl.* dedes, 48, dedys, 13.

Dede, *adj.* dead, 975, 1722.

Dede, *s.* death, 1253, 1935.

Dede-thrawe, *s.* death-pang, 1150.

Deesse, *s.* dais, 218.

Defadide, *p.p.* faded, 3304.

Defawte, *s.* default, 2939.

Defawtes, *v. pl.* are wanting, fail, 2928.

Deffuse, *s.* prohibition, 256. Compare "Defaix, deffais, deffois, defois: Lieux défendus, où il n'est pas permis de pêcher ni de chasser; empêchement, défense." *Roquefort.* But it is more than probable that we ought to read "deff[e]use" = forbidding, prohibition.

Degré, *s.* degree, 84.

Dele, *v.* deal, 1278; *pret.* delte, 49, 3088; *pret. pl.* daltene, 2101, dalte, 3693, 3749; *p.p.* delte, 1216, 1277, 1564.

Delygens, *s.* diligence, 1934.

Delytte, *s.* delight, 1970.

Delyuerede, *p.p.* set free, 1688, 2081.

Demenys, *v.* 3 *s.* leads, 1988; *pl.* demenys, 4076. O. Fr. *deme-ner*.

Demyd, Demyde, *p.p.* deemed, judged, 219, 1564, doomed, 4158.

Depayntide, *p.p.* depicted, 3355.

Depez, *s. pl.* deeps, 750.

Depnesse, *s.* depth, 746.

Dere, *v.* hurt, injure, 1783, 3248, 3611, 4200; 3 *s.* derys, 2099. A.S. *derian*.

Dere, *adj.* dear, 974, 1216.

Derefulle, *adj.* 4053. Qu. for *derffulle*, full of pain or care. Compare *derf*, hardship, affliction, pain, in *Stratmann*.

Derliche, 3379, Derely, 1277, *adv.* dearly.

Dereworthily, *adv.* preciously, 3251.

Derfe, *adj.* hard, strong, severe, 312, 332, 811, 2052, 2102, 2652.

Derflyche, *adv.* severely, 3277.

Derke, *adj.* dark, 754.

Derlynge, *s.* darling, 4196.

Derygese, *s. pl.* dirges, 4017.

Despyne, 183. *See* Porke despyne.

Destanye, 3436, 3779, Desteny, 1563, *s. destiny.*

Destaynede, *p.p.* destined, 664, 4090, 4153, 4157, 4306.

Destruede, *p.p.* destroyed, 1181.

Deuer, *s. duty*, 1940.

Devisede, *v. pret.* divided, 3527.

Deuorande, *i. p.* devouring, 2054.

Deuotly, 296, Devottly, 347, *adv.* devoutly.

Devyse, *v. divide*, 2400; *pret.* deuysede, 3088.

Dewly, *adv.* duly, 4006.

Deworyde, *p.p.* devoured, 851.

Deynttely, *adv.* daintily, 2643.

Diamawndis, *s. pl.* diamonds, 3297.

Dictour, *s. spokesman*, 712.

Dighte. *See* Dyghte.

Dischayte, *s. deceit*, 3789.

Discouerours, *s. pl.* scouts, spies, 3117.

Diskoueres, *v. ind. pres. pl.* search, 3119; *imp. pl. 2.* discoueres, 1641.

Disseuere, *v. separate*, 1575; *3 s.* disseuerez, 1978; *pret. disseueride*, 3529.

Disspite, *s. spite*, 3163.

Disspyszede, *p.p.* despised, 269.

Dogge-sone, *s. dog-son*, 1072, 1723.

Dole, 3067, 3299, 3885, Dule, 256, 704, 2777, *s. sorrow.*

Dolefulle, *adj.* sorrowful, 2054.

Dolphyne, *s.* 2054.

Doluene, *p.p.* buried, 975.

Domesdaye, *s. day of judgment*, 1278, 3442.

Doo, *v. do*, 1934, 2322; *2 s. pres. ind.* dosse, 1954; *pl. pres. ind.* dosse, 4333; *p.p.* donne, 1940.

Doubbyd, 48, Doubbyde, 3613, *v. pret.* dubbed.

Douce, *adj.* sweet, pleasant, 1251.

Doughtily, *adv.* valiantly, 1939.

Doughty, 20, Doughty, 1738, 2777, Dowghty, 3798, *adj.* valiant; *superl.* doughtyeste, 219.

Doughtynes, 1563, Doughtynesse, 3884, *s. valour.*

Dout, *v. doubt*, 3061.

Dowbille, *adj.* double, 2834.

Dowblede, *p.p.* doubled, 3609.

Dowblettez, *s. pl.* doublets, 2625.

Dowcherys. *See* Ducherye.

Dowere, *s. dowry*, 3089.

Downkynge, *s. moisture*, 3248.

Dowte, Dowtte, *s. doubt*, 2043, fear, 3225.

Dowtte, *v. fear*, 312.

Dowttouse, *adj.* dreadful, terrible, 3967.

Drafe. *See* Dryffes.

Dragges, *s. pl.* drags, 3615.

Dragouns, *s. pl.* dragons, 1252.

Drawe-brigge, *s.* drawbridge, 2474.

Drawes, *v. 3 s.* draws, proceeds, 1251; *pl.* drawene, 3615; *p.p.* drawene, 3924.

Dreche, *v.* tarry, delay, abide, 1504; *3 s.* dreches, 2940, 4052; *pl.* dreches, 1254, 2154; *pret. drecchede*, 754.

Drechede, *p.p.* troubled, harassed, 811.

"Ac sathanas þe frecche  
þe saule wule drecche,  
Hwan he agult habbeþ."  
*Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 249.*

Drede, *v. dread*, fear, 829, 2235; *pret. dredde*, 20; *p.p.* dredde, 3298.

Drede, *s. dread*, fear, 46, 754.

Dredlesse, Dredlez, *adv.* without doubt, certainly, 1504, 2043, 4053.

Drefene. *See* Dryffes.

Dreghe, *s. duration*, continuance, 2915.

Dreghe, one, *adv.* aside, back, 786, 787, 3968, 4219.

Dreghe, *v.* suffer, endure, 3276, 3437.

Drehely, *adv.* enduringly, continually, 2028.

Dremyd, *impers. v. pret.* 760. Hym dremyd = he dreamed.

Drenschene, *v. inf.* drown, 761.

Drerely, Drerily, *adv.* drearily, 2154, 2969.

Dresce, 550, Dresse, 1072, 2042, 2401, *v.* direct, arrange, adjust, dispose, prepare, array; 3 *s.* dresses, 2026, dresesse, 2833; *pl.* drisses, 2473; *pret.* dressede, 786, 1055, dresside, 579, drissede, 2052, dryssede, 46; *p.p.* dresside, 1252, drissid, 218; dresses vp = rears.

Dreuene, Drife. *See* Dryffes.

Drightene, 4008, Dryghttene, 1278, Dryghtyne, 3799, *s.* the Lord; *gen.* Dryghtyns, 664, Dryghtynez, 1564. A.S. *Drihten.*

Drissede. *See* Dresce.

Dromondaries, *s. pl.* dromedaries, 2286.

Dromowndes, *s. pl.* swift ships, 3615. "Dromon, dromont: Gondole, vaisseau de guerre." *Roquefort.* "Dromones, Naves cursoriae, expediti cursus navigia." *Ducange.*

Droupe, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007. *See* Dare.

Drowghte, *s.* dryness, 3249.

Drowppande, *i. p.* falling, 4053.

Drye, *v.* suffer, 704, 1546, 1632.

Dryffes, *v. pl.* drive, rush, 2757; *pret.* drafte, 787, drife, 3276; *pret. pl.* drewene, 2914; *i. p.* dryfande, 761, 816; *p.p.* drefene, 3224.

Dryghttene. *See* Drightene.

Drynchene, *v. inf.* to drown, 816.

Drynkles, *adj.* drinkless, 4172.

Drynyne, *v. pl.* drink, 2028.

Dryssede. *See* Dresce.

Dubbyde, *p.p.* adcrned, 3609.

Ducherye, *s.* duchy, 2400, 2937; *pl.* ducherés, 1728, ducheryes, 3614, dowcherys, 49.

Duchez, *s.* duchess, 852, 974, 3044.

Duelle, *v. dwell, tarry, abide*, 3067; *pret.* duellede, 3321, duellyde, 219; *i. p.* duelland, 3443; *p.p.* duellyde, 1200.

Dukkes, Dukkez, *s. pl.* dukes, 723, 2029.

Dule. *See* Dole.

Dule-cotes, *s. pl.* mourning garments, 4336.

Dusperes, 66, 1254, Duspers, 145, Dusseperez, 2029, Duzseperez, 723, Duszeperis, 3751, Dusszeperis, 4336, *s. pl.* peers; lit. twelve peers (Fr. douze pairs). Dussepere, *sg.* one of such peers, 2329, 2642.

Duttez. *Read* Dinttez, *s. pl.* strokes, 787.

Dyaperde, *adj.* 3251.

Dyghte, *v. order, arrange, dispose*, 1253; 1 *s.* dyghttes, 2625; *pret.* dyghte, 2970; *p.p.* dyghte, sent, 3066, dressed, 3251, dighte, adorned, 3353.

Dyked, *p.p.* buried, 975.

Dyme, *adj.* dim, 1723.

Dyne, *s.* din, noise, 2031

Dynned, *v. pret.* sounded, resounded, 2031.

Dynnyng, *s.* noise, 2030.

Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s.* stroke, blow; *pl.* dynttez, 1127, dynntys, 332.

Dysfegoures, *v.* 3 *s.* disfigures, 2769.

Dypsens, *s.* spending, 538.

Dyssauyde, *p.p.* deceived, 683.

Dyuerse, *adj.* divers, various, 49, 1935.

Dyuysyde, *v. pret.* divided, distributed, 49, 1389.

Efte, *adv.* again, 470, 529, 2349. A.S. *eft*.

Egerly, 1125, 1148, 1411, 1591, Egyrly, 1499, *adv.* sharply, fiercely.

Egge, 2567, 2958, Eghge, 4194, *s.* edge. A.S. *egc*.

Eghelynge, *adv.* edgewise, 3675.

Eghene, 3790, Eghne, 116, 358, Eughne, 1920, Eyghene, 3985, Eyghne, 1083, 4044, Eyne, 3282, *s. pl.* eyes. A.S. *eágē*, *pl.* *eágān*.

Eghge. *See* Egge.

Egle, *s.* eagle, 2067, 2245.

Egree, *adj.* sharp, eager, 507.

Eke, *conj.* also, 44, 572.

Ekkene, *v. inf.* increase, 2009; *3 s. pres. ind.* ekys, 3965.

Elagere, 2977, is certainly miswritten. The alliteration requires *sl . . . .*; perhaps we ought to read *sleyghte*, skill, dexterity.

Eldare, *adj. comp.* older, 4151.

Elde, *s.* age, 301, old age, 4220. A.S. *yldo*.

Elders, Eldyrs, *s. pl.* ancients, 13, ancestors, 99, 272, 293.

Elfaydes, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, 2288.

Elles, *adv.* else, 1191, 1209, 2020.

Emange, *prep.* among, 375, 1917, 2060. *See* Amange.

Eme, *s.* uncle, 1347. A.S. *edám*.

Enamelde, 2565, 3355, Enamelde, 2027, *p.p.* enamelled.

Enangylles, *v. 3 s.* en-angles, i. e. surrounds by troops formed in an angular figure (?), 3781. Comp. en-circles.

Enarmede, *p.p.* 910.

Enbraces, *v. pl.* put on the arm, 4111; embrassez, 1753; *p.p.* enbrassede, 2459, 2518.

Enbuschement, *s.* ambush, 1407, 3115.

Enbusches, *v. 3 s. pres. ind.* sets in ambush, 1981; *p.p.* enbuschede, 1712, enbuschide, 1403, ambushed.

Enclesside. *Read* Enclossede, enclosed, 2396.

Enclined, 479, Enclinede, 1706, *v. pret.* bowed.

Enclines, *s. pl.* bows, 83.

Enclosez, *v. 3 s.* 1134; *p.p.* enclosede, 4206, enclosyde, 3238.

Encontre, 1320, 1787, Encountire, 3491, Encowntere, 4180, *v. encounter*; *pl.* encounters, 2158; *pret.* encontrede, 1185.

Encorownmentes, *s. pl.* coronations, 4197.

Encroche, *v. seize, obtain*, 3426; *3 s. encrochez*, 1243; *pret.* encrochede, 2036; *p.p.* encrochede, 3525.

Encroyssede, *v. pret.* crossed, 4112.

Endente, 3297, Endenttyd, 2052, *p.p.* endented (Her.).

Enditdede, *v. pret.* indited, composed, 3420.

Endordide, *p.p.* gilt, 199.

Enewe, 2657, Enowe, 504, *adv.* enough.

Enfeblesches, *v. pl. pres.* become weak, 2484.

Enflureschit, *p.p.* flowered, 198.

Enforce, *v. exert*; enforce ȝow, endeavour, 225; enforsse, strengthen, reinforce, 364.

Engenderde, *p.p.* begotten, 843.

Engendure, *s.* begetting, 3743.

Engeynes. *See* Engynes.

Englaymez, 1131, Englaymous, 3684, *v. pl.* render slimy. "Gleymyn", or yngleymyn". *Visco, invisco.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*.

Engowschede, *p.p.* swollen, in-

flated, 2053. "Eugousser : Enfler, grossir." *Roquefort.*

Engrelede, *p.p.* engrailed (Her.), 4182.

Eugynes, 2481, 3036, Engeynes, 2423, *s. pl.* engines.

Engyste, *v.* assign lodgings, 445. "Gister, giter : Assigner un gîte." *Roquefort.*

Enhorilde, *p.p.* surrounded, 3244. See *Enourled* in Alliterative Poems (Reprint), B. 19 and Glossary.

Enis. See Eynes.

Enjoynes, 2897, Enjoynys, 4109, *v. pl.* join in battle; *pret.* enjoynede, 2087.

Enkerly, *adv.* ardently, eagerly, 507, 2066, 2222, 2839.

Emny, Enmye, *s.* enemy, foe, 519, 642, 1952; *pl.* enmyse, 1205, 1240.

Ennelled, *p.p.* enameled, 1294.

Ennoyntede, 50, Ennoynttyle, 101, Enoyntede, 142, Enoynttede, 544, 2447, *p.p.* anointed.

Enowe, *adv.* enough, 504.

Enpeyrede, *p.p.* impaired, damaged, 474.

Enpoysone, *s.* poison, 213.

Ensege, 441, Ensegge, 1337, *v.* besiege; 3 *s.* enseggez, 623; *p.p.* ensegede, 1696.

Enserchede, 3942. *Read* Enserclede, encircled.

Enserches, *v.* 3 *s.* searches, examines, 4311; *pl.* enserches, 2466.

Ensure, *v.* assure, 1689, 2324, 3734.

Entamede, *v. pret.* cut, wounded, 2203; *p.p.* 1160, 2708. "Entamer, entamer, trancher, blesser, léser, enlever l'intégrité." *Burguy.*

Entayllide, *p.p.* entailed, 3542.

Entire, *v.* enter, 1967; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* enteres, 2007, 2387; *pl.* entres, 4309; *pret.* enteride, 2805; *p.p.* entirde, 3448, entrede, 4069, entyrd, 1691.

Enverounes, *v. pl.* environ, surround, 4124; *pret.* enuerounde, went round or about, 2051, 2094; *p.p.* enuerownde, surrounded, 3242.

Enueryde, *p.p.* (?) 1694.

Enuyous, *adj.* 2047.

Enys. See Eynes.

Er, *v. pl.* are, 166.

Erberis, *s. pl.* gardens, 3245.

Ercheuesques, *s. pl.* archbishops, 67.

Ere, *v. pl.* are, 1538, 1582, 2547.

Ere, *adv.* before, 1840.

Erle, *s. earl*, 1659; *pl.* erlez, 1904, erles, 3528, 3933.

Erledoms, *s. pl.* earldoms, 42.

Erles, *s. pl.* earnest, deposit, 2687.

Erne, *s. pl.* ears, 1086.

Ernestly, *adv.* 2838, 2903.

Errawnte, *adj.* arrant, 2895.

Erthe, *s. earth*, 109, 161.

Erthely, *adj.* earthly, 1664, 4169.

Es, *v. 3 s.* is, 16, 88, 89; *pl.* es (= are), 1666, 3448.

Eschape, *v.* escape, 1020, 2957; *pret.* eschappede, 1881, eschappide, 2367; *p.p.* eschapede, 1117, 3576.

Escheffe, *v.* 2301.

Escheue, *v.* attain, 3347; *pret.* escheuede, 3000, eschewede, fell out well, 2956, eschewede, met with good fortune, 1620; *p.p.* escheuyde, 3021, eschewede, 1539, 3027.

Eschewes, *v. 3 s.* draws back, retreats, 1116; *pret.* eschewede, 1881; *imp.* 2 *pl.* eschewes, 1750. "Eschiver, eskiver, escheveir, éviter, fuir, esquier." *Burguy.*

Ese, *s. ease*, 3208.

Este, *adj.* east, 1740, 3210.

Esterne, 1006, Estyre, 554, *s.* Easter.

Etene, *p.p.* eaten, 2716.

Ethenys, 4163, Ethyns, 4122, *s.* *pl.* giants. See *Etayn* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ll. 140, 723. A.S. *éoten*.

Ettylle, *v.* purpose, 554; 3 *s.* ettelles, 520, etles, 3077.

Euene, 2073, Euenne, 4055, Euyne, 78, Evyne, 3596, Ewynne, 3597, Ewene, 762, Ewyne, 618, 1122, Ewynne, 2961, *adv.* even, straight, right, just.

Euensange, 894, Euesange, 900, *s.* evensong, vespers.

Eueriche a, 2037, Euer-ilk a, 212, *adj.* every.

Euylle, *adv.* ill, 1117.

Ewene. See Euene.

Ewyne, *s.* evening, eve, 1006, 1788.

Ewyne, Ewynne. See Euene.

Ewyre, *adv.* ever, 8.

Eye-liddis, *s. pl.* eyelids, 3952.

Eyghene, Eyghne, Eyne. See Eghene.

Eynes, 1283, 2308, Eynez, 1760, Eynis, 2516, Eynys, 1879, Eynyes, 2275, Enis, 2886, 3376, Enys, 3466, *s. pl.* narrow passages, passes. A.S. *enge*, narrow, Germ. *enge*, a narrow passage.

Faa-mene, *s. pl.* foemen, 303.

Fadire, 3432, Fadyr, 112, Fadyre, 1169, *s.* father.

Fadome, *s.* fathom, 1103.

Faees, *s. pl.* foes, 403.

Faghte. See Feghte.

Faire, *adv.* well, 1110, 3247.

Fairely, *adv.* nicely, 954.

Faith, *s.* 1155.

Faithely, Faythely, *adv.* assuredly, 3864, 4031.

Fakene, *v. pl.* coil, 742. “Fake, one of the circles, or windings, of a cable, or hawser, as it lies disposed in the coil. . . . The fakes are greater or smaller in proportion to the extent of space which a cable is allowed to occupy where it lies.” Falconer’s *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney. Sc. *faik*, a fold (*Jamieson*).

Falle, *v.* betide, 1006; 3 *s.* falles, belongs, 2480.

Falow, *adj.* pale, 1402.

Falowede, *p.p.* turned pale, 3954.

Fals, *adj.* false, 1307.

Falsede, 3918, Falssede, 2860, *s.* falsehood, error.

Falterede, *v. pret.* quivered, 1092.

Fande. See Fynde.

Fande, 557, 867, 984, Fannde, 656, *v.* endeavour. See Fonde.

Fannge, *v.* seize, take, receive, 425; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fangez, 1005, 1249. See Fongene.

Fare, *v.* go, 3581; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fares, proceeds, behaves, 788.

Fare, *s.* journey, course, 393.

Fare-waye, *s.* course, 1357.

Farlande, *s.* foreland, 880, 984, 1188.

Farly. See Ferly.

Faucetez, *s. pl.* taps, 205.

Faughte, Faughtte, Fawghte. See Feghte.

Fawcone, 788, Fawkone, 4003, *s.* falcon; *pl.* fawcouns, 925.

Fawe, *adj.* variegated, particoloured, 747. A.S. *sfuh*.

Fawnelle, 2765. *Read* Fawuelle, *s.* a horse of a yellowish chesnut colour. “Fauvel, fauvau, fauvelle: De couleur rousse, fauve, tirant sur le jaune, *flavus, fulvus*.” *Roquefort*.

Fawntkyne, 2440, 2736, *s.* little child, baby; *pl.* fawntekyns, 845.

Fawte, *s.* lack, 160, fault, 2737.

Fax, *s.* hair, 1078. A.S. *feax*.

Fay, *adj.* fated to die, dead, 394, 438, 971, 3828; *fey*, 121, 517, *feye*, 2847.

Fay, Faye, *s.* faith, 2842, 2860, 3073.

Fayfully, *adv.* faithfully, 1715.

Fayled, 3308, looks like a mistake through confounding this line with the next; *qu. faldede*, folded.

Fayne, *adj.* glad, 1160.

Faythefully, *adv.* 1345, 1735, 1913.

Faythely. *See* Faithely.

Feble, *adj.* weak, bad, 226, 2929.

Fecchede, *v. pret.* fetched, 169; *p.p.* *fechede*, 111, *fechye*, 437.

Feedde, *p.p.* fed, 2492.

Feele. *See* Felde.

Feeemene, *s. pl.* herdmen, keepers of cattle, 2488. A.S. *feoh*, cattle.

Feghte, 367, 1715, *Fyghte*, 1345, 1735, *v. fight*; 3 *s. feghtys*, 789, *fyghtez*, 2091; *pl. feghtes*, 1495, *feghtcz*, 2163, *feghtene*, 2555; *pret. faghte*, 1174, *faughte*, 2164, *faughtte*, 1898, *fawghte*, 2799; *i. p. feghtande*, 4257, *fyghtande*, 4066, 4121; *p.p. foghtene*, 3019, *foughtene*, 1535, *foughtene*, 2365.

Feghte, *s. fight*, 4254.

Fegure, *s. figure, shape*, 781, 3301.

Fekille, *adj.* false, 2860.

Felde, 972, 985, *Feelde*, 1432, *s. field*.

Fele, *adj.* many, 845, 1247, 1496.

Fele, *v. hide, conceal*, 3237. *See felen in Stratmann.* O.N. *fela*, M. Goth. *filhan*.

Fele, *v. feel; pret. felede*, 1874.

Feletez, 1158, *Felettes*, 2174, 4237, *s. pl. fillets*.

Felewes, *v. pl. follow*, 2758.

Feleyghes, *s. pl. felly, circumference of a wheel*, 3308. A.S. *felge*.

Felle, *s. skin*, 1081. A.S. *fell*.

Felle, *s. mountain*, 2489, 2509.

Felle, *v. fell*, 1139; 3 *s. fellez*, 1247; *p.p. fellide*, 1851, *fellde*, 2376.

Felle, *adj. fierce, cruel, severe*, 1401, 2769.

Felly, *adv. fiercely*, 2141.

Feloweze, *s. pl. fellows, companions*, 1381.

Felschene, *v. inf. (?) renovate*, 1975. Halliwell has "Felsch. To renovate a hat."

Fende, *s. fiend, devil*, 871, 954; *pl. fendez*, 843.

Fente, *s. (?)* 4249.

Fenyste, *p.p. finished*, 4254.

Ferant, 2259, *Feraunte*, 1811, 2140, *Ferawnt*, 2451, *adj. seemly*.

Fercosteze, *s. pl. ships of some kind*, 743. "Farkost, *Navis*." *Venerius*, under the word *Kost*. *See Farcost and Fercost in Jamieson*.

Ferde, *p.p. afraid*, 403, 526, 3227; *s. fear*, 1875, 3069.

Ferdnesse, *s. fear*, 121, 2258.

Fere, *s. fear*, 3918.

Fere, *s. companion; pl. feres*, 1608, *ferez*, 1789, *feris*, 1578, *ferys*, 2126. A.S. *gesera*.

Fere, 1232. *See Ferre*.

Fere, *adj. sound, unhurt*, 2796, 3017.

Ferke, *v. move, go*, 984, 1037; *ferke*, 4152; 3 *s. ferkez*, 933, 949; *inf. ferkene*, 3907; *i. p. ferkand*, 1452, *ferkande*, 2452.

Ferly, 2842, *Ferlyche*, 925, *adj. strange*.

Ferly, 2440, 2947, *Farly*, 2485, *s. strange thing, wonder*.

Fermes, 425, *Fermez*, 1005, *s. pl. rents, tribute*.

Fermysone, *s. (?) some kind of sauce*, 180.

Ferre, *adj. far, distant*, 3547; *fere*,

1232; *be ferre* = *by far*, 1176; *comp.* *ferrere*, further, 1496, 3068, 4237; *superl.* *ferreste*, furthest, 2741.

Ferrers, *s.* a kind of wine, 2714.

Ferriours, 2752. *Read Forriours, foragers.*

Ferrome, *adj.* far, foreign, 3578; *o ferrome* = afar, 856, 934, 2100.

Fers, 2161, *Ferse*, 1451, 1537, *adj.* fierce.

Fersely, 1115, 3402, *Fersly*, 1118, *adv.* fiercely.

Fersenesse, *s.* fierceness, 3826.

Ferthe, *adj.* fourth, 3412.

Ferthynges, *s. pl.* round spots, 3472.

Feryne, *adj.* far, foreign, 3711.

Ferynne, *s.* fern, 1875.

Ferys. *See Fere.*

Fesantez, 925, *Fesauntez*, 198, *s. pl.* pheasants.

Fesede, *p.p.* worried, 2842.

Feste, *adj.* fast, 2142.

Festenesse, *v. 3 s.* fastens, 1118; *pl.* *festenez*, 934.

Fetche, *v.* 1188.

Feteled, *p.p.* fettled, set in order, 2149.

Fetheris, *s. pl.* feathers, 2098.

Fette, *v.* fetch, 557.

Fettede, *p.p.* fitted, ordered, arrayed, 4067. *See Fitt.*

Feuerȝere, *s.* February, 436.

Fewle, *s.* fowl, bird, 2071; *pl.* *feulez*, 926.

Fewtee, *s.* fealty, 112.

Fewtere, 1791, *Fewtire*, 1769, *Fewtyre*, 1366, *s.* rest for a lance.

Fewters, *v. 3 s.* lays in rest, 3775; *p.p.* *fewteride*, 1711, *fewtrede*, 1756, with spears in rest.

Fey. *See Fay.*

Feyede, *v. pret.* cleansed, wiped, 1114.

Feyne, (?) foin, 1734.

Feyne = fine, *v. cease*, 1147.

Feyne, *v.* feign, 1913.

Feynte, *adj.* faint, 1874.

Feyntly, *adv.* faintly, 1734.

ff. Words beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F*.

Fichene, *v. pl.* fix, pierce, 2098; *pret.* *fichede*, 4239.

Fif, *adj.* five, 1756.

Fifte, *adj.* fifth, 3306.

Fillez, 1402, *Fillis*, 1038, *v. 3 s.* fills; *p.p.* *fillede*, satisfied, 1032.

Filsnez, *v. 3 s.* lurks, 881. Compare "Fylskni, *Latibulum*." *Verelius.*

Filterede, 1078, 2149, *Filtyrde*, 780, *p.p.* matted, mixed.

Firthe, *s.* wood, 1708, 2144.

Fische-halle, *adj.* sound as a fish, 2709.

Fitt, *v.* fit, set in order, array, 2139; *3 s.* *fittes*, 1989, *fittez*, 1755, 2072; *p.p.* *fittyde*, 2455.

Flammande, *i. p.* flaming, resplendent, 198.

Flappes, *v.* strikes, 2781.

Flawez, 773, *Flawes*, 2556, *s. pl.* blasts, gusts.

Flawmande, *i. p.* flaming, 945, 1975, flashing, 1365, 1494.

Flawmez, *v. 3 s.* flames, 1037; *pl.* *flawmes*, 2556.

Flawnke, *s.* flank, 1158, 2174; *pl.* *flawnkkes*, 2100.

Flay, *v.* frighten, terrify, 2779; *p.p.* *flayede*, 2441.

Flayre, *s.* flame, 772.

Flede. *See Flee.*

Flee, *v.* 2021; *pret.* *fleede*, 494, 1432, 2729, *flede*, 3236; *p.p.* *flede*, 2488.

Fleete, *v.* float, 803 ; *pret.* fletyde, 3602.

Flemede, 2738, Flemede, 1155, *p.p.* banished.

Flemesche, *adj.* Flemish, 743.

Flenges, *v.* 3 *s.* flings, 2762.

Fleryande, *i. p.* gibing, scoffing, 1088, 2778. *Sc. sneer.*

Flesche, *s.* 1160, 2099.

Fleschez, *v. pl.* flit about, 926.

Flete, *s.* fleet, 1189.

Fleterede, *p.p.* (?) fitted for flight, 2097.

Flethe, *s.* (?) 2482.

Flieghes, *v.* 3 *s.* flies, 4002.

Flitt, *v.* shoot (with arrows), 2097.

Flode, *s.* flood, 773, 803, 1189.

Floke, *s.* flock, company, 2849.

Floke - mowthede, *adj.* fluke-mouthed, having a mouth like a flat fish, 2779.

Flones, 3619, Flonez, 2097, *s. pl.* arrows. A.S. *flá, flán.*

Florenez, *s. pl.* florins, 885.

Flores, *s. pl.* fields, plains, 2694, 3249.

Floresche, *v.* flower, flourish, 2555 ; *pret.* floreschede, 3246 ; *p.p.* flor-eschede, 771, 1708, 3472, flor-eschte, 924, 1366.

Flour, *s.* flower, 1709, 1990 ; *pl.* flourez, 970.

Flourdelice, *s.* lily-flower, 3333.

Flowe, *v. pret.* flew, 772, 2100.

Floynes, *s. pl.* a kind of small ships, 743. A. Jal in his *Glossaire Nautique* gives "Flouin. Nom d'un petit navire ponté qui pouvait naviguer à la voile et à l'aviron."

Flude, *s.* flood, 494.

Fluke, *s.* flounder, or other flat fish, 1088.

Fluriste, *p.p.* flowered, 180.

Flyeande, *i. p.* flying, 2451.

Flyngande, *i. p.* flinging, dashing along, 2757.

Flyschande, *i. p.* slashing, 2141.

Flysches, *v.* slashes, cuts, 2768.

Flyttinge, *s.* shooting (with arrows), 2099.

Foddened, *p.p.* produced, 3246.

Foghtene. *See* Feghte.

Folde, 315, 2151, Foulde, 1071, Fowlde, 3302, *s.* earth.

Fole, *s.* foal, 449, 2783.

Folily, *adv.* foolishly, 2841.

Folowes, *v.* 3 *s.* follows, 1118 ; *pl.* folous, 1360.

Fomand, 3307, Fomande, 2233, Fomannde, 780, *i. p.* foaming.

Fome, *s.* foam, 1079.

Fonde. *See* Fynde.

Fonde, 3370, (miswritten) Fonode, 205, *v. try.*

Fondene. *See* Fynde.

Fongene, *v. pres. pl.* take, 2799 ; fongez, 2753 ; *pret.* fongede, seized, 3308.

Fonode. *See* Fonde.

Foo, *s.* foe, 1536, 3395.

Foode, *s.* offspring, child, person, 3776.

Foomene, *s. pl.* foemen, 3020.

Foonde, *v.* go, 366, 2489.

Forbere, *v.* forbear, 1913.

Forbrittenede, *p.p.* cut up, slaughtered, 2273.

Forchipe, *s.* foreship, 3678.

Forcyere, *adj. comp.* stronger, 1176.

Fordremyde, *p.p.* wearied by dreaming, 3392.

Fore, *prep.* for, 256 ; *conj.* for, 1179.

Fore-breste, *s.* front, 1494, 1990.

Fore-brustene, *p.p.* burst, 2272.

Foregyffe. *See* Forgyffe.

Forejustyde. *See* Forjuste.

Forelytenede, *p.p.* lessened, 254.

Fore-magledede, *p.p.* mangled, 1534. *Sc. magil, maigil*, to mangle (*Jamieson*).

Forestayne, *s.* prow of a ship, 742.

Foretoppe, *s.* forehead, 1078.

Fore-trauaillede, *p.p.* fatigued, 806.

Forfette, *v.* forfeit, 557; *p.p.* forfeitede, 1155.

Forfoughtene, *p.p.* wearied with fighting, 3792, 4179.

Forgyffe, 3488, Foregyffe, 4324, *v.* forgive; *p.p.* forgeffene, 2184.

Forheuede, *s.* forehead, 1080.

Forjuste, 2895, Forjustede, 2088, 2134, 2908, Forejustyde, 1398, *p.p.* overcome in a joust, defeated.

Formaylle, *s.* female hawk, 4003.

Forraye, *v.* forage, 2489; 3 *s.* forrayse, 1247; *pret.* forrayede, 3017.

Forreours, *s.* *pl.* foragers, 2450, 2901.

Forsake, *v.* refuse, 1686, 2734, deny, 1945, 4142.

Forsesy, *adj.* strong, powerful, 3300, 3307.

Forsett, 2012, 2018, Forsette, 1714, 1896, 1979, Foresett, 2161, *p.p.*

Forsterne, *s.* forepart of the stern, 3664.

Fortethe, *s.* front teeth, 1089.

Forthermaste, *adv.* first, 1365.

Forthes, 2827, Forthis, 1850, *v.* 3 *s.* proceeds.

For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172, Fore-thy, 3009, Fore-thi, 3346, *adv.* therefore.

Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340, *adv.* further.

Forthire, *v.* afford, furnish, 300, 1509.

Forthirmaste, *adj.* first, 3330.

For-thynkkes, 4252, For-thynkys, 971, *impers. v.* repents; *me f.* = I regret, repent.

Fortrodyne, *p.p.* trampled, 2150.

Fote, 801, 1079, Fott, 4058, Fotte, 933, 1855, *s.* foot.

Fote-mene, *s. pl.* infantry, 1989.

Foughtene, Foughtene. *See* Feghte.

Foulde. *See* Folde.

Found, 452, Founde, 495, 1189, *v.* go, proceed; *pl.* fowndes, 3112, fowndys, 2756; *pret.* foundide, 1442.

Foundene, Foundyne. *See* Fynde.

Fourmede, *v. pret.* formed, 3808; *p.p.* 781, 861, 1061.

Fourte, *adj.* fourth, 3300.

Fourtedele, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 946.

Fowlde. *See* Folde.

Fowle, *s.* bird, 4002.

Fowly, *adv.* foully, 1089.

Fowndene. *See* Fynde.

Fowndes. *See* Found.

Foyle, *s.* leaf, 2704.

Foynes, *v. pl.* fence, thrust, 1494, 2141, 2163; *pret.* foynede, 1898.

Fra, *prep.* from, 47, 591.

Fraisez, 1248. *Read* Frayes, terifies.

Fraiste, Frayste, *v.* try, test, 435, 881, 3395; 3 *s.* fraystez, 1227; *p.p.* fraistede, 2774.

Fraknede, *adj.* freckled, 1081.

Franche, *adj.* French, 1250.

Fransye, *s.* frenzy, 3826.

Frappe, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548, *s.* company, troop.

Frappez, *v. 3 s.* smites, 1115.

Fraunenez, *s.* liberty, 1248.  
 Frawghte, *p.p.* laden, freighted, 3547.  
 Frawnke, *s.* enclosure, 3247.  
 Frayede, *p.p.* frightened, 2260.  
 Fraynes, 507, Frayne, 337, 954, 1441, *v. 3 s.* asks, inquires.  
 Frayste. *See* Fraiste.  
 Fre, Free, *adj.* noble, 1711, 3247.  
 Frechely, *adv. (?)* boldly, *(?)* freshly, 3691.  
 Freely, 3330, Frely, 970, Freliche, 2488, 3371, 3808, *adj.* noble.  
 Freely, *adv.* 2072, 2140.  
 Freke, *s.* man, fellow, 557, 873, 973; *pl.* frakes, 742, frekkes, 1360, frykis, 2898.  
 Freke, 2759, 2821, Frekk, 2139, Frekke, 2454, *adj.* bold; *superl.* frekkest, 1536, 2164.  
 Frekly, 1360, 1451, Frekkly, 3927, *adv.* boldly.  
 Freliche, Frely. *See* Freely, *adj.*  
 Fremdly, 2738, Fremedly, 1250, Fremydly, 3405, *adv.* strangely.  
 Fremmede, *adj.* strange, foreign, 3343.  
 Frenchepe, *s.* friendship, 656.  
 Frendez, *s. pl.* friends, 1442.  
 Frendely, *adj.* friendly, 3343.  
 Frendles, *adj.* friendless, 3305.  
 Freschely, 1367, 1441, Frescheliche, 4249, Frescly, 2097, Freschelyche, 2900, *adv.* freshly, briskly, vigorously.  
 Freschene, *v.* refresh, 1452.  
 Fresclyche, *adj.* fresh, 2502.  
 Fresone, *s. (?)* Friesland horse, 1365.  
 Fretene, *p.p. (?)* adorned, 2142. A.S. *frætwian*, to adorn.  
 Frette, *p.p. (?)* rubbed, 2708. Fr. *frotter*, to rub.  
 Fretted, *p.p.* 1364.  
 Fretyne, *p.p.* devoured, 844.  
 Frithez, *s. pl.* woods, forests, 924.  
 Frithed, *p.p.* wooded round, hemmed in with forest, hedged, 3247. Occurs in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Text B, v. 590.  
 Fro, *prep.* from, 3, 376, 1138.  
 Fromonde, *s. (?)* 1112.  
 Froske, *s.* frog, 1081. A.S. *frosc*.  
 Frount, 1080, Frounte, 1711, 1756, Frownte, 2455, Frunt, 1112, Fronte, 1495, *s.* brow, forehead, front.  
 Frountere, 2861, Frowntere, 2898, *s.* front of an army.  
 Frowarde, *adj.* perverse, 3345.  
 Froyte, *s.* fruit, 2492, 2707; *pl.* froytez, 3246.  
 Frumentee, *s.* a dish made of wheat and various other things, 180. See the recipe in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 7.  
 Frunt. *See* Frount.  
 Frusche, *s.* dash, charge, swift attack, 2900.  
 Fruschene, *v. pl.* dash, smite, 2804. "Froisser, fuisser, écraser, froisser, briser." *Burguy*.  
 Frykis. *See* Freke, *s.*  
 Frysthez, 1248. *Read* Frythez, spares.  
 Frythes, *v. pl.* spare, 2159; *imp.* 2 *pl.* 1734; *p.p.* frythede, 656.  
 Fude, *s.* food, 160, 2486.  
 Fulfile, *v.* fill up, 3438.  
 Fulle, *adv.* foul, 1154, 2436.  
 Fulsomeste, *adj.* foulest, 1061.  
 Fundene. *See* Fynde.  
 Furlange, *s.* furlong, 873, 946, 1538.  
 Furthe, *adv.* forth, 262, 632, 1229.  
 Furthe, *s.* path, ford, 1227, 1525, 1714, 1897, 2144.

Fute, *s.* foot, 461.

Fyche, *v.* fix, 2162.

Fyfe, *adj.* five, 844, 856.

Fyfte, *adj.* fifth, 3414.

Fyghtande. *See* Feghte.

Fygured, *p.p.* 2151.

Fylede, *p.p.* defiled, 978.

Fylth, *s.* foul lust, 1032, 1071.

Fynle, *v.* find; *pl.* fyndez, 1357; *pret.* fande, 1160, fonde, 2775; *p.p.* fundene, 1176, fondene, 675, 808, foundene, 92, 163, foundyne, 435, fowndene, 3339.

Fyrthe, *v.* spare, 3370.

Fyrthe, *s.* wood, forest, 1409, 1850, 1875, 1897, 2159.

Fysnamye, 1114, Fyssnamy, 3331, *s.* physiognomy, face.

Gaddles, 3621, Gaddys, 3683, *s.* *pl.* goads, pricks.

Gaderide, *p.p.* gathered, 3295; *pret.* gadyrede, 594.

Gadlynges, 2443, 2728, Gad-lyngez, 2854, Gedlynges, 2884, *s.* *pl.* fellows, worthless fellows.  
"So is mony gedelyng,  
godlyche on horse,  
and is þeyh lutel wurþ;  
wlonk bi þe glede,  
and vuel at þare neode."

*The Proverbs of Alfred*, Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 264.

A.S. *gædeling*, companion.

Gafe, *v. pret.* gave, 2628, gavest, 1018; *gaffe*, gave, 85.

Galaye, *s.* galley, 3724; *pl.* galays, 3096.

Galede, *v. pret.* sang, 927. A.S. *galan*.

Galte, *s.* swine, 1101.

Galyarde, *adj.* gay, 721, 1265, 1279. Fr. *gaillard*.

Gamene, *s.* game, sport, 2811; *pl.* gamnes, 1730, 3174.

Ganggynge, *s.* going, 706.

Gardwynes, *s. pl.* guerdons, rewards, 1729.

Garette, *s.* watch-tower, 562, 3104.

"þe garettes oboven þe yhates  
bryght  
Of þe ceté of heven, I lyken þus  
ryght,  
Tylle þe garettes of a ceté of gold,  
þat wroght war, als I before told,  
Of fyne curalle and rych rubys,  
And of other stanes of gret  
prys . . ." *Hampole's Prické of Conscience*, ll. 9101-9106.

Garneschit, 722, Garnescht, 563, 1000, *p.p.* garnished, furnished.

Garnisone, 3105, Garnysone, 2471, 2655, Garysone, 3007, *s.* garrison.

Garte. *See* Gere.

Gas. *See* Goo.

Gate, *s.* going, 4144, road, 4308.

Gayliche, Gaylyche, *adv.* gaily, 913, 2655, 3462, 3684.

Gayne, *v.* avail, 165; *3 s.* gaynes, 4303; *pl.* gaynez, 1731.

Gayneste, *adj.* nearest, 487, 1041, 3006.

Gayspande, *i. p.* gasping, 1462.

Geant, 3410, Geante, 2889, Gy-aunt, 1122, 1222, *s.* giant; *pl.* geauntez, 375, gyawntis, 2908.

Gedlynges. *See* Gadlynges.

Gedyre, *v.* gather, 592.

Gemows, *s. pl.* hinges, 2893.  
"Gymowe of a sperynge. *Vertinella, gemella.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*. See Way's notes on this word.

Genatours, *s. pl.* riders on jennets, light horsemen, 2897. "Génetaire, génesteur, gênète, génitaire : Sorte de cavalier, suivant Philippe de Commines." "Genitaires : Cavalcrie légère." *Roquefort*.

Gentille, *adj.* gentle, well-born, &c., 987, 1161, 2088; *superl.* gentileste, 862.

Genyuers, *s. pl.* (?) 375.

Gere, *v.* make, cause, 3640; *3 s.* gers, 3572, 3921; *pret.* garte, 1886, 3709, gerte, 1780, 1946, 1975; gerte kepe hym = caused him to be kept.

Gere, *s.* gear, tackle, 2539, 3008.

Gerefawcone, *s.* gerfalcon, 4004.

Gers. *See* Gere, *v.*

Gersoms, *s. pl.* treasures, 165, 1729.

Gerte. *See* Gere, *v.*

Gessenande, (?) 2521.

Gesserawnte, 2892, Jesseraunt, 904, Jesserawnte, 4238; *s.* coat of jazeran; *pl.* gesserawntes, 2909. "Jazeran. Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazerino, being made of overlapping plates of iron riveted on canvas covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.* "Jaserant, jazerant, . . . cotte de petites mailles." *Burguy.*

Gestes, *s. pl.* stories, 2876.

Gettlesse, *adj.* without getting anything, 2727.

Getyne, *p.p.* gotten, 886.

Ghywes, *s. pl.* gyves, fetters, 3621.

Gife, 2630, Giffe, 2632, *conj. if.*

Gife, 1179, Giff, 1060, Giffe, 2321, *v. give*; *p.p.* gifene, 1729.

Girde, *v.* smite, 3709; *3 s.* girdez, 1792, gyrdes, 1370, gyrdez, 1470, gyrdis, 2563; *pret.* gyrd, 2971; *p.p.* girde, 3938.

Girdille, Girdylle, *s.* girdle, 3458, 3923.

Girse, *s.* grass, 3944.

Gladchipe, *s.* gladness, 59, 928.

Gladdez, 2883, Gladdis, 2852, *v. 3 s.* gladdens, encourages; *pl.* gladdene, 928.

Glade, *adj.* glad, 1386.

Glade. *See* Glydez.

Glauerande, *i. p.* talking foolishly, 2538.

Glayfe, *s.* 3761. "Glaive. A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff. . . ." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.*

Gledys, *s. pl.* sparks, live coals, 117.

Glent, *s.* stroke, 3863.

Glentes, 4244, Glentis, 2563, Glenttys, 2780, *v. 3 s.* glances, glides.

Gleterande, *i. p.* glittering, 595, 1280, 2853.

Gliftis, 3949, Glyftes, 2525, *v. 3 s.* looks.

Gloppynyng, *s.* fright, amazement, 3863.

Glopyne, *v.* terrify, 2580, be terror-struck, *3 s.* glopyns, 3949; *pret.* glopnede, 1074; *imp. pl. 2.* gloppyns, 2853; *i. p.* gloppynnande, 4329.

Glorede, *v. pret.* stared, 1074.

Glotone, *s.* glutton, 1074.

Glydez, *v. 3 s.* glides, 1371; *pret.* glade, 2972; *i. p.* glydande, 799.

Glyftes. *See* Gliftis.

Gobbede, *adj.* full of gab or derision, 1346. *Sc. gabbed*, loquacious.

Gobelets, *s. pl.* glove-ornaments of some kind, perhaps little cups, 913. Compare *Gobelot de gland* = acorn-cup. (*Roquefort.*)

Gobone, *v. (?)* 4164.

Gode, *adj.* good, 3476.

Gole, *s.* 3725. "A ditch or small stream." *Halliwell.*

Golet, *s.* gullet, 1772.

Gome, 85, 1209, Gume, 3409, *s.* man; *pl.* gomes, 1461, gomys, 3683, 3684. *A.S. guma.*

Goo, *v.* go, 213, 1279; *3 s.* gas, 3006, gos, 3727, gosse, 3104; *pl.* gosse, 497; *imp.* 2 *pl.* gose, 1266.

Gorge, *s.* throat, 3760.

Gorgere, *s.* gorget, piece of armour for the throat, 1772.

Gorre, *s.* gore, 1130, 1370.

Gos, Gose. *See* Goo.

Gosesomere, *s.* gossamer, 2687.

Gosse. *See* Goo.

Gossehawk, *s.* goshawk, 4001.

Gouernour, *s.* 1201.

Gowces. *Read* Gowtes, drops, spots, 3759.

Gowke, *s.* cuckoo, 927. A.S. *geac.*

Gowles, 3646, 3759, Gowles, 3945, *s.* gules (Her.).

Gracious, *adj.* 187.

Grame, *s.* anger, 1077, 3008. A.S. *grama.*

Granes, *v.* groans, 2562.

Grape, *v.* grope, search, 2725.

Grassed, *p.p.* fattened, fat, 1091.

Grauene, *p.p.* engraved, 3462.

Graunt, 2820, Graunted, 1202, *p.p.* granted.

Grayhondes. *See* Grehownde.

Graynes, *s. pl.* 913, 3463.

Graythe, *v.* make ready, prepare, equip, 1279, convey, 4303, proceed, hasten, go, 1266; *3 s.* graythes, goes, 1353, 1384, 3761; *p.p.* graythede, equipped, 589, 602, graythide, 373.

Graythelyche, 722, Graythely, 1369, 1384, 1387, Graythly, 1000, *adv.* readily, speedily.

Graytheste, *adj.* readiest, promptest, 1201.

Gre, 2748, Gree, 1936, 2645, *s.* will, pleasure.

Gree, *s.* (degree) ascendancy, 3706, 4298.

Grees, *s.* grease time, the time when deer are fat and fit for killing, 658. *See* Grease in Halliwell.

Greesse-growene, *adj.* grown over with fat, 1101.

Grefe, 1077, Greefe, 1471, 2562, Greffe, 3007, 4324, *s.* grief, anger, vexation, pain, sorrow.

Grefe, *v.* grieve, 705; *p.p.* grefede, hurt, 1282, greffede, 1463. *See* Greue.

Grefes. *See* Greue, *s.*

Grehownde, 3464, Grewhounde, 1075, Grewhownde, 4001, *s.* grayhound; *pl.* grewhoundez, 1730, grayhondes, 2521.

Grekkes, *adj.* Greek, 594.

Grene, *adj.* green, 1266, 1281.

Grennede, *v. pret.* grinned, showed his teeth, 1075.

Gresse, *s.* grass, 1131.

Gret, 256, Grete, 207, Grett, 1, 165, Grette, 539, *adj.* great; *comp.* gretter, 3243; *superl.* gretteste, 1469.

Grete, *v.* greet, 1282; *3 s.* gretez, 1077; *pl.* gretes, 1233; *pret.* grette, 84, 3476.

Grete, *v.* weep; *3 s.* gretes, 2962; *pret.* grette, 3790; *i. p.* gretand, 951, 3912.

Gredez, *v.* 1774. Qu. gredez, calls.

Greue, *s.* grove, 2540; *pl.* greues, 1874, greuez, 927, grefes, 2881.

Greue, *v.* grieve, vex, annoy; *pret.* greuyde, was vexed, 1352; *p.p.* greuede, 134, 266, 1173, greuyde, 1022.

Grehownde, Grewhounde. *See* Grehownde.

Gripe, *v.* seize, gripe, grasp, 3008; *3 s.* grypes, 1163, 2526, gryppes, 1369.

Grisely, 3105, Grysly, 1075, Grisely, 951, Grieslye, 1469, Gry[s]-lych, 1101, *adj.* horrible, grisly.

Grisely, 1462, 3950, Gryselly, 3912, Gryselyche, 1373, *adv.* horribly.

Groffe, 3850, Grouffe, 3944, Growffe, 3869, *s.* On *g.* = flat, sprawling.

Grome, *s.* groom, 2526, 3489.

Gronande, *i. p.* groaning, 1373, 3938.

Grouche. *See* Gruche.

Grouffe. *See* Groffe.

Groundene, 1371, 2972, Grown-dene, 1281, Grundyne, 1461, *p.p.* ground, sharpened.

Growffe. *See* Groffe.

Growndene. *See* Groundene.

Gruche, 706, 2644, Grouche, 2819, *v.* be dissatisfied, grudge; *pret.* gryehgide, 2557; *i. p.* grucchande, 1076, 1353, 1462.

Grundyne. *See* Groundene.

Grychgide. *See* Gruche.

Gryeslye. *See* Grisely.

Gryffoune, *s.* griffin, 3869.

Grygynge, *s.* (graying) dawn, 2510.

Grylych, 1101. *Read* Gryslych, and *see* Grisely.

Gryme, *adj.* grim, 3621, 3760; *superl.* grymmeste, 3419.

Grymly, *adv.* grimly, fiercely, 1471, 2558, 3813.

Grypes, Gryppes. *See* Gripe.

Grysely, Gryselyche, Grysly. *See* Grisely.

Guchede. *Read* Guthede = goutted, goutté, bedropped, spotted, 3937.

Gud, 2851, 2853, Gude, 559, 563, *adj.* good.

Gudes, 295, Gudez, 1213, 1249, *s. pl.* goods.

Gudly, *adv.* well, 677, 3005.

Gumbaldes, *s. pl.* (?) dainties, 187.

Gume. *See* Gome.

Guschez, *v. pl.* gush, 1130.

Guttes, 1130, Guttez, 1370, *s. pl.* guts.

Guyte, *s.* child, 2963. *See* Get and Gyte in Jamieson.

Gwerdones, 4277, Gwerddouns, 2820, *s. pl.* guerdons, rewards.

Gyaunt, Gyawntis. *See* Geant.

Gydes, *v.* 3 *s.* guides, 3005.

Gydes, *s. pl.* guides, 3006.

Gye, *v. guide*, 4; *pret.* gyede, 3860.

Gyf, 3058, Gyfe, 1598, Gyffe, 4, *v.* give; 3 *s.* gyffes, 1774; *p.p.* gyfene, 4277, gyffene, 1202; gyffes = makes account of, 539.

Gyrd, Gyrdes, &c. *See* Girde.

Haa, *int.* 133.

Habite, *s.* dress, 3917.

Habydes, *v.* 3 *s.* abides, waits for, 596; *pl.* habyddez, remain, 1431.

Hade. *See* Hafe.

Hafe, 252, 286, Haffe, 1616, *v.* have; 2 *s.* has, 100, 140, hase, 1805; 3 *s.* has, 846; *pl.* has, 12, 369; *pret.* hade, 26, 52.

Hailsez, *v.* 3 *s.* greets, salutes, 1058.

Hakenayes, 484, Hakkenays, 2284, Haknays, 734, *s. pl.* hackneys.

Halde, *v.* hold, 424; 3 *s.* haldes, 64, haldez, 1135; *pret.* helde, 1196; *p.p.* haldene, 387, 1456.

Hale, *v.* draw, haul, 748.

Hale, 1260, 2108, Halle, 2651, *adj.* whole.

Halely, 764, Hally, 1001, 1085, Holly, 748, *adv.* wholly, entirely.

Halfe, *s.* half, part, side; *pl.* halves, 1853, halfez, 1979, halues, 1966, 3530.

Halowes, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, hollas, 3319.

Hals, *s.* neck, throat, 764; *pl.* halses, 4120, halsez, 1798.

Haly, 297, 309, Holy, 348, *adj.*  
 Hame-holde, *adj.* domestic, 1843.  
     See *Hamald* in Jamieson.

Hanche, 1100, 1119, Haunche, 1157, *s.* haunch.

Handez, *s. pl.* hands, 1137.

Handlez, *v. pl.* handle, feel, 1156.

Handsomere, *adj. comp.* more handy, 2128.

Hannde-bredē, *s.* handbreadth, 2229.

Hansemane, *s.* henchman, page, 2662; *pl.* hansemene, 2743. See *Hensemān* in Jamieson.

Hape, 1937, Happe, 2446, *s. hap.*  
 Happe, *v.* have good fortune, succeed, 2630.

Happene, *v.* 1269, obtain, 3433; *p.p.* hapnede, happened, 1154, 3304.

Happy, *adj.* fortunate, 1741, 2974.

Happyngē, *s.* good fortune, success, 3958.

Harageous, *adj.* 1645, 1742, 1834, 2248, violent, stormy. (Wright.)

Harawde, 2294, 3029, Hawrawde, 3013, *s.* herald.

Harbergage, *s.* quarters, 2475.

Hardare, *adj. comp.* harder, 4194.

Harde. See *Here*, *v.*

Hardly, *adv.* closely, 1084.

Hardynes, *s.* boldness, courage, 3959.

Hare, *s.* hair, 1001.

Hare, *s.* 2504.

Harlotte, *s.* ribald, rascal, low fellow, 2446; *pl.* harlottez, 2743. Not used in the modern sense.

Harmes, 2437, Harmez, 1842, *v. 3 s.* harms.

Harnayse, *s.* armour, 2629.

Harrawnte, *v. (?)* 2449.

Harske, *adj.* harsh, hard, 1084.

Has, Hase. See *Hafe*.

Hastyly, *adv.* hastily, quickly, 167.

Hathelle, *adj.* noble, 358, 1659, 1662; *superl.* hatheldest, 988, hathelieste, 2109.

Hawberke, *s.* hauberk, coat of mail, 1156, 2078, 2552. Ger. *halsberg*.

Hawe, *s. (?)* 3704.

Hawle, *s.* hall, 3879.

Hawrawde. See *Harawde*.

Hawtayne, *adj.* haughty, 1058, 2612, 2910.

Hawtayne, *(?)* 3029.

Haylede, *v. pret.* projected, 2077.

Haythemene, *s. pl. (?)* heathen men, 2295.

Haythene, 1260, 2274, Hathene, 1284, Heythene, 2285, 3642, Hethene, 1834, *adj.* heathen.

Hedde, *v.* behead, 2311.

Heddys-mene, *s. pl.* headmen, chief men, 281.

Hede. See *Heuede*.

Hede-rapys, *s. pl.* head-ropes, 3668.

Hedire, *adv.* hither, 2614.

Hedlyngs, *adv.* headlong, 3829.

Hedoynē, *s. (?)* 184.

Hedyrwarde, *adv.* hitherward, this way, 25.

Hedys. See *Heuede*.

Heghe = hethē, heath, 2476.

Heghe, 158, 167, 499, Heyghe, 3471, Hey, 3467, 3485, Hye, 39, 58, Hyghe, 3014, *adj.* high; *superl.* hegheste, 3369.

Heghe, 1261, 1832, Hye, 194, 1119, *adv.* high.

Heghe, *s.* high place, height, 1146.

Heghely, *adv.* hastily, 2294.

Heghte = aughte, *adj.* eight, 2830.

Heghte = hethē, *s.* heath, 2295.

Heghte, 1157, 2613, Highte, 3626, *s.* height; *pl.* heghttez, 798.

Hekes, *s.* *pl.* horses, 2284.

Heldede, *v.* *pret.* bowed down, inclined, 3368.

Hele, *s.* health, prosperity, 2630, 3958.

Hele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3286; *pret.* hillid, 1120; *p.p.* hillyd, 3606.

Hele, *v.* heal, be healed, recover, 3688; *3 s.* heles, 2209; *pret.* helyde, 1825; *p.p.* helyd, 3030.

Helme, *s.* helmet, 1832; *pl.* helmes, 380, 730, hellmes, 2551.

Helmede, *adj.* having helmets, 1647, 3626.

Helpene, *v. inf.* help, 1646; *p.p.* holpene, 2631, 2661.

Helych, *adv.* loudly, 1286.

Hemmes, 1359, 1648, Hemmys, 2219, *s.* *pl.* borders.

Hende, *adj.* courteous, 167, 1135, 1283.

Hente, *v.* seize, take, receive; *3 s.* hentez, 1132, hentes, 2917; *pret.* hente, 2973; *p.p.* hente, 1842, 3319.

Herbariours, *s.* *pl.* harbingers, men who went forward to find places for others, 2448.

Herberde, *p.p.* harboured, lodged, 158, 166, 2650.

Herbergage, *s.* lodgings, quarters, 1285, 2285.

Here, *v.* hear, 12; *pret.* herde, 1285, harde.

Herede, *adj.* haired, 1083.

Heretyke, *s.* heretic, 1307.

Herkene, *v.* hearken, 1646, 3899; *imp.* *2 pl.* herkenes, 25, herkynes, 15.

Herne-pane, *s.* brain-pan, skull, 2229.

Herte, *s.* heart, 251, 262.

Herte, *v.* take courage, 1181.

Hertelyche, 2551, Hertly, 1835, *adj.* severe.

Hertly, 3642, Hertely, 2991, *adv.* heartily, severely.

Heslyne, *adj.* of hazel, 2504.

Heste, *s.* command, 2294, 3368, 4307.

Hetches, *s.* *pl.* hatches, 3682.

Hete, 2127, 3030, Hette, 2631, 3369, *v.* promise, assure.

Hethe, 1834, 2308, Heghe, 2476, Heghte, 2295, Heyghe, 2651, *s.* heath.

Hethely, *adv.* scornfully, 268.

Hethynge, *s.* scorn, 1843.

Hette. *See* Hete.

Heuande, *i. p.* rising, 3704.

Heuede, 262, 1178, 1354, *s.* head; chief, 1344; *pl.* hedys.

Heuedcde, *p.p.* beheaded, 463.

Heuen, *v.* raise, 1937. *See* Heuen in the Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*, ed. Morris.

Heuene, 1167, 1261, Hewene, 705, Hewyne, 2184, *s.* heaven.

Hewe, *s.* hue, colour, 207, 768, 2524.

Hewede, *adj.* coloured, 3252.

Hewene, *v.* *pl.* hew, 1860; *p.p.* hewene, 1825, 2663.

Hewys, *v.* *3 s.* raises, 4156; *p.p.* hewede, 4091.

Hey, *adj.* *See* Heghe.

Hey, *s.* *See* Hye.

Heyghe, *adj.* *See* Heghe.

Heyghe, *s.* *See* Hethe.

Heyly, *adv.* quickly, 464, 2663, 2920.

Heyndly, *adv.* courteously, 15.

Heynne, *adv.* hence, 2436.

Heynzous, *adj.* heinous, 268.

Heythene. *See* Haythene.

Highte, *p.p.* called, named, 2899.

Hillid, Hillyd. *See* Hele, *v.*

Hilte, *s.* hilt, handle of a sword, 1121; *pl.* hiltes, 2239, hiltez, 1056, 1149.

Hiltede, *adj.* 2274, 2911.

Hir, 84, 980, Hire, 956, *pron.* her.

Hirste, *s.* wood, forest, 3369.

Hittez, *v. 3 s.* hits, 1112, 1125, 1149.

Hode, *s.* hood, 3459.

Hodles, *adj.* hoodless, bareheaded, 2308.

Holdene, *v. pl.* hold, 4128; *p.p.* holdene, 1579, holdyne, 40, 166.

Hole, *adj.* hollow, 1083.

Hole, 1647, 2661, Holle, 3687, 4128, *adj.* whole, all. *See* Hale.

Holly, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 748, 3368, 3590.

Holpene. *See* Helpene.

Holte, *s.* wood, 1283, 1645; *pl.* holtez, 1259.

Hom, *adv.* home, 3014.

Homager, *s.* one who does homage, 3147.

Hondene, *v. (?)* serve with hands, 3209.

Hondrethe, 844, Howndrethe, 2108, Hundrethe, 930, *s.* hundred; *pl.* hundrethes, 281, hunndrethez, 1879.

Honeste, *adj.* honourable, good, 3245.

Honnde, *s.* hand, 1807; *pl.* hondes, 2255, hondez, 1114.

Honourliche, *adj.* honourable, 2298.

Hope, *v.* suppose, 2209.

Hopes, *s. pl. (?)* 2503.

Horde, *s.* treasure; *pl.* hordes, 3145.

Hore, *adj.* hoar, hoary, 1082.

Hornez, *s. pl.* horns, 1286.

Horsse, *s.* 463; *pl.* horsez, 734, horsesys, 3721.

Horsede, 1179, Horsesede, 2944, Horsesyde, 1647, *adj.* horsed, mounted.

Hostaye, *v.* lead a host, or make war, 555.

Hotchene, *v. pl.* hack, chop, 3687.

Houe, Hufe, 1688, *v.* tarry; *3 s.* houys, 915, howes, 2010, hufes, 1260; *pl.* houez, 1283, houys, 377, 2118; *pret.* houede, 2031; *i. p.* houande, 1648.

Hoursches, *v. pl. (?)* rush, 2110.

House, *v.* dwell, 4284.

Howes. *See* Houe.

Howge. *See* Huge.

Howndrethe. *See* Hondrethe.

Howntes, *v. pl.* hunt, 4258.

Howselde, *p.p.* housedel; be h. = receive the housel, or consecrated host, 4315.

Howsynge, *s.* dwellings, quarters, 1284, 2285.

Hufe. *See* Houe.

Huge, 1086, Hugge, 583, 1634, Howge, 2889, *adj.* huge.

Hukes, *s. pl.* 734. Miswritten for *hakes*, or *hekes*, horses.

Huke-nebbyde, *adj.* hooknosed, 1082.

Hulke, *s.* a great awkward fellow, 1058, 1085, 1121, 1149.

Hunde-fisch, *s.* houndfish, 1084.

Hundrethe, Hunndrethez. *See* Hondrethe.

Hurdace, *s.* fence, palisade, barrier, 3626.

Hurdez, *v. 3 s. (?)* lurks, 1010.

Hurles, *v. 2 s.* rushest, 262.

Hurtez, *v. 3 s.* thrusts, 1772.

Hy. *See* Hye.

Hyde, *s.* skin, 1157.

Hydede, *p.p.* hided, skinned, covered, 1001.

Hye. *See* Heghe.

Hye, 463, 2108, Hy, 2109, Hey, 166, *s.* haste.

Hye, *v.* hasten, 1645.

Hyely, *adv.* hastily, quickly, (or perhaps) loudly, 1058.

Hyene, *adv.* hence, 2582, 2744.

Hyled, *p.p.* hidden, 184. *See* Hele.

Hyme, *pron.* him, 1133, 1134.

Hymlande, (?) 2503.

Hyndire, *s.* hindpart, 3626.

Hynge, *v.* hang ; 3 *s.* hynnges, 3473 ; *pret.* hyngede, 281 ; *i. p.* hyn-gande, 1083 ; *p.p.* hynggyde, 3590.

Hynter, *s.* hindpart, 3605.

Hyrdez, *s.* *pl.* shepherds, 3245.

Hyre, *pron.* her, 854.

Hyttez, *v.* 3 *s.* hits, 1122, 1387.

Iehe. *See* Ilke.

Iche, *v.* sally forth, rush out, 1412. O. Fr. *issir*.

Idene, (?) 3061.

Ife = if, 420, 2438.

Ile, *s.* isle, 4309 ; *pl.* ilez, 575, illes, 2359.

Ilkane, 279, Ilkone, 3691, *pron.* each one, each.

Ilke, *adj.* same, 65, 232, 1311. A.S. *ilc*.

Ilke, 1006, 1093, Ylke, 2460, 2480, Iche, 589, 1004, Yche, *adj.* each. Often followed by *a* : ilke a, 83, 194, iche a, 2144, 3062, yche a, 3634.

Illes. *See* Ile.

Imagez, *prep.* amongst, 3169.

In-come, *s.* coming in, 2009, 2171.

Ine = in, 1797.

Inewe. *See* Inowe.

Inglisce, *s.* English, 2529.

Inns, *s.* *pl.* dwellings, 3041.

Inowe, 3095, Inewe, 3161, Ynowe, 1626, Ynewe, 1360, 1970, *adv.* enough.

Irene, 1186, Iryne, 2104, Yryne, 1182, *s.* iron.

Iresche, 3934, Irische, 4123, 4161, *adj.* Irish.

Irous, 1329, Irows, 1592, Irus, 1957, *adj.* wrathful.

Irouslye, *adv.* wrathfully, 2530.

Ischewe, *s.* issue, 1943.

Isschewis, *v.* 3 *s.* issues, 4060 ; *pl.* ischewis, 3116.

I-wis, 3339, I-wys, 2020, 2332, 2828, I-wysse, 322, 546, 2685, *adv.* certainly.

Jaggede, *v. pret.* jagged, chopped, 1123, 2087 ; *p.p.* 905, 2909.

Jambe, 2894, Jamby, 373, *adj.* active, nimble; lit. leggy, from Fr. *jambe*, leg.

Japez, *s.* *pl.* tricks, 1398.

Jentille, Jentylle, *adj.* gentle, 115, 904, 3411.

Jerodyne, *s.* (?) 905.

Jerownde, *adj.* gyronny (Her.), 2891.

Jeryne, *s.* (?) 903.

Jesseraunt, Jesserawnte. *See* Gesserawnte.

Jocunde, *adj.* 2896.

Jogges, *v.* 3 *s.* jogs, thrusts, 2891, 2893.

Jolily, Jolyly, *adv.* gaily, handsomely, 245, 373, 2088, 4109.

Joly, *adj.* gay, trim, handsome, jolly, 3414 ; *comp.* jolyere, 4110 ; *superl.* jolyeste, 1658.

Jonede, *p.p.* joined, 2890.

Jopowne, 4238, Jupone, 905, *s.* jupon.

Jorné, 3411, Journé, 2875, Journee, 340, 372, 825, Jurnec, 2894, *s.* a day's travel, a day's fight, a day's work.

Jowelle, *s.* jewel, 862.

Joye, *s.* 1161.

Joyes, *v.* 3 *s.* rejoices, 2896.

Joynenye, *s.* joining, encounter, 2133.

Joynez, *v. pl.* join, 2112.

Joynter, *s.* joint, 2893.

Juggede, *p.p.* judged, 2877.

Juggez, *s. pl.* judges, 246.

Jumette, *s.* 1122. *Read* Inmette, *s.* intestines. *See* Inmeats in Jamieson.

Juny, *s.* June, 345.

Jupone. *See* Jopowne.

Jurnee. *See* Jorné.

Just, *adv.* 1123.

Justere, *s.* jouster, 3412.

Justyfye, *v.* execute justice upon, punish, 663.

Justynge, *s.* jousting, 1657, 2875.

Kabane. *See* Cabane.

Kaghte. *See* Cachene.

Kaire. *See* Cayre.

Kalander, *s.* calendar, roll, 2640.

Kalendez, *s. pl.* calends, 2371.

Kambe, *s.* comb, 3351.

Kampe, *s.* fight, 3670, 3701.

Kane, *v.* can, 2750.

Karede, *v. pret.* 2882. *See* Cayre.

Kare. *See* Care.

Karfuke, *s.* place where four roads meet, 2003. A well-known cross-road at Oxford is called *Carfax*. *See* *Carfoukes* in the *Romans of Partenay*, ed. Skeat, also a note in *Notes and Queries*, Series III, vol. x. p. 184. O. Fr. *carrefour*.

Kariede, 1887, Karyed, 4010, *v. pret.* carried.

Karpe. *See* Carpe.

Karyage, *s.* baggage, luggage, 2282.

Kaughte. *See* Cachene.

Kaunt, *adj.* stout, bold, 2195.

Kay, 3111, Keye, 1867, *s.* key; *pl.* kayes, 3064.

Kayere, Kayre. *See* Cayre.

Kaysere, *s.* emperor, 1651, 1959; *pl.* kayseres, 1894, kaysers, 2391.

Kele, *v.* cool, 1839; *pret.* keled, 2712.

Kelle, *s.* caul, net (which ladies wore over their hair), 3258.

Kembede, *v. pret.* combed, 3351.

Kempe, *s.* warrior; *pl.* kempis, 1003. A.S. *cempa*.

Kempe, *v.* fight, 2633.

Kene, *v.* tell, 2619, 3521, show, 876; *pret.* kende, 481, 2194, kend, handed over, 1590.

Kene, *adj.* keen, sharp, 47, 1106, bold, 641, 1152, 1725, 1785, fierce, 3669; *comp.* kenere, 4194; *superl.* keneste, 2721, 3490.

Kenely, 935, 1243, 1271, Ken<sup>1</sup> 943, *adv.* sharply, boldly.

Kenetez, *s. pl.* kennets, small hounds, 122.

Kepare, *s.* keeper, 3512.

Kepe, *s.* care, heed, attention, 156, 1682, 1746.

Kepe, *v.* keep, 1138, 1780, wait, watch, 2003, heed, regard, care, 2398, 3522, 4021; *imp.* 2 *pl.* kepys, await, 628; *pret.* kepede, 919, kepyde, 838, 2263; *p.p.* kepede, 1586, kepide, 998, kepyd, 2171.

Keppe, *v.* catch, seize, 3484.

Kepynge, *s.* keeping, 4205.

Kerfe, *s.* cutting, 4194.

Kerfes, 4231, Kerues, 2567, *v. 3 s.* cuts; *p.p.* coruene, 211, 3335, 3673.

Keste. *See* Caste.

Ketelle-hatte, *s.* helmet, 3516, 3995; *pl.* ketelle-hattes, 2993.

Keye. *See* Kay.

Kidd, 3673, Kydd, 1272, 1390, Kydde, 96, 232, Kyde, 65, 1651, *adj.* celebrated, famous.

Kirke, 4016, Kyrke, 1219, *s.* church.

Kithe, 3866, Kythe, 28, 51, 542, Kyghte, 3996, *s.* nation, country.

Kleuys. *See* Clewes.

Klokes, *s.* *pl.* claws, paws, 792.

Knafe, 2621, Knaffe, 2637, *s.* servant; *pl.* knafes, 2632, knaues, 3484; knaue = male, 850, 1025.

Knawe, *v.* know, 1003, 1581, 1672, acknowledge, 2637; *3 s.* knawes, 1317; *pret.* knewe, 2177; *p.p.* knawene, 475, 1654, knowene, 3259.

Knee, *s.*; *pl.* knesse, 956, kneys, 4274.

Knele, *v.* kneel; *3 s.* knelis, 3951; *pl.* knelis, 3046; *pret.* knelyd, 1199, 2312; *i. p.* kneland, 1137, 4337.

Knyghte, *s.* 1138; *pl.* knyghttez, 1161.

Knyghthede, 1320, 1581, 2619, Knyghthode, 1682, 3883, *s.* knight-hood.

Knyghtly, 2395, Knyghtlyche, 506, 1218, 4083, Knyghtly, 1649, *adj.* knightly.

Knyghtly, 1707, 1724, Knyghtly, 1692, 1790, *adv.* knightly, like a knight.

Knylles, *v. pl.* ring, 2353.

Kombide, *p.p.* combed, 1003.

Konynge, *s.* cunning, skill, knowledge, 3883.

Konyngeste, *adj.* most knowing, 3177.

Kosyne. *See* Cosyne.

Koueride, *p.p.* covered, 2381.

Kowardely, *adv.* cowardly, 1923.

Krafty. *See* Crafty.

Kraftes, *s. pl.* crafts, 2543.

Krakede, *v. pret.* cracked, 3269.

Krayers. *See* Crayers.

Kreuelleste, Krewelle. *See* Crewelle.

Krisome, 2636. *See* Crysume.

Krispane, *i. p.* crisping, 3352.

Kroke, *s.* crook, curl, 3352. Dan Michel uses the verb *croki*, to curl: “Of þise ydelenesse / ne byeþ naȝt quritte þe men þet doþ zuo grat Payne ham to kembe and to pouri inc sseaweres and inc hare here wel to *croki* an to bleue be strengþe.” —*Ayenbite of Invyt*, ed. Morris, p. 176. *See* Havelok the Dane, ed. Skeat, Preface, p. vii, footnote.

Krouelle. *See* Crewelle.

Krysome. *See* Crysume.

Krysmode. *See* Crysmede.

Kwne, *v.* can, know, 1565; *kwne* thanke = return thanks.

Kydd, Kydde, Kyde. *See* Kidd.

Kyghte. *See* Kithe.

Kynde, *s.* nature, kind, 125, 2385, 3049, race, 3867.

Kyndly, *adj.* natural, proper, good, 3883, 4188.

Kyndlyche, 714, Kyndly, 2712, Kyndely, 3521, *adv.* naturally, kindly.

Kyne, *s.* kin, 2618.

Kyngryke, *s.* kingdom, realm, 24, 1272; *pl.* kyngrykes, 649, kyngrykez, 820.

Kynredene, *s.* kindred, 2604.

Kynsemane, 3898, Kynyse-mane, 1778, *s.* kinsman.

Kyrke. *See* Kirke.

Kyrnelles, *s. pl.* battlements, 3046.

Kyrtille, 998, Kyrtylle, 1024, 1191, *s.* kirtle.

Kyste, *s.* chest; *pl.* kystys, 2302, 2336, kystis, 2342, 2355.

Kythe. *See* Kithe.

Kythe, *v.* show, 1652, 4193.

Lacchene, 750, Lachene, 2541, *v. pl.* catch, take; *pret.* laghte, 2693, 2702, laughte, 2226, 2292, lached, 1515; *p.p.* laghte, 874, laughte, 1817, 1828, 1902.

Ladde, *s.* lad, 4302.

Lade-sterne, *s.* loadstar, the polar star, 751.

Ladily, *adj.* ladylike, 3254.

Ladysse, *s. pl.* ladies, 3081.

Laggene, *v. pl.* (?) get ready, 2542.

Laghte. *See* Lacchene.

Laghtirs, *s. pl.* laughters, 2673.

Lake, *s.* lack, 163.

Lakes, *s. pl.* lakes, pools, 960, 2149.

Lamede, *v. pret.* lamed, disabled, 4302; *p.p.* 3281.

Langage, *s.* language, speech, 3477.

Lange, *adj.* long, 1103, 1269; one lange = along, 1045, 2703.

Lange, *adv.* long, 868, 1200; *comp.* langere, 550, 587, lengere, 736, 889.

Lange, *v.* belong; *3 s.* langes, 402, lengcz, 2082; *pl.* langez, 1244, langys, 244, lengez, 1410, 1479; *pret.* lengede, 1492, 2221.

Lannges, *v. 3 s.* longs, 383.

Langoure, *s.* languor, 4268.

Languessande, *i. p.* languishing, 4338.

Lappe, *s.* lappet, 3254, rag, 3286.

Lappe, *v.* wrap, fold, enclose, 3292; *pret.* lappede, 2300.

Lapynge, *s.* lapping, 3235.

Large, *adv.* wide, away, 1040, deep, 1120, greatly, freely, 1376.

Largesee, *s.* liberality, bounty, 163.

Lasschene, *v. pl.* lash, smite, 2801.

Lat, 3639, Late, 420, 1189, Latt, 4001, Latte, 398, 1139, 1321, *v.* let; *3 s.* lattes, lets go, dismisses, disperses, 1819; *pret.* lete, 3886.

Lates, 118, 248, 536, 2054, Latez, 1076, *s. pl.* features.

Lathe, *s. (?)* displeasure, 458.

Latheliche, 3279, Laythely, 4302, *adj.* loathly, ugly, hateful.

Latte, Lattes. *See* Lat.

Laughene, *v. pl.* laugh, 3698; *pret.* luglie, 248.

Laughte. *See* Lacchene.

Launce, *s.* lance, spear, 1379; *pl.* launcez, 1459, 1754, lawnces, 2462.

Launches, *v.* *3 s.* leaps, springs, 2560; *pret.* launschide, 194.

Launchez, *v. pl.* launch, throw out (?), 750.

Launde, 1517, Lawnde, 2084, *s.* plain, lawn.

Laundone, *s. (?)* field, 1768. "Landon: . . . petite lande, pâturage; terres remplies de broussailles." Roquefort.

Lawe, *adj.* low, 154, 3720; *superl.* laweste, 2431; on lawe = down, 2281.

Lawe, *adv.* low, 1270.

Lawnches, *v. 3 s.* cuts, 3831.

Lawnde. *See* Launde.

Laye, *s. (?)* 3721.

Laye, *s.* law, religion, 2593.

Layere, *s.* lair, camp, 2293.

Layke, *s.* game, 1599, 3386, 4093.

Layne, *v.* conceal, 419, 2398, 2593.

Laysere, *s.* leisure, 2430, 3095.

Laythely. *See* Latheliche.

Layttede, *v. pret. (?)* 254.

Leberalle, *adj.* liberal, 2318.

Leburde, *s.* lee-board, 3624.

Leche, *s.* jelly, 194.

Lechene, *v.* heal, 2388.

Lechyde, *p.p.* cut into slices, 188.

Lede, *s.* nation, man, person, 138, 430, 997; *pl.* ledes, 195, 1902, ledys, 2801.

Lede, *s.* lead, 750, 2300, 3954.

Lede, 1268, Leede, 154, *v.* lead, treat; *pl.* ledes, 303; *pret.* ledde, 1515, lede, 3380; *p.p.* lede, 1827, 1903.

Ledyng, *s.* rule, 3536, conduct, 3880.

Lee, *s.* shelter, 1446.

Leefe, 2479, 3093, Lefe, 1035, 1335, Leue, 350, *adj.* dear, lief; *comp.* leuer, 872, 1344, 1573.

Leefe, 3432, Lefe, 72, 429, Leue, 2082, *s.* leave, permission.

Lefe, *v.* leave, 1340; *pl.* leues, remain; *pret.* lefte, 1516; *p.p.* lefede, 1397, leuede, 848, 978, leuyde, 394, 1900, 2208.

Lefulle, *adj.* allowable, lawful, 130.

Lege, 1901, Liege, 1200, Lige, 1768, 3080, Ligge, 2221, 2389, Lygge, 1518, *adj.* liege.

Legyaunce, *s.* allegiance, 2594.

Lele, *adj.* leal, honest, faithful, true, 14, 420, 647.

Lelely, 672, 2328, Lelly, 1102, Lely, 3084, *adv.* faithfully, honestly, truly.

Lemande, *i. p.* shining, gleaming, 2462, 2463, 2672.

Lemete, *p.p.* limited, 457.

Lenand. *See* Lene.

Lende, *v.* abide, 1970.

Lendez, *s. pl.* loins, 1047.

Lene, *v.* lean; *pret.* lenede, 2703; *i. p.* lenand, 1045, 2672.

Lenge, *v.* abide, remain, dwell, 72, 128, 152; *3 s.* lengez, 129; *inf.* lengene, 1588.

Lengede, Lengez. *See* Lange, *v.*

Lengere, 736, 889, 1055, Lengare, 2154, *adv.* longer.

Lenghe, *s.* length, 1102, 1126.

Lenghene, *v.* lengthen, 2845.

Leppe, *v.* leap, 2084; *pl.* leppyne, 3697, lepys, 3696; *pret.* lepe, 3427; *i. p.* leppande, 1460.

Lere, *v.* teach, 1035.

Leskes, *s. pl.* loins, 1097, 3279.

Lesse, *conj.* lest, 2300, 2439.

Lesse, *adj.* false; withowtynne lesse = truly, certainly, 139.

Lesyng, 3079, Lesynng, 3721, *s.* losing.

Let. *See* Lette.

Letande, *i. p.* (?) appearing, 3831.

Lete. *See* Lat.

Letherly, *adv.* wickedly, 1268.

Lett, *v.* cease, desist, 2325.

Lette, *v.* hinder, prevent, 473, 1269, 1721; *pret.* let, 3720.

Lette, *s.* hindrance, 92, 458.

Lettyng, *s.* hindrance, 371.

Leue. *See* Leefe.

Leue, *v.* believe, 702, 1097; *2 s.* leues, 2593.

Leuenyng, *s.* lightning, 2463.

Leuere. *See* Leefe.

Leueré, *s.* delivery; hence, granted or assigned place, 241, livery or uniform; and hence, the different parts of an army, 3078. *See* Livery in Halliwell.

Leues, *s. pl.* leaves, 1708.

Leuetenaunte, *s.* lieutenant, vice-roy, 646.

Leuez, *v.* *3 s.* lives, 1731.

Life, 3723, Liffe, 1036, *v.* live; *pret.* lifede, 3961; *p.p.* liffyde, 252.

Lifeliche, *adj.* (?) real, actual, 3427.

Liffe, *s.* life, 430, 1820.

Lifte, *v. pret.* lifted, 3349.

Lige, Ligge. *See* Lege.

Liggez. *See* Lygge.

Lighames. *See* Lyghame.

Lightly, *adv.* 3287.

Likez. *See* Lyke.

Likyng, *s.* pleasure, 130, 3381.

Lire, 3281, 3954, Lyre, 4272, *s.* face, visage. A.S. *hlær*.

Liste, *s.* desire, pleasure, 12.

Liste, *v. pret.* desired, 4270.

Lofte; on lofte = aloft, 163, 916, 942; appone lofte = aloft, 2800, 3623.

Loge, 421, Lugge, 152, 454, *v.* lodge; *pl.* lugegez, 2280; *pret.* luggede, 486; *i. p.* lugande, 1045.

Loke, 1643, Luk, 3209, Luke, 135, *v.* look; 3 *s.* lukez, 113; *pl.* lukkes, 751; *pret.* luked, 119, lukede, 1313; *imp.* 2 *pl.* lokez, 1640; *i. p.* lukande, 3108.

Lokerde, *p.p.* curled, 779. Sc. *lokker*, to curl (Jamieson).

Lokkes, *s. pl.* locks, 778, 3280.

Lond, *s.* land; *pl.* londes, 878, londez, 427, 1691, 1933.

Londis, *v.* 3 *s.* lands, 3922.

Longez, *v. pl.* belong, 2828; *pret.* lonngede, 3080.

Loo, *int. lo*, 974, 1349.

Loos, 254, Loosse, 474, *s.* praise, renown, good name.

Lordcheppez, 1727, Lordchipez, 253, 646, Lordeckippez, 1970, *s. pl.* lordships.

Lordliche, 3638, Lordlyche, 570, 2032, 2281, 2541, *adj.* lordly.

Lordly, 2230, 2479, Lordely, 1818, 2227, *adv.* in a lordly manner.

Lorne, *p.p.* lost, 1153.

Losels, *s. pl.* rascals, wretches, 252.

Losse, 1599, Lossene, 2845, *v.* lose.

Lotes, *s. pl.* features, 1462. *See* Lates.

Lothely, *adj.* loathly, horrid, ugly, 778, 3234.

Lothely, *adv.* horridly, 2074, 3849.

Lothene, 778, Lothyne, 1097, *adj.* hateful, detestable.

Loue, *v.* praise, 369; *p.p.* louede, 4305.

Louely, 3478, Louelyly, 2292, *adv.* in a loving manner, kindly.

Louerde, *s.* lord, 3918.

Lowde; on l. = aloud, 1781, 2032.

Lowe, *s.* flame, 194.

Lowkkide, *p.p.* closed, 3953.

Lowrande, *i. p.* lowering, looking sad, 1446, 4338.

Lowttes, *v. pl.* bow, 505; *pret.* lowttede, bowed before, 2634, 3285, 3408.

Loyotour, *s.* embroidery (Perry), 3252.

Lufe, *s.* some part of a ship, 744, 750. "Loof. The windward side of a ship. . . . It is not easy to make out exactly what part of the ship the *loof* originally was. Du. *loef* is a rullock or oar-pin, scalmus, but the loof was a timber of considerable size, by which the course of the ship was directed; it would seem to be the large oar used by way of a rudder, or perhaps the tiller." *Wedgwood's Dictionary of English Etymology*.

Lufe, 703, 705, Luffe, 1256, 3381, *s.* love, sake.

Luffe, *v.* love, 1597; *pl.* luffes, 12.

Lufliche, 3623, Lufly, 1459, *adj.* lovely.

Lufly, 505, Luffly, 248, Lufflyche, 2674, *adv.* in a lovely manner.

Lugande, Lugegez, Lugge, Luggede. *See* Loge.

Lughe. *See* Laughene.

Luk, Lukande, Luke, Lukkes. *See Loke.*

Lukyng, *s.* looking, 139.

Lumpe, 1819, Lumppe, 1814, 2230, *s.* crowd, throng.

Lunggez, *s. pl.* lungs, 2168.

Lussche, *s.* (?) thrust, 3848.

Lutterde, *adj.* bowed, bent, 779. *Sc. luttaird.* (Jamieson.)

Luyschene, *v. pl.* (?) lash, 1459; *pret.* luyshede, 2226.

Lyarde, *adj.* gray, 2542, 3280. *"Liart, liarde, gris, gris-pommelé."* *Burguy.* See *Liart* in Jamieson.

Lyefe, 2845, Lyffe, 1269, *s.* life; *pl.* lyfez, 1217.

Lyf, *v.* live, 1903; 3 *s.* lyffes, 405, 537; *p.p.* lyffede, 868.

Lyfte, *s.* sky, 4272.

Lygeaunce, *s.* allegiance, 244.

Lygge, *v.* lie; 2 *s.* lygges, 1060; 3 *s.* lyggez, 805, lys, 3938; *pl.* lygges, 459, lyggez, 1184, liggez, 1773.

Lyghame, *s.* body, 3281, 3286; *pl.* lighames, 4269. *A.S. lichama.*

Lyghte, *v.* light, alight, 1270; 3 *s.* lyghtez, 933; *pret.* lyghte, 3594; *p.p.* lyghtede, 1782.

Lyghte, *v.* lighten, 2846; 3 *s.* lyghtys, 368; *pl.* lyghtys, 251.

Lyghtenande, *i. p.* lightening, flashing, 2463.

Lygmane, *s.* liegeman, 420; *pl.* lyggemene, 1518.

Lyke, *v.* be pleased, rejoice, 195; *usually an impers. v.* likez, 383, lykes, 55, lykez, 1190, lykys, 32, 186, pleases; *pret.* lykede, 599; *i. p.* lykande, being pleased, 248, pleasing, 497, 2406.

Lykyng, *s.* pleasure, 701, 2673.

Lyme, 459, 1097, Lymme, 1046, *s.* limb.

Lympe, *v.* happen, befall, 1643; *pl.* lympene, incur, 3119; lymp-

pede, gained, 3415, lympyde, 292 *p.p.* lympyde, incurred, suffered, 875.

Lynd, *s.* tree, 454, 486.

Lynkwhytez, *s. pl.* linnets, 2674. *Sc. lintwhite; A.S. linet, flax; linet-wig, flax-finches, linnet.*

Lyone, *s.* lion, 139; *pl.* lyouns, 3234.

Lyppe, *s.* lip, 119; *pl.* lyppys, 1011, lippis, 3954.

Lyre. *See Lire.*

Lys. *See Lygge.*

Lythe, 1653. *Read Kythe.*

Lythe, *adj.* gentle, 1517, 1600.

Lythe, *v.* listen, 12; *pl.* lythes, 1810.

Lytherly, *adv.* badly, 1448.

Lythes, *s. pl.* (?) leases, tene-ments, 994. See *Lith* in Glossary to *Havelok the Dane*, ed. Skeat, and *Lud* in Glossary to *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat.

Lythyre, *adj.* wicked, bad, 23.

Lytille, 1021, Litylle, 1719, Lyttille, 754, *adj. or adv.* little.

Lytte, (?) little, 550.

Lyue, *s.* life, 1775, 3067, 3520.

Lywynge, *s.* living, 5.

Ma, *adj.* more, 1829.

Mace, *s.* 4210.

Mache, *s.* match, 4070.

Machede, *p.p.* matched, 1533, 2904.

Maches, *s.* (?) 2950.

Mad, *v. pret.* made, 50, 112; *p.p.* mad, 77.

Made, *s.* madness, 4271.

Magestee, 1236, Maiestee, 1303, *s.* majesty.

Maister, 990, 2870, Mayster, 938, 3652, *s.* master.

Maisterede, *v. pret.* mastered, 2683.

Makk, *s.* companion, fellow, 1166.

Makles, *adj.* peerless, matchless, 3875.

Malle, *v.* hammer, beat, 3038, 4037; *3 s.* mallis, 3841.

Maluesye, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.

Malyncoly, *s.* 2204, 4209.

Man, *adj.* *See* Mayne.

Manace, *s.* menace, threatening, 3383.

Manacede, *v. pret.* threatened, 1383.

Manere, *s.* manor, 4310.

Manere, *s.* manner, 1383.

Mangere, *s.* 1588. *Qu.* Maugree, ill will.

Manhede, *s.* manhood, 399, 434, 4278.

Manliche, *adj.* manly, 2417.

Manrede, *s.* homage, service, 127.

Manykyne, *adj.* of many kinds, 3174.

Manys = man's, 76.

Marasse, 2505, Mairas, 1534, Marrasse, 2014, *s.* morass, marsh.

Marche, *s.* frontier, boundary, 318, 1588; *pl.* marches, 631, marchez, 1232, marchys, 77.

Marchez-mene, *s. pl.* bordermen, borderers, 1237.

Marras, Marrasse. *See* Marasse.

Marre, *v.* mar, 2015.

Marters, *s. pl.* martyrs, 1066.

Martyre, *v.* kill, 560.

Mase, *v.* *3 s.* makes, 960.

Masondewes, *s. pl.* hospitals, 3038. Fr. *maison-dieu*, lit. house of God, a name suggested by Matthew xxv.

Maugree, 1238, Mawgree, 426, in spite of.

Maundement, *s.* commandment, order, 1587.

Mawene, *p.p.* mown, 2507.

Mawgree. *See* Maugree.

Mawnecelet. *Read* Mawntelet, *s.* mantling, or lambrequin, 3632. “*Mantling*, or *Lambrequin* :—a small Mantle, generally of crimson velvet or silk and lined with ermine, with tassels, attached to the Basinet or Helm, and hanging down over the shoulders of the wearer.”—*Boutell's Heraldry* (3rd edit. 1864), p. 115. In the present instance the mantelet was of silver mail.

Mayles, 2250, Maylez, 904, 1487, 1764, *s. pl.* chain or ringed armour.

Mayne, *s.* might, power, 4326.

Mayne, 427, 434, Man, 4071, *adj.* main.

Maynoyrede, *p.p.* worked, 2507.

Mayntene, *v.* maintain, 399; *p.p.* mayntenyde, 4278.

Mayster. *See* Maister.

Maysterfulle, *adj.* victorious, 3413.

Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 666, 1068.

Mede, *s.* mead, 1290, 2506.

Medille, *s.* middle, waist, 2205, 4168.

Medille-erthe, 2951, Medillerthe, 3239, *s.* world.

Medillewarde, 2904, Medilwarde, 3766, Medylwarde, 1988, *s.* centre of an army.

Mekille, Mekylle, *adj.* great, 1236; *adv.* much, greatly, 711, 1314, 1382.

Mele, *v.* speak, talk, 990; *3 s.* meles, 382, 679, 1781; *pl.* melys, 3652; *imp.* *2 pl.* melys, 2871.

Melione, *s.* million, 3144.

Melle, *v.* mix, join, meddle, deal with, 938; *pl.* mellis, 2904.

Melles, *v.* *3 s.* hammers, smites, 2950. *See* Malle.

Mellyd, *adj.* (?) made like a *mall* or hammer, hammer-headed, 4210.

Mellys, Melys. *See* Mele.

Mendement, *s.* amendment, 989, 1236.

Mendynantez, *s. pl.* (?) mendicants, beggars, 667.

Mene, *v.* speak, tell, 3556, speak of, mention, 2869; *3 s.* menys, talks, 3478, 3653.

Menede, *v. pret.* meant, 891.

Mengene, *v. pl.* mingle, join, 4173; *p.p.* mengede, 3632.

Menske, *s.* honour, 126, 399, 433.

Menskes, *v. 3 s.* honours, 1303, 2871.

Menskfully, *adv.* honourably, 631, 940, 1233, 1988.

Mereswyne, *s.* dolphin, 1091.  
"Hic delfis. pis mere-swin." *Ælfric's Grammar*, Cotton MS. Julius A ii, leaf 31.

Merke, *v.* proceed, 351, 427, 4320, assign, 1068; *3 s.* merkes, cuts, 2206; *pl.* merkene, 4168; *p.p.* merked, formed, made, 1304, merkyde, 952.

Merkes, *s. pl.* bounds, 461, 1147.

Merrede, 1238, 3555, Merride, 3322, *p.p.* marred.

Meruaile, Meruayle, *s.* marvel, wonder, 2682, 2906.

Meruailles, *v. 3 s.* marvels, 1314.

Meruailous, 260, Meruaylous, 428, Meruaylous, 2287, Meruelyous, 236, *adj.* marvellous, wonderful; *superl.* meruelyousteste, 129.

Mery, *adj.* merry, cheerful, 260; *comp.* meriere, 3175; *superl.* meryeste, 3239.

Messes, *s. pl.* masses, 4018, 4333.

Mett, *v. pret.* dreamed, 3223.

Mette, 2491, *s.* meat, food; *pl.* metes, 75, metez, 1298.

Mette, *v. meet*, 434; *pret.* mett, 1175, 3841.

Mette-fulle, *adj.* measure-full, in good measure, 2343.

Mette while, *s.* measured time, or scanty time, 3903. A.S. *mete*, moderate, little.

Meue, *v. move*, 2001.

Misdoow, *v. ill-use*, wrong, 126.

Mo, 844, 885, Moo, 856, 2500, *adj.* more.

Mobles, *s. pl.* movable goods, 666.

Mode, *s.* mind, 3222, 3382, 3454.

Modyr, Modyre, *s.* mother, 2, 983, 1211.

Mofes, *v. 3 s.* moves, 3323.

Molde, *s.* mould, earth, 129, 952, 975.

Mone, *v.* must, shall, 813, 1155, 2186, 2436, 2820.

Monee, *s.* money, 2343.

Monethe, *s.* month, 318.

Montayngnes, 3238, Mowntayngnes, 4259, *s. pl.* mountains.

Monte, *s.* mountain, 938, 1069; *pl.* montez, 874, 1175, mowntes, 3535, 3556.

Mony, *adj.* many, 3623, 3671.

Moo. *See Mo.*

More, *adj.* greater, 1018.

Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 1223.

Morne-while, *s.* morning time, 2001, 3223.

Morthires, *v. 2 s.* murderer, 1315; *pl.* mourtherys, 4259; *p.p.* morthirede, 976.

Morwene, *s.* morning, 3476.

Moste, *v.* must, 250, 263, 449; *impers. v.* 2491.

Moste, *adj.* greatest, 3322, 4221.

Mot, 346, Mote, 4104, Mott, 136, 1306, Motte, 227, *v. must*, may.

Mournande, *i. p.* mourning, 4333.

Mourtherys. *See Morthires.*

Mowe, *v. subj. sg.* be able, may, 3812.

Moyllez, *s. pl.* mules, 2287.

Muskadelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.

Myche, *adj.* great, 1166, 1214, 2033; *adv.* much, greatly, 1068.

Myde, *adj.* mid, 3841.

Myddes, 1293, Myddys, 2176, *s.* midst.

Mylde, *adj.* mild, 1211.

Mynde, *s.* memory, 1221.

Mynsters, *s. pl.* monasteries, 3038.

Myrthez, *s. pl.* mirths, 1532.

Myschefe, *s.* trouble, misfortune, 667, 3437.

Myse-bide, *v.* offer injury, 3083.

Mysese, *s.* trouble, grief; and hence, those who are in trouble, 667.

Myshappene, *v.* meet with misfortune, 3454.

Myskaries, *v.* 3 *s.* comes to grief, 2872; *p.p.* myscaryede, 1778, myskaryede, 1237.

Mysse, *s.* wrong, injury, 1315, 3057.

Myste, *s.* mist, 2001.

Myx, *s.* vile wretch; lit. dung, 989. A.S. *meox*, dung, muck. “Ne myhte þe mixes þo wurse don, Bute a-mong þeoues on rode an-hon.”

Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 265, back.

Na, *adj.* no, 160, 310, 1644.

Nakyne, *adj.* of no kind, 2350.

Nane, *adj.* no, 213, 565; *pron.* none, 657, 2613.

Nauylle, *s.* navel, 979.

Naye, *s.* a naye = an aye, an egg, 3283. Compare *Neiȝ* in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 83.

Ne, *adv.* not, 230, 1117; *conj.* nor, 10, 161.

Nedes, 263, 1266, Nedez, 1329, Nedys, 470, *s. pl.* business.

Nedylle, *s.* needle (of a compass), 753.

Neghe, *v.* draw nigh, approach, 2433.

Neghe, *adv.* closely, exactly, 2658.

Neko-bone, *s.* neckbone, 2771.

Nere, *adv.* nearly, almost, 805, 1127, 1135.

Nese, *s.* nose, 2248.

Neuewe, *s.* nephew, 689.

Newȝere, *s.* new-year, 78.

Newȝers daye, *s.* new-year's day, 90.

Nextte, *adj.* nearest, 2422.

Neynesome, nine in all, 523. See *Sum* in Richthofen's *Altfrisiaisches Wörterbuch*.

Nobille, Nobylle, *adj.* noble, 16, 18, 68; *superl.* nobileste, 3439, 3935.

Nobilly, *adv.* nobly, 1815.

Noblay, *s.* splendour, 76, 2433.

Noghte, *pron.* naught, 1191; *adv.* not, 135, 419, 1174.

Nokyne, *adj.* of no kind, 430.

Nombirde, 2887, Nowmerde, 2658, *p.p.* numbered.

Nombyre, 2831, 3068, Nowmbre, 2884, Nowmbyre, 2942, 3438, Nowmer, 884, *s.* number; *pl.* nommers, 591, nowmbirs, 3935.

Nomene, 1437, Nommene, 1868, 1872, 2477, *p.p.* taken.

Nommers. *See* Nombyre.

None, *s.* the ninth hour of the day (at the equinox, none = 3 P.M.), 78.

Nonis, 3297, Nonys, 1927, *s.* nonce; for the nonce, for the occasion.

Nonkyns, *adj.* of no kind, 2363.

Nonne, *adj.* no, 3365.

Nonnes, *s. pl.* nuns, 3539.

Noo, *adj.* no, 4149.

Not, *v.* 1 *s.* know not, 977.

Notez, *v. pl.* make use of, 1815.  
A.S. *notian.*

Nother, 2367, Nothyre, 10, Nowthire, 161, 429, *conj.* neither.

Notte, *s.* use; hence, business, 1816. A.S. *notu.*

Nowene, 1806; thi nowene = thine own.

Nowmbirs, Nowmbre, Nowmbyre, Nowmer. *See* Nombyre.

Nowmerde. *See* Nombirde.

Nowthire. *See* Nother.

Noyes, *v.* 3 *s.* harms, grieves, 1816, 2248.

Nurree, *s.* nursling, 689.

Nyghtale, *s.* nightingale, 929.

Nyghttes, *v.* 2 *s.* gettest benighted, 451.

Nynne = nine, 3439

O, 656, 1217, 3480, Oo, 3907, *prep.* on, in.

O, *prep.* of, from, 3906.

Occidente, *s.* occident, west, 2360.

Occyane, *s.* ocean, 31.

Oches, *v.* 3 *s.* hacks, breaks, 2565; *pl.* ochene, 3675; *pret.* ochede, 4245. “Oscher, ocher, ébrécher, entailler, briser.” *Burguy.*

Ocupyes, *v.* 3 *s.* holds, occupies, 1663, 2360.

Of = from, 2540.

Oglite, *pron.* aught, 1014, 1269, 2802.

Okene, *adj.* oaken, 2722.

Olawe, *adv.* below, down, 1517.

Olyfaunte, *s.* elephant, 2339; *pl.* olyfantez, 1286, olyfauntez, 2288.

Olyfe, *adv.* of life, from life, 802, 1139; bringe olyfe = kill.

One = on, *prep.* 74, 116, 753.

One, *adv.* alone, only, 826, 937, 2519, 2592. A.S. *áne.* Myne one, by myself, 3230; by myne one, by myself, 704; be oure one, by ourselves, 1345; thyne one, thyself, 466; with hym one, with himself, 597; of hym one, of himself, 1793; be thame one, by themselves, 3195.

Ones, 135, 179, Onez, 1109, 1756, *adv.* once.

One-seeande, *i. p.* looking on, 525.

Onone, *adv.* anon, quickly, soon, 571, 1178, 1231.

Ony, *adj.* any, 2519, 3489, 4215.

Oo. *See* O.

Opyne, *adj.* open, 2147.

Or, *prep.* ere, before, 1269, 1788; *conj.* ere, before, 374, 529, 1680.

Ordaynede, *v.* *pret.* arranged, 1991; *p.p.* ordande, ordained, 1621.

Orfraeetz, 902, Orfrayes, 2142, *s.* gold embroidered work, or fringe of gold. “Orfrais, . . . étoffe brochée d’or, broderie en or, frange d’or.” *Burguy.*

Orrible, *adj.* horrible, 1240.

Oryent, 2289, Oryentte, 1904, *s.* orient.

Osay, *s.* a kind of drink, 202.

Oslante, *adv.* aslant, 2254, 3923.

Ostage, *s. pl.* hostages, 3187, 3208.

Ostayande, *i. p.* warring, or leading an army, 3502. “Ostoier, osteier, osteer, faire la guerre, guerroyer, mener ost, attaquer son ennemi.” *Burguy.*

Oste, *s.* host, 1624; *pl.* ostes, 1240, ostez, 2387.

Other-while, *adv.* at another time, 1145.

Othire, *adj.* other, 3973; *pron. pl.* others, 3932.

Ouer-charggede, *p.p.* overburdened, overpowered, 1749.

Ouer-fallene, *p.p.* fallen upon, 1154.

Ouergylte, *p.p.* gilded over, 207.

Ouer-hande, *s.* upper hand, mastery, 4300.

Ouerkeste, *v. pret.* overthrew, 3932.

Ouerlynge, *s.* superior, lord, 289, 520, 710.

Ouer-rane, *v. pret.* overran; *p.p.* ouer-ronne, 1206.

Ouer-reche, *v.* reach over, afford, 1508; *pl.* ouerrechez, reach over, 921.

Ouer-rydez, *v. pl.* ride over; *p.p.* ouer-redyne, 1415, 1524.

Ouersette, *p.p.* overthrown, 111, 2815, 4136.

Ouer-swyngene, *v. pl.* overthrow, overturn, 1466.

Ouer-whelme, *v.* overturn, 3261.

Oundyde, 765, Ownde, 193, *adj.* wavy. *Her. ondee.*

“Hire *ownded* here, that sonnyssh  
was of hewe,  
She rente . . .”  
Chaucer, *Troylus & Cryseyde*,  
bk. iv. stanza cii.

Ovyre-fallys, *v. pl.* fall over, 3677.

Ower, *prep.* over, 747.

Ownde. *See* Oundyde.

Owte-illes, 30, Owtt illes, 2359, *s. pl.* foreign islands.

Owte landes, 2607, Owte-londes, 2723, Owt-londys, 3697, *s. pl.* foreign countries.

Owte-mowntes, *s. pl.* far off mountains, 3909.

Owte ouer, 903, Owtt ouere, 2339, *adv.* outside, above.

Owther, 110, 2413, Owthire, 964, *conj.* either.

Owttraye, *v.* finish, overcome completely, ruin, do violence against, 642, 1010, 1328; 3 *s.* owtrayes, 1664; *p.p.* owterayede, 1952, owt-rayede, 2617, owttrayede, 2840.

Pacokes, *s. pl.* peacocks, 182.

Pales, 503, Palesse, 3913, Palez, 636, 718, *s.* palace; *pl.* palaisez, 1287.

Palfray, *s.* 3143.

Palle, *s.* a kind of rich silk or cloth, 1288, 2478, 3142.

Palyd, 1287, Palyde, 1375, *p.p.* paled (Her.).

Pape, *s.* pope, 229, 2327.

Pare, *v. (?)* 4047.

Parlement, *s.* parliament, 146.

Party, *s.* part, 212; *pl.* partyes, parts, countries, 2596.

Pas, *s.* pace, 3496.

Passande, *i. p.* passing, more than, 2741, passant, 4184.

Pastorelles, *s. pl.* herdmen, 3120.

Patriarkes, *s. pl.* 3807.

Paume, *s.* palm, 776.

Paunsone, *s. (?)* piece of armour covering the paunch, 3458. “*Pancire, panchire*, la partie de l’armure qui couvre la panse ou le ventre.” *Burguy.*

Pauys, 3460, properly means a large shield, but it is by no means clear what is meant in this passage.

Pauysers, *s. pl.* men who bore the *pavis*, a large shield used to cover archers, 2831, 3004.

Pavelyouns, 2624, Pauyllyons, 2478, *s. pl.* tents.

Pawnce, *s.* piece of armour for the belly, 2075.

Pawnche, *s.* paunch, 2076.

Paye, *v.* satisfy, please, 4049; 3 *s.* payes, 2646; *p.p.* payede, 230.

Payganys, *s. pl.* pagans, 4046.

Payne, *s.* penalty, 2329; *pl.* paynez, 1546, 1632.

Paynyme, *s.* pagan, 1377; *pl.* paynymes, 2835, paynymmez, 1544.

Payses, *v. pl.* weight, load, 3037 ; *pret.* paysede, overloaded, weighed down, 3042.

Payvese, *s. pl.* pavises, 3625.

Pecez, *s. pl.* pieces, 1825.

Pechelyne, *s. (?)* 1341.

Pekille, *s.* a kind of sauce made of dripping, wine, mustard, and onions, 1027. See the recipe *For Pykulle* in the *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 31.

Pelid, *v. pret.* thrust, drove (?), 3042.

Pelours. *See* Pylours.

Pendes, *v. 3 s.* belongs, 1612 ; *pl.* 2624.

Penowne, *s.* pennon, flag, 2917 ; *pl.* penouns, 2460.

Penselle, *s.* small pennon, streamer, 2076, 2411 ; *pl.* penselles, 2460, pensels, 1289.

Percede, *v. pret.* pierced, 2075.

Peres, 146, Perez, 637, Peris, 1637, *s. pl.* peers.

Perfournede, *p.p.* performed, 672.

Perrie, 4184, Perrye, 2460, 3461, *s.* precious stones, jewelry.

Persayfes, *v. 3 s.* perceives, 4224 ; *pret.* persayfede, 1631, persayuede, 2811.

Persewes, *v. 3 s.* pursues, 2155 ; *pret.* persewede, 1476, persuede, 1377.

Pertly, *adv.* openly, 2917.

Pes, 2411, Pesse, 1542, *s.* peace.

Pesane, *s. (?)* 3458.

Peté, *s.* pity, 2812, 3043.

Peyne. *See* Payne.

Fighte, Pyghte, *p.p.* pitched, 1287, 1290, set (with stones, &c.), 212, 3354, 3460 ; adorned (?), 3364.

Pilgram, *s.* pilgrim, 3475.

Pilgremage, *s.* 3496.

Pillione hatt, *s.* 3460. A kind of hat, at one time worn only by doctors in theology, but afterwards more generally. See *Pecock's Repressor*, ed. Babington, pp. 88, 89, and *Glossary*.

Pilouur, *s.* robber, 2533.

Plas, *s.* place, 4013.

Plasche, *s.* marshy place, 2798.

Platers, *s. pl.* dishes, 182.

Platez, *s. pl.* plates, 2075.

Plattes, *s. pl.* purple cloths, 2478. "Platta, purpura, vel pannus purpurei coloris." *Ducange*. Or more probably *plattes* is a *pl. v.* meaning, strike, beat. A.S. *plattian*.

Playne, *adj.* level, smooth, 1290.

Playsterede, *adj.* plastered, 3042.

Plenerly, *adv.* fully, 2608, 3498.

Plenteuous, *adj.* abundant, 1028.

Plesande, *i. p.* pleasing, pleasant, 11, 4049.

Plesaunce, *s.* delight, enjoyment, 3140.

Pleyne, *v.* complain, 1217.

Plumpe, *s.* crowd, 2199.

Plyande, *adj.* flexible, 777.

Plytte, *s.* condition, 683.

Pomarie, *s.* fruit-garden, orchard, 3364.

Pome, *s.* globe, 3354.

Pomelle, *s.* small globe (probably used as an ornament on a flag-staff), 1289.

Pontyficalles, *s. pl. (?)* bishops, 4335.

Pople, 100, 1204, Popule, 11, 52, *s.* people.

Porke despyne, *s.* porcupine, 183.

Porkes, *s. pl.* swine, 3121.

Porte, *s. port*, 2609 ; (?) 3625 ; *pl.* portes, gates, 503, 568, portez, portholes, 749.

Postles, *s. pl.* apostles, 2413.

Potestate, *s.* power, potentate, 2327.

Poueralle, *s.* poor folk, 3120.

Pouere, *adj.* poor, 3540.

Pouerte, *s.* poverty, 1545.

Pourpour, *s.* purple, 1375.

Powere, *s.* forces, 1635, 1925, 2155.

Poyne, *v.* work upon, toil at, 2624.

Poyntez, *s. pl.* points, 767.

Praye, *s.* prey, booty, 3003, 3010.

Prekande, Prekes, Prekys, Prekkande, &c. *See* Prike.

Preker, Prekkers. *See* Prikere.

Presant, *adj.* present, 1257.

Presante, *s.* present, 1021.

Prese, *v.* press, 1583; *3 s.* presez, 1374; *pret.* presede, 2199.

Presone, 1546, Presonne, 1632, *s.* prison.

Presonere, *s.* prisoner, 2536; *pl.* prisoners, 1583, 1636.

Presse, *s.* crowd, 1477, pressure, difficulty, 1522.

Preué, *adj.* privy, secret, 2005.

Preuely, 213, 896, 2648, Preualye, 1609, *adv.* privily, secretly.

Price, 94, 355, Pris, 500, 569, Pryce, 230, 746, Prys, 2, 718, Pryse, 1636, Prysse, 1545, *adj.* precious, worthy, good.

Prike, *v.* prick, ride, 2844; *2 s.* prykkes, 2533; *3 s.* prekez, 2156, prekys, 718; *pl.* prekes, 503; *imp.* *2 pl.* prekez, 1609; *i. p.* prekande, 1545, prekkande, 2836; *p.p.* prykkyd, pricked, 2648, prykkyde, stitched, 3608.

Prikere, 2649, Preker, 1374, *s.* rider, horseman; *pl.* prekers, 355, 1479; prekkers, 2835.

Pris. *See* Price.

Priste, *adj.* ready, 1021, 4106.

Pristly, *adv.* readily, quickly, 2762.

Profire, *v.* offer battle, 2534; *2 s.*

profers, 2533; *3 s.* profers, 1376, 3141.

Profire, 2857, Profyre, 1257, *s.*

Profitabille, *adj.* 11.

Proudely, 1374, Proudliche, 1287, Prowdliche, 3607, *adv.* proudly, splendidly.

Proue, *v.* prove, try, test, 1341; *3 s.* proues, 1478; *pl.* prouene, 746, proues, 2464; *p.p.* prouede, 2596.

Proueste, 1611, 1889, Prouoste, 1632, *s.* provost.

Prowde, *adj.* proud, 2536, gay, splendid, 2076.

Prowesche, *s.* advantage, 1958.

Pryce, *adj.* *See* Price.

Pryce, 1924, 2788, Prys, 2751, Pryse, 2649, *s.* praise, prize.

Prykkes, Prykkyde. *See* Prike.

Pryme, *s.* the first hour of the day, 95, 4105.

Prys, Pryse, *s.* *See* Price.

Prys, Pryse, Prysse. *See* Price.

Prysonere, 1478, Pryssonere, 1610, *s.*

Purchese, *v.* gain, acquire, obtain, 3497.

Purpos, 687, Purposse, 2848, *s.*

Purpre, 4184, Purpur, 3142, Purpure, 1288, Pourpour, 1375, *s.* purple.

Purtrayede, *p.p.* pourtrayed, 3607.

Puruayede, *v.* *pret.* provided, furnished, 2832; *p.p.* puruayede, 1925, 2477.

Purueaunce, *s.* provision, providing, 688.

Put, *v.* 2535; put of = ward off.

Pygges, *s. pl.* pigs, 183.

Pyghte. *See* Pighte.

Pyke, *s.* pike, staff, 3475; *pl.* pykes, points, claws, 777.

Pyke, *v.* pick; *2 s.* pykes, 2534; pyke vp, 1636.

Pylotes, *s. pl.* pellets, stones used as missiles, 3037.

Pylours, 3004, Pelours, 2831, *s. pl.* (?) archers, or men who worked the engines.

Pyment, *s.* a kind of drink, 1028.

Pyne, *s.* suffering, 3043.

Pynne, *v.* pin, 4047.

Pypez, *s. pl.* pipes, fifes, 2030.

Quarte, 552, Qwerte, 3810, *s. health, prosperity.*

Quarterde, *p.p.* quartered, 1736.

Quod, *v. pret.* quoth, said, 140, 259, 1559.

Quytte, *v.* requite, 1788.

Qwarelles, *s. pl.* bolts (for the cross-bow), 2103.

Qwarters, *s. pl.* 3389.

Qwaste, *p.p.* quashed, crushed, 3389.

Qwat, 3868, Qwate, 4008, *pron.* what.

Qwayntly, 2103, Qwayntely, 3261, *adv.* cunningly.

Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 48, Qwhene, 407, *adv.* when.

Qwene, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, *s.* queen.

Qwerte. *See* Quarte.

Qwhene. *See* Qwen.

Qwhilles, 4160, Qwhyle, 553, Qwhylles, 3480, 3651, 3810; Qwylls, 3505; *adv.* whilst, while; qwylls, 4047, qwylls, 4007, until.

Qwyke, 1736, Qwykke, 3810, *adj.* alive.

Qwylls, Qwylls. *See* Qwhilles.

Qwynè, *adv.* whence, 3503.

Qwythene, 4157, properly means whence; in this passage it seems to be miswritten for *Qwyne* = O that! Compare "Whyne myghte I" = "O that I might," l. 703.

See the preface to Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience*, ed. Morris, pp. xxv and xxvi.

Raas, *v.* tear, pluck away, 362; *pret.* rasede, tore, 2984.

Racches, *s. pl.* hounds, 3999.

Rade, *adj.* frightened, 1995, 2881.

Rade, *s.* fear, dread, 3896.

Rade. *See* Ryde.

Radly, *adv.* quickly, 1529, 3815. A.S. *hrædlice*.

Radnesse, *s.* fear, dread, terror, 120, 310.

Raghte. *See* Reche.

Raike, 1525, Rayke, 2985, *s. course, path.*

Raiassed, *p.p.* raised, 2057.

Rane. *See* Ryne.

Ranez, *s. pl.* thickets, brushwood, 923. *See Ronez* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ed. Morris, l. 1466.

Ranke, 2271, Rannke, 1474, 1764, 2138, *adj.* rank, strong.

Rankour, *s.* 1666.

Raply, *adv.* swiftly, 1763.

Rappyd, *v. pret.* rapped, smote, 785.

Rared, *v. pret.* roared, 784, 1124.

Rasches, *v. pl.* dash, 2107.

Rasede. *See* Raas.

Raskaille, *s.* rabble, 2881.

Rathe, *adj.* swift, quick, 2550.

Rathe, *adv.* quickly, speedily, 1275, 1332, 1668, 2022.

Rathly, 237, Raythely, 2880, *adv.* quickly.

Raughte. *See* Reche.

Raunsake, *v.* search, 4304; 3 *s. ransakes*, 3939; *pl.* ransakes, 1884; *imp. 2 pl.* rawnsakes.

Raunsone, *s.* ransom, 1528.

Raunsone, 466, 1276, 1508, Rawnsonne, 3275, *v. ransom*, levy ransom upon; *pret.* raunsounde, 293, 329; *p.p.* raunsound, 100, rawnsonede, 2667.

Rauyschett, *v. pret.* ravished, 294.

Rawe, *s.* row; on rawe = in a row, in order, one after the other, 238, 633, 1292.

Rawghte. *See* Reche.

Rawmpyde, *v. pret.* ramped, 794.

Rawndoune, *s.* swiftness, violence, impetuosity, 2985. *See Randon* in Roquefort.

Rawnsakes. *See* Raunsake.

Rawnsone. *See* Raunsone.

Rayke, *v.* proceed, go; 3 *s.* raykes, 1762, raykez, 889, 1057; *pret.* raykede, 237; *i. p.* raykande, 3469.

Rayke, *s.* *See* Raike.

Raylide, *p.p.* clothed, covered, 3263.

Raymede, *p.p.* (?) 100. Halliwell has, "Rame. To rob, or plunder."

Raythely. *See* Rathly.

Reale, 524, Realle, 179, 221, 411, Rialle, 1993, Ryalle, 53, 74, 2138, Ryealle, 17, *adj.* royal, kingly, noble; *superl.* realeste, 175, 1410.

Realtee, *s.* royalty, 155, 228, 423; *pl.* ryalltes, 3214, ryalltez 1665, royaltez, 4005.

Rebanes, *s. pl.* ribbons, 3255.

Rebawde, *s.* ribald, rascal, vagabond, 1333; *pl.* rebawdez, 1416, 1705.

Rebawdous, *adj.* ribald, 456.

Rebelle, *adj.* rebellious, 2040.

Rebuke, *v.* 1333; *p.p.* rebukkede, 4283, rebuyked, 1445, rebuykyde, 2234, rebuykyde, 867, 1705, 2153.

Reche, *v.* reach, stretch forth the hand in giving or receiving; hence, hand over, give, take, draw, &c., 3 *s.* reches, 1111, 2252, rechez, 792; *pret.* raghte, 2766, raughte, 1527, 1884, 3352, rawghte, 3456, rechede, 1090, 3350, 4218; *p.p.* raghte, 2666, rechide, 1043.

Reched, *s. (?) richness*, 3263.

Reches, *s.* riches, wealth, 2667, 3571.

Recheste, *adj.* richest, 155.

Reconsallez, *v. 3 s.* reconciles, 3130.

Recreaunt, *adj.* recreant, 2334.

Red, 2932. *See* Rede, *v.*

Reddour, *s.* fear, dread, 109, 485, 1418. *Su. Goth. redde*, fear.

Reddour, *s.* rigour, 1456. *O. Fr. redour, reddur*, rigour, severity.

Rede, 550, 2369, Red, 2932, *v.* advise; interpret, 3228; *p.p.* rede, discerned, 2921.

Rede, 995, 2144, Reedde, 3457, Reedde, 795, 1526, *adj.* red.

Redely, 1472, 2070, Redily, 363, Redyly, 1207, 1526, *adv.* readily, quickly.

Redene. *See* Ryde.

Redy, *v.* make ready, prepare, 4137; *pl.* redyes, 1427.

Redyne. *See* Ryde.

Reedde. *See* Rede.

Refe, *v.* rob, take away, deprive of; *pret.* refede, 959, refte, 295, 1475; *p.p.* refede, 1820, refte, 1206, 1733, reweude, 3315.

Regale, *s.* regalia, 4207.

Regestre, *s.* register, 113.

Rechte, *adv.* right, 1057, 1668, just, 1301.

Reghttes, *v. 3 s.* rights, puts to rights, 3815; *pl.* reghttez, 1454, ryghtene, 3618.

Regne, 398, Regnne, 4005, Ryngne, 3214, *v.* reign; 3 *s.* regnes, 310, regnez, 287, ryngnes, 2266; *pl.* rengnez, 865; *pret.* regnede, 293, 3273, rengnede, 3272, reynede, 175, ryngnede, 228; *i. p.* regnande, 2665.

Rehersene, *v.* relate, tell, say, 3229; *3 s.* rehersys, 3206; *pret.* rehersede, 1666.

Rehetes, 411, Rehetez, 3198, *v.* *3 s.* cheers; *pret.* rehetede, 221. O.Fr. *rehaîter*.

Reke, *s.* smoke, 1041.

Rekeneste, *adj.* (?) quickest, readiest, 4081. A.S. *recene*, soon, quickly.

Rekenyng, 1678, Rekkynynge, 102, *s.* reckoning, account.

Rekke, *v.* reck, care, 995, 2040; *pret.* roughte, cared for, 3275.

Rekkene, *v.* reckon, 1275, 2334.

Reklesse, *adj.* reckless, careless, 922, 1670.

Relayes, *v.* *pl.* relax, slacken, 1529.

Releuis, *v.* *pl.* rally, 2278; *pret.* releuyde, 2234; *p.p.* releuede, 1207.

Relikkes, *s. pl.* relies, 4207.

Relyes, 4291, Relyez, 1882, *v. pl.* rally; *pret.* relyede, 1391.

Relys, *v. 3 s.* reels, 2794.

Remenaunt, *s.* remnant, remainder, 1553.

Remmes. *See* Rewme.

Remmes, 2197, Remys, 4155, *v. 3 s.* shouts, cries out; *pret.* remyd, 3894.

Remowes, *v. 3 s.* removes, 1761.

Renayede, *adj.* renegade, having renounced their faith, 2913, 3572, 3892.

Rengnede, Rengnez. *See* Regne.

Renke, *s.* man, 1057; *pl.* renkes, 1410, renkkes, 391, 1994, renkys, 17, 147, renkkez, 2135.

Rennene, *v. pl.* run, 200.

Rente, *s.* rent, tribute, 465; *pl.* rentez, 103, 995, rentez, 1509, 1667.

Rependez, *v. pl.* hang back, 2107.

Repent, *v. pret.* repented, 3894; *repent, impers. v.* 1392.

Requit, *p.p.* paid, 1680.

Rere, *v.* move, 2810. Cf. Dan. *røre sig*, to bestir oneself.

Rereage, *s.* arrears, 1680.

Rerebrace, *s.* 2566. "From the French *arriere-bras*. That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow. In the reign of Edward II. only one plate at first protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail; but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*.

Rererys, *v. 3 s.* rears, 4249; *p.p.* rereryde, 4280.

Rerewarde, *s.* rearguard, 1430, 1527, 1762.

Resaywe, *v.* receive, 3587.

Resewe, 1752, Reschewe, 2243, Rescwe, 4131, *v.* rescue; *p.p.* reschowede, 363.

Reschewe, 3859, Reschewes, 433, Resewe, 1953, Rescows, 4137, *s.* rescue, deliverance.

Resonabillye, *adv.* reasonably, 1508.

Resone, 2041, Resoune, 174, 1668, *s.* reason, account.

Restreynede, *p.p.* restrained, 2041.

Retenewys, 3572, Retenuz, 1334, 1655, 2664, *s. pl.* retainers, followers.

Retournes, *v. pl.* turn back, 1395.

Reuare, 62, 1455, Reyuere, 424, Ryuere, 1292, *s.* river.

Reuaye, 3275, Ryvaye, 3999, *v.* hunt by a river. "Rivoier, riveier, chasser en rivière." *Burguy* under *Rive*.

Reuelle; *s.* 1667.

Reuelle, *v.* 1969.  
 Reuengyde, *p.p.* avenged, 1204.  
 Reuerssede, *v. pret.* turned down, 2070; *p.p.* reuersside, turned up, trimmed, 3255.  
 Reuertede, *v. pret.* turned over, 2918.  
 Reueste, *p.p.* dressed, clothed, 4334.  
 Rewdly. *See* Ruydly.  
 Rewe, *v.* have pity, 866; cause regret, 1678; 3 *s.* rewes, 3272.  
 Rewede. *See* Refe.  
 Rewfulle, *adj.* rueful, pitiful, sad, 1049.  
 Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 1523.  
 Rewghe. *See* Rewthe.  
 Rewllez, 1672, Rewlys, 509, *v. 3 s.* rules, governs; *pl.* rewles, 1455, rewlys, 726; *p.p.* rewlyde, 52.  
 Rewme, *s.* realm, 1207; *pl.* rewmes, 52, 66, 425, remmes, 49.  
 Rewthe, 888, 1430, 2197, Rewghe, 3859, *s.* pity, compassion, sorrow; rewthe workes, sorrowful deeds, 3453, 3894.  
 Reynede. *See* Regne.  
 Reyuere. *See* Reuare.  
 Rialle. *See* Reale.  
 Riatours, *s. pl.* ravagers, 2034.  
 Richely, *adv.* 173.  
 Richeste, *adj.* 147.  
 Rigge, *s.* back, 800. A.S. *hrycg.*  
 Rightene, *v. pl.* put right, 1525.  
 Rightewissly, *adv.* righteously, 1554.  
 Rightwis, *adj.* righteous, 3989.  
 Riotes. *See* Ryot.  
 Riotous. *See* Ryotous.  
 Riste, 1969, Ryste, 108, 423, *v. rest*; 3 *s.* rystez, 2170; *pret.* risted, 485, rystede, 53; *p.p.* riste, 2235, ryste, 1428.  
 Rittez, 2138, Rittis, 3753, *v. pl.* break, tear.  
 Roche, *s.* rock, 1146, 3601.  
 Rochelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 203.  
 Rode. *See* Ryde.  
 Rode, *s.* rood, cross, 3217, 3559. A.S. *ród.*  
 Rog, *s. (?)* crowd, 3272. *See* roge in Ihre.  
 Roggede, *v. pret.* shook, 784.  
 Rollede, *p.p.* enrolled, 2641.  
 Romawns, *s. pl.* romances, 3200.  
 Romede, *v. pret.* roared, 784.  
 Romyez, *v. 3 s.* roars, 888; *pret.* romyede, 1124.  
 Rongene. *See* Rynge.  
 Ronnene. *See* Ryne.  
 Roo, *s.* rest, peace, quiet, 1751, 3362, 4304. A.S. *row.*  
 Roo, *s.* wheel, 3374. Fr. *roue*, Lat. *rota*.  
 Roo, *s.* roe, 922, 4000. A.S. *ré*.  
 Roode. *See* Ryde.  
 Roselde, 2880, Rosselde, 2793, *adj. (?)* brandished, shaken. Cf. Sw. *ruskla*, to shake; E. *rustle*.  
 Rosers, *s. pl.* rosetrees, 923.  
 Rosse, *s.* rose, 3457.  
 Rosselde. *See* Roselde.  
 Rossete, *adj.* russet, 237.  
 Rostez, *s. pl.* roasts, 1049.  
 Roughte. *See* Rekke.  
 Roungene. *See* Rynge.  
 Rowelle, *s.* wheel, 3262. “*Roele, rouele, roelle, roue, petite roue, rond, cercle; de rotula.*” *Burguy.*  
 Rowm, 1454, Rowme, 391, 432, Rowmme, 3470, *adj.* roomy, spacious.  
 Rowte, *v.* sleep; lit. snore, 108.  
 Rowte, 719, 1763, Rowtt, 1656, Rowtte, 390, 456, *s.* company, troop.

Rowtte, *s.* road, way, 379.

Roy, 411, 1670, Roye, 3200, 3273, *s.* king. Fr. *roi*, Lat. *rex*.

Royaltez. *See* Realtee.

Rungene. *See* Rynge.

Rusche, *v.* rush, fall; cast, hurl, 1339, thrust, 2880; *3 s.* rusches, falls, 2241, 2794, ruschez, rushes, 392, ruysches, 2983; *pl.* rusches, 2550, ruyssches, hurl, dash, 2913; *pret.* ruschede, 2792, 2879, ruschte, 120.

Rusclede, *adj.* (?) ruckled, wrinkled, 1096. Cf. *ruck* in Wedgwood.

Ruyd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057, 1332, *adj.* rude.

Ruydly, 785, 794, Ruydlyche, 1877, Rewdly, 2810, *adv.* rudely.

Ruysches, Ruyssches. *See* Rusche.

Ryalte. *See* Reale.

Ryalltez. *See* Realtee.

Ryally, *adv.* royally, 1472, 3613.

Rybbez, 1134, Rybbs, 1151, *s.* *pl.* ribs.

Ryche, *adj.* 108, 833.

Rydde, *adj.* fierce, 4117. *See* *Rid* in Jamieson.

Ryde, *v.* ride, 1876; *3 s.* ryddis, 3540; *pl.* rydde, 2849, rydene, 2809; *pret.* rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920; *pret. pl.* redene, 485; *p.p.* redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100.

Ryealle. *See* Reale.

Ryfe, 362, Rywe, 2439, *v.* rive, rend, split, pierce; *3 s.* ryfez, 794, 1474, ryvys, 3824; *pl.* ryffes, 2913.

Ryghte, *adv.* straight, 889.

Ryghtene. *See* Reghttes.

Ryghttez, 894, 1439, Ryghtys, 610, *s. pl.*

Ryghtwise, *adj.* righteous, 866.

Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884, *s. pl.* trees.

Ryne, *v.* run, 109, 3990; *3 s.* rynnez, 1121, rynnys, 31, 62, 540; *pret.* rane, 1526, 2881, rynnyde, 2965, rynnyd, 920; *pret. pl.* ronnene, 922; *i. p.* rynnande, 392, 795.

Rynge, *v.* ring, 4332; *p.p.* rungene, 462, roungene, 1587, rongene, 976.

Ryngne, Ryngnede, Ryngnes. *See* Regne.

Rynisch, *adj.* either Rhenish, or strange, foreign, 203. *See* Runisch in Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*.

Rynnande, Rynnez, Rynnyde, &c. *See* Ryne.

Rynsede, *p.p.* rinsed, 3375.

Ryot, 456, 785, Ryott, 341, Ryotte, 923, 1883, *v.* ravage; (with the reflexive pronoun) run riot; *3 s.* ryottez, 619, riotes, 3172.

Ryotous, 379, 432, Riotous, 363, *adj.*

Ryotte, *s.* uncontrolled license, riot, 294, 412; *pl.* riotes, 388, ryotes, 3893.

Rype, *v.* search, 1877; *3 s.* rypes, 3940.

Rysses, *v.* *3 s.* rises, 3660.

Ryste, Rystede, &c. *See* Riste.

Ryues, *s. pl.* (?) 1764.

Ryvaye. *See* Reuaye.

Ryve (= aryve), *v.* land, 3896.

Ryvys, Rywe. *See* Ryfe.

Sa, *adv.* so, 3796, 3870.

Sabylle, 771, Sable, 2027, *s.* sable, black.

Sadde, *adj.* satisfied, 847. Ger. *satt*.

Sade, *adj.* sad, 3948; *comp.* sad-dare, 3289.

Sadilles, 1801, Sadylles, 1855, *s. pl.* saddles.

Sadly, 331, 1685, 2466, Saddly, 1458, *adv.*

Safe, *v.* save, 3051.

Sagge, *adj.* sage, wise, 814.

Saghetylle, *v.* become reconciled, 330.

Saise, *v.* 3 *s.* says, 1162; *imp.* 2 *pl.* saise, 1267.

Sakles, 3986, 3992, Sakeles, 3399, *adj.* innocent.

Sale, *s.* hall, 82, 91, 134, 409.

Salle, 1364. *Read* Sable.

Salle, *v.* shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.

Salue, *v.* salute; 3 *s.* saluz, 87; *pret.* saluzed, 82, saluzede, 953.

Salue, *s.* salve; *pl.* saluez, 2691.

Salue, *v.* heal, 932; *p.p.* saluede, 2907.

Sandes, 513. Perhaps a mistake for *sandesman*.

Sandes-mane, *s.* messenger, 1419; *pl.* sandismene, 266.

Sare, *adv.* sore, sorely, 134, 2248.

Satanase, *s.* Satan, 3812.

Satilles, *v.* *pl.* settle, descend, 2465.

Saughte, *s.* peace, reconciliation, 1007, 1548, 3052.

Saule, 666, 1062, Saulle, 2192, Sawle, 1169, *s.* soul.

Saunke, *s.* blood, 179.

Sawghte, *adj.* at peace, reconciled, peaceable, 3194, 4042.

Sawle. *See* Saule.

Sawtere, 3316, Sawtire, 3421, *s.* psalter.

Sawturore, *s.* saltire, one of the ordinaries in heraldry, 4182.

Sayne, *v.* bless, cross (oneself), 969; *pret.* sayned, 1042, saynned, 966.

Scathylle. *See* Skathelle.

Schadande, *i. p.* shedding, flowing, 3845.

Schafte, *s.* shaft (of a spear), 2169.

Schaft-monde, *s.* 2546, 3843, 4232. "A measure, from the top of the extended thumb to the utmost part of the palm, which in a tall man is about six inches, or half a foot."—Bosworth's A.S. Dict. under *Scaeft-mund*.

Schake, *v.* shake, proceed, 1213, 1992.

Schakke, *s.* sudden movement, 1759.

Schalke = chalk, 1226, 1363.

Schalke, *s.* man, 1098, 2170, *pl.* schalkes, 1857, schalkez, 2211.

Schalle, *v.* shall, 7, 148, shalt, 102.

Schalyde, *p.p.* scaled, 766.

Schamely, *adv.* shamefully, 2616.

Schamesdede, *s.* deed of shame, 3.

Schanke, *s.* shank, leg, 3845; *pl.* schankez, 1099.

Schape, *v.* shape, form, prepare, 342, 1324, 2588, 3400; *pret.* schoupe, 3599.

Schappely, *adv.* fitly, 2333.

Schappes, *v.* 3 *s.* shapes, destines, 1716.

Schare. *See* Schere.

Scharlette, *s.* scarlet, 3459.

Scharpe, *s.* 3841.

Scharpely, *adv.* sharply, smartly, 1212, 2429, 2456.

Schathe. *See* Skathe.

Schawe, 2406. *Read* Schewe.

Schawe, *s.* wood, 1765; *pl.* schawes, 1723, 1760.

Schaylande, *adj.* (?) scaly, 1098.

Schede, 2922, Schedde, 3398, *v.* *pret.* shed, poured.

Scheene, 1760, 2457, Schene, 2429, 3747, Schenne, 2676, *adj.* fair, beautiful.

Scheftene, Scheftys. *See* Skyfte.

Schelde, 914, 1110, Schilde, 3714, Schylde, 2984, *s.* shield; *pl.* scheldez, 595, scheldys, 2545.

Schelde, *v.* shield, 3.

Scheldyde, *adj.* having shields, 1856.

Scheltrone, 2106, 2922, Schiltron, 1856, Sheltrone, 1992, *s.* troop, band; *pl.* schiltounis, 1765, schiltouns, 1813, 2210. The older form is *schiltrum*. A.S. *scyld*, shield, *truma*, troop.

Schenchipe, *s.* disgrace, 4299.

Schende, *v.* ruin, disgrace, confound, 2435.

Schene. *See* Scheene.

Schepe, *s.* sheep, 2922.

Schere, *v.* shear, cut, 2546; *3 s.* scherys, 3600; *pret.* schare, 3843, scherde, 1856, 2545.

Scherenkene. *See* Schrenkys.

Schethede, *p.p.* sheathed, 3852.

Scheuerede, *v.* *pret.* shivered, split, 1813; *p.p.* scheueride, 3748.

Schewe, *v.* show, 191, 1183, appear, 1717; *inf.* schewene, 2457.

Schewyng, *s.* showing, manifestation, 3401.

Schifte, Schiftys. *See* Skyfte.

Schilde. *See* Schelde.

Schiltrone, Schiltounis. *See* Scheltrone.

Schippemene, *s.* *pl.* shipmen, sailors, 1212.

Schire, 1760, 2169, Schyre, 1213, 3600, *adj.* bright.

Schirreues, *s. pl.* sheriffs, 725.

Scho, *pron.* she, 853, 860.

Schoderede, 3844, Schoderide, 2106, Schodirde, 4234, Schodyrde, 2169, *v.* *pret.* shuddered, shook, quivered.

Schokke, *v.* shock, jog, move or throw with violence, 4114; *3 s.* schokkes, 3816, 3852, 4235; *pl.* schokkes, 1759.

Scholde, 1031, 1719, Schoulde, 3611, *v.* should.

Schone, *s. pl.* shoes, 3471.

Schone, 1717, 1719, Schoune, 314, *v.* shun, avoid, get or keep out of the way; *3 s.* schownnes, 3599.

Schonte, Schontez. *See* Schountes.

Schore, *s.* score, 2344, 3577.

Schorte, at the, shortly, soon, 1325.

Schotande. *See* Schotte.

Schotene, *v. pl.* shut, 749.

Schotte, *v.* shoot, 1992; *pl.* schottes, 2426; *pret.* schotte, 1765; *i. p.* schotande, 1766.

Schotte, *s.* shot, shooting, 2105, 2428; *pl.* schotys, 3627.

Schotte-mene, *s. pl.* shooters, 2467.

Schouelle-fotede, *adj.* shovel-footed, 1098.

Schouene, 2333, Schoue, 2335, *v.* *pret. pl.* shaved.

Shoulders, *s. pl.* shoulders, 2546.

Schoune. *See* Schone.

Schountes, 3816, Schowntes, 3715, 3842, Schuntes, 1055, *v. 3 s.* turns aside, shrinks away, hesitates, delays; *pl.* schontez, 1759; *pret.* schonte, 2106, 2428, schounte, 736; *imp. 2 s.* schunte, 1324.

Schoupe. *See* Schape.

Schove, *v.* shoved, thrust, 3847.

Schowande, *i. p.* (?) shuffling, 1099.

Schownnes. *See* Schone.

Schowntes. *See* Schountes.

Schragges, *s. pl.* jagged ends, 3473.

Schrede, *v. pret.* cut, 2211, 4167; *p.p.* schrede, 2688.

Schrede, 3991, Schreede, 767, *p.p.* clothed.

Schredez, 905, Schredys, 3473, *s. pl.* shreds.

Schrenkys, *v. 3 s.* shrinks, 4234; *pl.* scherenkene, 2105; *p.p.*

schrenkede, wrinkled, 2211; *i. p.*  
 schrenkande, wrinkling, 1857.  
 Schrewe, *s.* wicked person, 2779.  
 Schrifte, *s.* shrift, confession, 2588.  
 Schrinkande, *i. p.* shrinking, wrinkling, 767.  
 Schrowde, *s.* dress, 3628. A.S. *scrūd*, garment.  
 Schryfe, *v.* confess, 3400.  
 Schrympe, *s.* deformed creature, monster (applied to a dragon), 767.  
 Schrynede, *p.p.* shrined, 3991.  
 Schulde, *v.* should, 3183, 3791.  
 Schuldrez, 1157, Schuldrys, 3294, Shoulders, 2546, *s. pl.* shoulders.  
 Schunte, Schuntes. *See* Schountes.  
 Schwede = schewede, showed, 4233.  
 Schyfte. *See* Skyfte.  
 Schylde. *See* Schelde.  
 Schynbawde, *s.* 3846, seems to mean the *greave* or shin-plate; but the form of the word leads one to think that it originally meant *shin-belt*, probably a piece of chain-armour or other defence bound round the leg. *See* Glossary to *Syr Gay Wayne*, ed. Madden. Compare Eng. *baldrick* and Lat. *balteus*.  
 "He, and his gambesoūns, glomede als gledys,  
 With graynes of rubyes, that graythede were gaye  
 And his schene schynbawdes,  
 scharpe for to schrede." *The Awntyrs of Arthure*, ed. Madden, stanza xxxi.  
 Schyre. *See* Schire.  
 Scoulders, 766. *Read* Schoulders.  
 Scrippe, *s.* 3474.  
 Seche, Sechis. *See* Seke.  
 See, *s.* seat, 3291, 3350.  
 See, *s.* sea, 490, 1402.  
 Seegge, *s.* seat, proper place, 2478.  
 Seegge. *See* Segge.  
 Seese, *v. pl.* see, 1405.  
 Segge, 134, 1043, Seegge, 1574, *s.* man; *pl.* seggez, 1420, 1422. A.S. *segg*.  
 Segge, 355, *s.* siege.  
 Seggede, *v. pret.* besieged, 3011.  
 Segnourry, *s.* lordship, 528.  
 Sekadrisses, *s. pl.* 2283. There is surely some mistake here; perhaps we ought to read *cokadrilles* = crocodiles (compare Span. *cocodrillo*) or *cokatrisses*, which may have the same meaning, since Roquefort gives, "*Cocatrice, cocatrix: Crocodile.*" Either suits the alliteration, gives some sense, and might by a slight mistake of the scribe be turned into *sekadrisses*, which gives no sense at all. Crocodiles in a Roman camp are not more out of place than camels and elephants are when crossing the Alps with coffins on their backs! See p. 69.  
 Seke, *adj.* sick, 1574.  
 Seke, 105, 937, 1296, Seche, 3233, *v.* seek, make for, go (towards); 2 *s.* sechis, 3507; *pret.* soghte, 1041, soughte, 720, 2170; *inf.* sekene, 898; *p.p.* soghte, 1171.  
 Sekere, 1173, 1458, Sekire, 4313, Sekyre, 478, 551, *adj.* sure, safe, trusty; *comp.* sekerare, 3289; *superl.* sekereste, 1492.  
 Sekerly, 441, 969, Sekirly, 3499, Sekyryl, 439, 1420, *adv.* surely, certainly, safely.  
 Sekire, *v.* ensure, 2585, 3804.  
 Sektour, *s.* executor, 665.  
 Selcouthe, 75, 1298, 3531, Selkouthe, 1948, *adj.* strange, rare.  
 Seldene, *adv.* seldom, 1163.  
 Sele, *s.* seal, 85.  
 Selfene, 331, 338, Seluene, 1, 8, Seluyne, 10, 34, self.  
 Selkouthe. *See* Selcouthe.

Selkouthely, *adv.* strangely, 3252.  
 Selkylde, 3356. Perhaps mis-  
     written for 'Serkylde,' encircled.  
 Seluene, Seluyne. *See* Selfene.  
 Semblant, *s.* show, splendour, 75,  
     410.  
 Semble, *v.* assemble, gather, meet,  
     63, 967; *pl.* sembles, 3748; *pret.*  
     semblede, 409, 1457; *p.p.* sem-  
     blyde, 70.  
 Semes, 1672, Semez, 133, 1162,  
     Semys, 1418, *impers.* *v.* seems;  
     *pret.* semede, 123, semyde, 193. It  
     is often used with the objective  
     case of the personal pronouns: the  
     semes = thou seemest, 1672; them  
     semyme = they seemed, 193.  
 Semliche, 3947, Semlyche, 655,  
     Semly, 410, 1949, *adj.* seemly,  
     comely, goodly.  
 Semliche, 3316, Semlyly, 3787,  
     *adv.* in a comely manner, well.  
 Sen, 127, 142, Sene, 526, 952,  
     *adv.* or *conj.* since.  
 Sendelle, *s.* fine linen, 2299.  
 Sengely, 2434, Sengilly, 471,  
     2592, Sengly, 3729, *adv.* singly,  
     alone.  
 Sent, *s.* scent, 1040.  
 Sent, *s.* assent, consent, 1628,  
     2615, 3065.  
 Sepulture, *s.* burial, 4340.  
 Sere, *adj.* various, diverse, separ-  
     ate, 192, 607, 1576, 3195.  
 Serfe, *v.* serve, 1220; *pret.* ser-  
     fede, 892.  
 Serfede, 1068. *See* Serues.  
 Sergeant, *s.* servant, 632; *pl.*  
     sergeantes, 1173.  
 Serte, *s.* desert, 2926; *pl.* sertes,  
     513. Compare *serve* for *deserve*.  
 Seruez, *v.* *pl.* serve, 1168.  
 Serues, *v.* *pl.* deserve, 1315; *p.p.*  
     seruede, 2590, serfede, 1068.  
 Ses, *v.* 3 *s.* sees, 3941.  
 Sesez, *v.* 3 *s.* seizes, 1500.  
 Seside, *v.* *pret.* put in possession,  
     3065; *p.p.* sessede, 2608.  
 Sessede, *v.* *pret.* ceased, 2132.  
 Sesyne, *s.* seizin, 3588.  
 Sete, 3315, Sette, 1305, *s.* seat.  
 Seterdaye, *s.* Saturday, 1550,  
     3176.  
 Sethene. *See* Sythene.  
 Setille, *s.* settle, seat, 3270.  
 Seuende, *adj.* seventh, 488.  
 Seuenschore, seven score, 3788.  
 Seuenyghte, *s.* week, 153, 380,  
     3182.  
 Sewes, *s.* *pl.* stews, pottages, 192.  
 Sewe, *v.* follow, 2927; *pret.*  
     sewede, 3288; *i. p.* sewande, 81.  
 Sex, *adj.* six, 354, 380; sex  
     sum = six in all, 471.  
 Sexte, *adj.* sixth, 3316, 3416.  
 Sextene, *adj.* sixteen, 81, 105.  
 Sexti, Sexty, *adj.* sixty, 179,  
     210, 601.  
 Sexti-faulde, *adj.* sixtyfold, 2299.  
 Seyne, *s.* sign, 2055, 2870.  
 Seyne, *p.p.* seen, 3985.  
 Seyne, *adv.* afterwards, 188, 192,  
     282, 1591.  
 Seyngnour, 3313, Seynzowre,  
     2419, *s.* lord; *pl.* seynowres, 1577.  
 Seynt, *s.* saint, 1169; *pl.* seyntez,  
     1163, 1168.  
 Sheltrone. *See* Scheltrone.  
 Sibb, 3984, Sybb, 645, 3891,  
     Sybbe, 681, *adj.* related, akin.  
 Siche. *See* Swylke.  
 Siluere, *s.* 1165.  
 Silueryne, *adj.* made of silver,  
     185.  
 Singulere, *adj.* single, by himself,  
     172.  
 Sir, 3288, Syr, 3312, Syre, 3134,  
     *s.* lord.

Sittande, *i. p.* becoming, suitable, 953, 1501.

Sittandly, *adv.* becomingly, 159.

Sittene, *p.p.* sat, 3291.

Skalopis, *s.* *pl.* scallop-shells, 3474.

Skape, *v.* escape, 1562.

Skathe, 1643, 1841, 3119, Schathe, 292, *s.* hurt, damage.

Skathelle, 1642, Seathylle, 32, *adj.* hurtful.

Skathlye, *adj.* hurtful, 1562.

Skayles, *v.* *3 s.* scales, 3034.

Skayres, *v.* *pl.* scare, frighten, 2468.

Skewe, *v.* eschew, escape, 1562.

Skiftez. *See* Skyfte.

Skilfulle, *adj.* reasonable, right, 1561.

Skomfite, *s.* discomfit, 2335.

Skomfite, *p.p.* discomfited, 1644.

Skomfitoure, *s.* discomfiter, one who discomfits, 1644.

Skomfyture, *s.* discomfiture, 1561.

Skorne, *v.* scorn, 1642; *pret.* skornede, 1840.

Skornefulle, *adj.* 1840.

Skotiferis, 3034, Skotefers, 2468, *s. pl.* shield-bearers. Compare Lat. *scutiferi*, squires.

Skouerours, *s. pl.* explorers, scouts, 3118.

Skoulkery, *s.* lurking, ambush, 1644.

Skowtte-waches, *s. pl.* sentinels, 2468.

Skrogges, 1641, Skroggez, 1642, *s. pl.* stunted bushes, shrubs. Sc. *scrog*.

Skulker, *s.* 3119.

Skyfte, 1643, Schifte, 1213, 1325, *v.* shift, dispose, manage; *3 s.* skiftez, 1561, skyftys, 32; *pl.* skyftes, 3117, schiftys, 725, scheftene, 3627, scheftys, 2456, schyfte, 3847; *imp. 2 s.* schyft, 1717.

Skylle, *s.* reason, skill, 32.

Skymrys, *v.* *pl.* fight, skirmish, 2467.

Slade, *s.* green valley, 2978.

Slakes, *v.* *3 s.* slackens, loosens, 3220.

Slakkes, *s. pl.* (?) pools of water in slack or hollow places, 3719.

Slale, *adj.* (?) 3117.

Slaughte, *s.* slaughter, 2675.

Slawe, *adj.* slow, dull, 4044.

Slawyne, *s.* slavein, pilgrim's mantle, 3474.

Slayne, *p.p.* slain, 1824, 2977.

Sleghe, *adj.* sly, cunning, clever, 2978.

Sleghte, 3220, Sleyghte, 3418, 4045, *s.* sleight, skill, craft.

Sleghte, *p.p.* slipped, 2675.

Sleyly, 3855, Sleyghly, 2975, Sleyghely, 4321, *adv.* shily, prudently, cleverly.

Slepe, *v.* sleep, 4044.

Sleppes, *v.* *3 s.* slips, 2976; *pret.* sleppid, 3854.

Slewe, *v.* *pret.* 3418.

Slewthe, *s.* sloth, 3221.

Sleyghly, Sleyghely. *See* Sleyly.

Sleyghte. *See* Sleghte.

Slode, *v.* *pret.* slid, 3854.

Slomowre, *s.* slumber, 3221.

Slomyre, *v.* slumber, 4044.

Slongene, *p.p.* slung, 2978, 4321.

Sloppes, *s. pl.* pools, 3923.

Slote, 2254, Slotte, 2975, *s.* pit of the stomach.

Slottede, *p.p.* stabbed in the pit of the stomach, 3853.

Sloughe, 23, Slowghe, 4045, Slewe, 3418, *v. pret.* slew.

Slowde, *s.* slush, sludge, 3719.

Slowghe. *See* Sloughe.

Slydande, *i. p.* sliding, 2976.

Slyke, *adj.* such, 3719. *See* Swylke.

Slynges, *v. 3 s.* slings, throws, 3220, 3855.

Slytte, *s.* slit, 3853.

Slyttes, *v. 3 s.* slits, 2254, 2975.

Smyttes, 2564, Smytze, 1148, *v. 3 s.* smites.

Snelle, *adj.* swift, 57.

Socoure, *v.* succour, 2276.

Socoure, 2317, Socure, 1438, *s.* succour.

Sodanly, 80, 599, 1422, Sodaynliche, 3270, Sodaynly, 632, 1980, *adv.* suddenly.

Softe, *adj.* softening, melting, 3983.

Softene, *v.* soften, ease, 2691.

Soghte. *See* Seke.

Soiorne, 4027, Soiourne, 4042, *v.* sojourn.

Solause, *s.* solace, recreation, 239, 659.

Solemply, 3196, 3805, Solempnely, 1948, Solempnylye, 525, *adv.* solemnly.

Solempnitez, *s.* solemnity, 514.

Som, *adj.* some, 3683.

Somercastelle, *s.* wooden tower, 3033.

Somme, *s.* sum, 448, 2347.

Somond, 1212, Somounde, 525, *v. pret.* summoned; *p.p.* somonde, 140, sommonde, 267.

Somouns, *s.* summons, 91, 104.

Sonde, *s.* something sent, 2511.

Sonde, *s.* sand, 3728, 3745.

Sondire, 2182, Sondre, 1123, Sondyre, 1388, 1482; *in s.* = asunder.

Sondirwise, *adv.* separately, 3529.

Sone, *s. son*, 1945.

Sone, 170, 1022, Sonne, 2222, *adv.* soon.

Songene, *v. pret. pl.* sang, 745, 2674.

Sonne, 1978, 2511, Sone, 4035, *s. sun.*

Sonondaye, *s.* Sunday, 501, 2482.

Soo, *adv. so*, 1841.

Sope, *s.* sup, hasty meal, 1890.

Soppe, *s.* crowd, company, troop, band, 1493, 2818, 3729.

Sore, *s.* disease, 932.

Sore, *adv.* sorely, 1173; *comp.* sorere, 1163.

Sorowe, *s.* 1138, 2224.

Sorte, *s.* troop, company, band, 63, 410, 1575; *pl.* sortes, 606.

Sothe, *adj.* true, 1686; *for sothe*, truly, 1087.

Sothe, *s.* truth, 3229.

Sothely, *adv.* truly, 172, 239, 319.

Sott, 1044, Sotte, 847, 1060, *s.* sot.

Soueraygne, *adj.* 1167.

Soueraygne, 1298, 1330, Soueraygne, 141, *s. sovereign*; *pl.* souerayngez, 1960.

Soughte. *See* Seke.

Soupe. *See* Sowpe.

Sowdane, *s.* soldan, sultan, 590, 1295; *pl.* sowdanes, 593.

Sowdeours, *s. pl.* hired warriors, mercenaries, 551, 593, 2925, 2938.

Sowe, *s.* some warlike engine, 3033. *See* Sow in Jamieson.

Sowmes, *s. pl.* sums, 1627.

Sownde, *adj.* 1577.

Sowpe, 1298, Soupe, 3805, *v.* sup; *3 s.* sowppes, 1025; *pret.* sowpped, 409; *i. p.* sowpande, 1044.

Sowper, *s.* supper, 1022.

Sowre, 1041. *Read Sowrs, source.*

Sowte. *See Soyte.*

Soyte, 81, 3931, Sowte, 3941, *s.* suit, company.

Spakely, *adv.* swiftly, quickly, 2063.

Spalddyd, *p.p.* split, 3699.

Spanne, *s.* span, 2060.

Spayre, *s.* the spare or thin part of the body, the waist, 2060.

Specyalle, *adj.* 999.

Spede, *v.* fare, succeed, 2414, speed, hasten, 2416; *pret.* spede, 1794; *p.p.* spede, 3016.

Speke, *v.* speak, 2415; *3 s.* spekes, 2063.

Spekes, *s. pl.* spokes (of a wheel), 3264, 3311.

Speltis, *s. pl.* thin streaks or splinters, 3264.

Spencis, *s. pl.* expenditure, 3163.

Spendyde, *v. pret.* spent, 235.

Spere, *s.* spear, 1794; *pl.* sperys, 1898.

Spere-lenghe, *adj.* spearlength, of the length of a spear, 3311.

Speryt, *s.* spirit, 4327.

Spille, *v.* perish, 2415; *pl.* spillis, destroy, 3159.

Spleene, *s.* 2061.

Splent, *s.* splint, 2061. "Splents. In ancient armour, several little plates that run over each other, and protected the inside of the arm." *Halliwell.* They were also worn on the leg (see Jamieson under *Splentis*), and probably on other parts of the body.

Splentide, *p.p.* splinted, adorned with splinters, 3264.

Sponene, *p.p.* spun, 999.

Spoures, 483, Spurres, 2416, *s.* *pl.* spurs.

Spraddene. *See Sprede.*

Sprangene. *See Sprynges.*

Sprede, *v.* spread, 3158; *pret.* sprede, 2062; *pret. pl.* spraddene, 3310.

Sprente, 2062, 3310, Sprentyde, 3700, *v. pret.* sprang, leapt.

Springande, Sprongene. *See Sprynges.*

Sproulez, *v. 3 s.* sprawls, 2063.

Sprynges, *v. 3 s.* springs, 3162; *pl.* spryngene, 3158; *pret. pl.* sprangene, 483; *i. p.* springande, 3265; *p.p.* spongene, 1943, burst, 1794, spronngene, 3699.

Spycerye, *s.* 162.

Spytte, *s.* spite, 270.

Sqwyere, *s.* squire, 1179.

Stade, *p.p.* set, placed, 1926.

Stake, *v.* put on a stake, 1178.

Stale, *s.* company, troop, 377, 1355, 1435, 1932; *pl.* stales, 1980.

Stalkis, *v. 3 s.* 3466.

Stam, *s.* foreship, 3664.

Stamyne, *s.* some part of a ship, 3658.

Standerde, *s.* 2080.

Statte, *s.* state, rank, 157.

Stedde, *p.p.* beset, 2824, 4133.

Stede, *s.* stead, place, 1748, 2824.

Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 1355; *pl.* stedes, 1280, stedys, 1488, 1647.

Stekes, *v. pl.* stick, stab, 3126; *3 s.* stekys, 3822; *pret.* stekede, 1488.

Stele, *s.* steel, 1371, 1487.

Stelene, 1488, 2129, Stelyne, 1354, *adj.* steelen, made of steel.

Stepes, *v. 3 s.* steps, 1229.

Sterape, 2692, Sterepe, 916, *s.* stirrup; *pl.* sterapes, 3823.

Stere-bourde, 745, Stere-burde, 3665, *s.* starboard.

Sterenefulle, 3824, Sterynfulle, 2692, *adj.* stern, fierce.

Steride, Steris. *See* Stire.

Stertez, 1104, Sterttes, 1355, Stirtez, 1932, Stytez, 1152, *v. 3 s.* starts; *pl.* stirties, 2692; *pret.* sterte, 916.

Steryne, 157, 377, 735, Sterynne, 3622, *adj.* stern; *superl.* steryneste, 3872.

Sterynly, *adv.* sternly, 745, 2130.

Sterys. *See* Stire.

Steuen, *s.* voice, 2531, 4269.

Stewede, *v. pret.* enclosed, 1489. "Estuier: Serrer, mettre dans un étui, cacher, enfermer, renfermer, envelopper, emprisonner."—*Roquefort.*

Stire, 2823, Styre, 4038, *v. stir, move; 3 s. sterys, 917; pl. steris, 2923, 3658; pret. steride, 1793; imp. 2 pl. stirrez, 1748.*

Stirttes, Stirtez. *See* Stertez.

Stiȝtelys, *v. pl.* arrange, 3622.

Stodde, Stode. *See* Stondez.

Stokes, *s. pl.* (?) estocs, or stabbing swords, 1436.

Stokes, *v. pl.* stab, 2554. "Estoquer, estoquier: Frapper, pousser, casser, rompre, briser." *Roquefort.*

Stokkes, *s. pl.* 3665.

Stonays, *v. pl.* stuns, hits stunning blows, 2118; *p.p.* stonayede, 1933, 3873.

Stondez, 2090, Stonndys, 3623, *v. pl.* stand; *pret.* stode, 1489, 2923, stodde, 4133.

Stotais, 1435, Stotays, 3467, 4271, *v. 3 s.* becomes foolish, mad, dizzy, or stupid. "Estoutir, estoutoyer: Être fou, imprudent, avoir de la témérité, être insensé; stultescere." *Roquefort.* Burguy gives the forms "estoteier, estouteier, estuteier, estoutoier, estotoier," but with the meaning "maltraître."

Stour, 377, 1747, Stoure, 1488, Stowre, 2086, *s.* battle.

Stownde, *s. time, 3974; pl. stowndys, 3888.*

Stownntyng, *s. stopping, delay, 491.*

Stowre. *See* Stour.

Strake. *See* Stryke.

Strandez, 598, 883, 947, 1227, 1337, Strandys, 3626, Strondes, 4067, *s. pl. waters.*

Strates, 561, Straytez, 3009, *s. pl. straits, narrow places.*

Strayte, 1933, Straytt, 1230, *adj. strait, narrow.*

Streke, *adv.* straight, 1792, 3101.

Strekis, Strekyne. *See* Stryke.

Strekez, *v. 3 s.* stretches, 1229, 2085.

Streme, *s. stream, 755; pl. stremes, 1224.*

Strenghe, 258, 376, Strenghte, 796, *s. strength; strong place, 1230, 1435; pl. strenghes, forces, 1475, 2242, strenghez, 1827, strenghethis, 3322.*

Strenghely, *adv.* strongly, 4096.

Strette, *s. street, road, 3467.*

Streynez, *v. 3 s.* exerts, 917.

Strondes. *See* Strandez.

Stroye, 1927, Struye, 561, *v. destroy; pl. stroyene, 3127; p.p. stroyede, 1933, struyede, 1205.*

Stryke, *v. strike, smite; 3 s. strykez, 1124, strykkes, 1480; pl. strykkys, 1411, strekes, 3101; pret. strake, 2080, 2129; pret. pl. strekyne, 755, 3659.*

Studyande, *i. p.* studying, 3467.

Stuffe, *v. furnish, 1932; pl. stuf-fene, 2369; pret. stufede, 3616.*

Sturdely, *adv.* sturdily, 1104.

Stye, *s. path, 3466.*

Styghtylle, *v. order, arrange, 157.*

Stynte, *v. cease, 3127.*

Styre. *See* Stire.

Styrtez. *See* Stertez.

Subarbe, *s.* suburbs, 4043; *pl.* subarbis, 3122, subbarbes, 2466.

Subgettez. *See* Sugett.

Suerddes. *See* Swerde.

Sugett, 87, Sugette, 3138, *s.* subject; *pl.* subgettez, 2314.

Suggourne, *v.* sojourn, 153, 354, 1335; *3 s.* suggeourns, 54, suggournez, 624.

Sulayne, *adj.* alone, 2592.

Sulde, *v.* *sulj.* *pret.* should, 72, 213, 214.

Sundyre, *v.* part, separate, 7.

Suppowelle, *v.* support, 2818.

Supprisede, 2616, Supprisede, 1845, Supprysede, 3797, Supprysede, 1951, Supprysside, 1420, *p.p.* taken unawares, overtaken, surprised.

Surcott, 3252, Surcotte, 2434, *s.* surcoat.

Surepel, *s.* cover, 3317.

Surgyne, *s.* surgeon, 4311.

Surrawns, *s.* assurance, security, 3181.

Surs, *s.* rising, rise, 1978, 2511, 3468.

Suteleste, *adj.* subtlest, 808.

Suyche. *See* Swylke.

Suyte, 179, 210, 528, Suytte, 3139, *s.* suit.

Swafres, *v.* *3 s.* staggers, 3970. *Sc. swaver*, to walk feebly. *Jamieson.*

Swalters, *v.* *3 s.* (?) 3924.

Swange, *s.* loins, 1129.

Swangene, *v.* *pret.* *pl.* swung, 2146.

Swanke, *v.* *pret.* toiled, 2961, 3361.

Swape, *s.* blow, stroke, 314.

Swappes, 4244, Swappez, 1126, 1129, *v.* *3 s.* smites, strikes; *pl.*

swappene, 1464, swappez, 1465; *pret.* swappede, 1795.

Swarthe, *s.* sward, grassy ground, 1126, 1466, 2145, 2960.

Swathes, *s.* *pl.* 2508.

Swayne, *s.* 3360.

Swefene, *s.* dream, 812; *pl.* swefennys, 3228.

Swefnynge, *s.* dreaming, 759.

Swelte, *v.* die, 716, 813; *3 s.* sweltes, 2961, faints, 3969; *pl.* swelltez, 1466; *pret.* swelte, 2982; *i. p.* sweltand, 2146, swelltande, 1465.

Sweperly, *adv.* quickly, nimbly, 1128, 1465. *Sc. swipper*, quick, swift, nimble. *Jamieson.*

Sweppene, *p.p.* swept, 2508.

Swerde, *s.* sword, 47, 715; *pl.* swerddez, 1253, suerddes, 314.

Swete, 3703, 4223, Swett, 2145, Swette, 3360, *s.* life.

Swetly, 3970, Swettly, 1297, *adv.* sweetly.

Sweyftly, *adv.* swiftly, 3703.

Sweys, *v.* *3 s.* sways, 57; *pl.* 1467, 3676, 4273.

Swiche. *See* Swylke.

Swoghe, *s.* swaying motion, 759.

Swoghe, *s.* swoon, 1467.

Swoughe, *s.* whirr, 1127.

Swoune, *s.* swoon, 3969.

Swounes, *v.* *3 s.* swoons, 1127; *i. p.* swounande, 1467, 2960.

Swowynge, *s.* sound, 931.

Swyer, *s.* squire, 2959, 3703.

Swykede, 1795, Swykkede, 3361, *v. pret.* deceived.

Swylke, 403, Swiche, 3000, Suyche, 529, Slyke, 3719, Siche, 967, 1031, Syche, 76, 226, *adj. such.*

Swym, *s.* swoon, 4246.

Swynge, *s.* swing, 3360, 3676, 4223.

Swyre-bane, *s.* neckbone, 2959.  
 Swythe, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 185, 409, 715, very, 1949; as swythe = immediately, 813.  
 Sybb, Sybbe. *See* Sibb.  
 Sybredyne, *s.* kindred, 691, 4145.  
 Syche. *See* Swylke.  
 Sydlyngs, *adv.* sidelong, sideways, 1039, 1043.  
 Sydys, *s. pl.* sides, 2148.  
 Syene. *See* Syne.  
 Syghande, 3794, Sygheande, 3891, *i. p.* sighing.  
 Syland, 1297, Sylande, 3794, 4340, *i. p.* flowing.  
 Syluerene, *adj.* silvern, made of silver, 1949.  
 Sylure, *s.* canopy, 3194.  
 Symple, *adj.* mean, 684, few, 967.  
 Syne, *s. sin*, 3315, 3986.  
 Syne, 85, 1182, 3216, Syne, 4083, Synne, 3435, *adv.* afterwards.  
 Synechalle, 1871, Syneschalle, 1910, *s.* seneschal.  
 Synglere, *s.* boar, 3123.  
 Syngne, *s.* sign, 3075.  
 Syngulere, *adj.* single, 826.  
 Synkande, *i. p.* sinking, 3705.  
 Synne. *See* Syne.  
 Syr, Syre. *See* Sir.  
 Syte, 1060, Sytte, 1305, *s.* grief, sorrow.  
 Sythene, 184, 1336, Sythine, 159, Shythne, 56, 169, Sethene, 1977, *adv.* afterwards.  
 Sythis, *s. pl.* times, 2216.  
 Syttyne, *p.p.* sat, 511.  
 Tabylle, *s.* table, 53.  
 Tachementez, *s. pl.* attachments, 1568.  
 Tachesesede (?), 821.  
 Tacle, 3679, Takle, 2444, Takelle, 3618, *s.* tackle.  
 Taghte, 178, Tawghte, 3202, *adj.* taught, trained.  
 Tak, *v.* take, 144; take, 307, proceed, go; *3 s.* tase, 1890, takes; *pl.* tas, 3203; *pret.* tuke, 328, 1359, 2242; *p.p.* takyne, 73, gone.  
 Tale, *s.* number, 317, 335, 2933, account, 4094.  
 Talmes, *v.* *3 s.* falters, 2581. Du. *Talmen*, to loiter, linger, haggle, waver, act tediously, be irresolute or in suspense. *Sewell's Dictionary*.  
 Talounez, *s. pl.* talons, claws, 800.  
 Targe, *s.* round shield; *pl.* targez, 732. The targe was often embazoned, hence at line 89, targe = arms on a seal.  
 Tarsse, *s.* kind of cloth, 3189.  
 Tarye, *v.* tarry, 1703.  
 Tas, Tase. *See* Tak.  
 Tauernez, *s. pl.* taverns, 1568.  
 Taulde, *p.p.* told, 2618.  
 Tawghte. *See* Taghte.  
 Temez, *v.* *3 s.* empties, 1801.  
 Temperalle, *s.* 2409.  
 Tempeste, *v.* 2408.  
 Temporaltee, *s.* 1570.  
 Tende, *adj.* heedful, attentive, intent, 1916. *Sc. tent*.  
 Tende, *adj.* tenth, 73.  
 Tene = ten, 1421.  
 Tene, *s.* injury, wrong, grief, vexation, 1396, 1956. A.S. *teona*.  
 Tenefulle, *adj.* harmful, grievous, 4280.  
 Tenefully, *adv.* grievously, 272, 2345.  
 Tenes, *v. pl.* harm, vex, annoy, 264. A.S. *teonan*.  
 Tente, *s.* heed, attention, 3586, 4094.

Tentyly, *adv.* heedfully, attentively, 3618.

Teraunt, *s.* tyrant, wicked or cruel man, 842; *pl.* terauntez, 583, tirauntez, 1801, tyrauntez, 2408.

Terez, *v. 3 s.* tears, 800; *pl.* terez, 1143.

Teris, 3886, Terys, 3794, *s. pl.* tears.

Tha, 77, 157, 377, Thaa, 1993, *pl. of the.*

Thai, 1141, 1144, Thay, 1160, They, 22, *pron. n. pl.*; *gen.* thaire, 1143, 1396, theire, 13, 20, thiere, 160, 3191, thire, 19; *obj.* thaime, 396, thame, 329, 923, thaym, 2276, 2280, theme, 169, theym, 1886, theyme, 1889.

Than, 1212, 2153, Thane, 64, 196, *adv.* then.

Thar, 881, Thare, 60, 102, *adv.* there; thare = where, 59, 1185.

Thare, *impers. v.* 403; hym thare = he needs.

Thare-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, after that, 1495, 2028.

Thareby, 190, Thar-by, 1186, *adv.* thereby, beside.

Thare-fore, *adv.* therefore, 2042.

Thare-in, 1242, Thare-ine, 1254, *adv.* therein.

Thas, 58, 432, Thase, 236, 434, *adj.* those.

Thedyre, *adv.* thither, 2488.

Thee, *s.* thigh, 1046; *pl.* theese, 1100.

Theeffe, *s.* thief, 1150.

Thees, Theis, Theise. *See This.*

Then, 315, Thene, 1344, *conj.* than.

Ther, *adv.* there, 884; where, 1131, 1219; there = where, 476.

Ther-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, 1115, according to it, 339.

Ther-to, *adv.* thereto, also, 181.

Ther-vndyre, *adv.* under it, 1156.

Thes. *See This.*

Thethene, *adv.* thence, 4345.

Thewes, *s. pl.* virtues, good qualities, 21.

Theyne = thine, 3403.

Theys. *See This.*

Thie = thee, 104.

Thiere, Thire. *See Thai.*

Thies, Thiese. *See This.*

Thikke, *s.* thick, dense part of a crowd, 3755; *pl.* thykkys, 2216.

Thir, Thire. *See This.*

Thirllede, Thirllez. *See Thyrle.*

This, *pron. or adj.* 410; *pl.* thees, 154, 167, theis, 1604, theise, 2044, thes, 48, 1356, theys, 2810, theis, 104, 264, thiese, 2723, thise, 152, 263, thys, 52, thir, 1161, 1164, thire, 993.

Thof. *See Thoghe.*

Thoghe, 477, 1329, Thof, 2443, Thofe, 109, 460, Thoffe, 2688, *conj.* though.

Thoghte. *See Thynkes.*

Thole, *v.* suffer, endure, permit, 676, 4022, 4150.

Thoos, 156, 158, Thos, 42, 2200, *pron.* those.

Thorowe, Thorughe. *See Thurghe.*

Thorowely, *adv.* thoroughly, 3294.

Thorowowte, *prep.* throughout, right through, 2170, 2986.

Thosande, 1400, Thosannde, 1537, Thowsande, 1421, *s.* thousand.

Thourghe. *See Thurghe.*

Thourghe-gyrde, *p.p.* smitten through, pierced, 3683.

Thra, 3295, Thraa, 249, *adj.* vehement, eager; *superl.* thraeste, 3756.

Thrane, *s* throng, 2217.

Thrawe, *s.* throe, pang, 1150.

Threpide, 930, Threppede, 2216, *v. pret.* strove.

Thrette, *v.* threaten, 3295; *3 s.* thretys, 249.

Thretty, *adj.* thirty, 3295.

Thristis, *v.* *pl.* thrust, 3755.

Throly, *adv.* vehemently, 1150, 2217, 4332.

Thronge, *v.* press, 3755.

Throo, *adj.* vehement, 3294.

Throstilles, *s.* *pl.* throstles, 930.

Throwene, *p.p.* thrown, 3694.

Throwghe, Thrughe, Thrughte. *See* Thurghe.

Thryftye, *adj.* 317.

Thryngetz, *v.* *3 s.* presses, squeezes, 1150, 2217.

Thrystez, *v.* *3 s.* thrusts, 1151.

Thryttene, *adj.* thirteen, 2216.

Thurghe, 1, 215, 499, Thourghe, 1792, 2253, Thorughe, 495, Thorowe, 5, 24, Throwghe, 1772, Thrughe, 1413, Thrughte, 390, *prep.* through. A.S. *þurh*.

Thurghe-girde, *p.p.* smitten through, 1461.

Thursse, *s.* giant, 1100. A.S. *þyrs*.

Thyklys. *See* Thikke.

Thynkes, 366, 1335, Thynkys, 350, Thynkys, 2440, *impers. v.* seems; seems good, 996; *pret.* thoghte, 495, 2479, thoughte, 3230.

Thyrle, *v.* pierce, 1413; *3 s.* thirllez, 2167; *pret.* thirllede, 1858, 3890; *p.p.* thirllede, 2238, 2688.

Thyȝandez. *See* Tydandis.

Tide, *s.* time, 3902; *pl.* tydez, 753.

Til, 6, 36, Tille, 10, 130, Tylle, 3608, *prep.* to.

Tiltine, *v.* *pl.* tilt, topple, 1144.

Tite, 3886, 3887, Tyte, 737, 841, Tytt, 744, Tytte, 1891, 2583, *adv.* quickly; alls tite = as quickly, at once, immediately.

Tittez, *v.* *3 s.* makes totter, 1801.

To, *adv.* too, 957, 1200.

To, *conj.* till, 3182.

To-briste, *v.* burst asunder, 3982.

To-geders, 1050, To-gedirs, 1000, To-gedyre, 2718, *adv.* together.

Togers, *s.* *pl.* clothes, 178.

Toges, *s.* *pl.* togas, 3189.

Toile, *s.* tussle, broil, 1802. Sc. *tulyie*.

Tolle, *s.* customs, 1568.

Tolowris, *s.* *pl.* (?) tool-makers, 3618.

To-morne, *adv.* to-morrow, 1587.

Tonges, *s.* *pl.* tongues (of a dragon's tail), 821.

Toppe, *s.* top, 1144, head, 801.

Toppe-castelles, *s.* *pl.* 3616.

To-rattys, *v.* *pl.* rend asunder, 2235.

Torfere, 1956, 3451, 3567, Tourfere, 2582, *s.* harm, mischief.

Tornys, 3015, Tournes, 1891, *v.* *3 s.* turns; *pret.* tornede, 3203, tournde, 1052.

To-ruscheez, *v.* *pl.* dash asunder, 1428.

To-stonayede, *p.p.* utterly stunned, 1436.

Tother, *adj.* other, 234, 3283. The first *t* is really part of the article, for *the tother* = that other, just as *the tone* = that one.

Toure, *s.* tower, 245, 1890; *pl.* toures, 39, towrez, 1569, towrres, 3153.

Tourfere. *See* Torfere. .

Towche, *v.* touch, 2067, concern, tell; *3 s.* towchez, 800, 1570, 1591; *pret.* towchede, 770, towchide, 841; *i. p.* towchande, 263.

Towne, *adj.* trained, 178.

Tō-wrythes, *v.* *3 s.* writhes, 3920.

Towyne, *v.* *pl.* draw, haul, 3655.

Toylez, 732, Toyelys, 3616, *s. pl.*  
(?) gear, tools.

Traise, *v.* 3 *s.* draws, 1629.

Traistely, 3568, Traystely, 1976,  
*adv.* safely, securely.

Traistez. *See* Trayste.

Trappede, *p.p.* covered with trap-  
pings, 1757, 2150.

Trauaillede, *p.p.* who have toiled,  
1947.

Trauaylande, 1684, Trauelande,  
1630, *i. p.* travelling.

Trauayle, *s.* labour, 3566.

Traylede, *p.p.* 250.

Trayne, *s.* stratagem, 1630, 3901,  
4192.

Trayne, *v.* entice, deceive, 1683.

Trays, *s.* trace, track, 4055.

Trayste, *v.* trust, 669; 3 *s.* traistez,  
1987, 2870; *pret.* traystede, 1955,  
3569.

Traystely. *See* Traistely.

Traytoure, *s.* traitor, 2173, 4055.

Trayuellede, *p.p.* toiled, laboured,  
2357.

Trebute, 114, 2611, Trebutte,  
2344, Tribute, 271, Tributte, 2357,  
*s.*

Tremlande, *i. p.* trembling, 3899.

Trenchande, *adj.* trenchant, sharp,  
3856.

Tresone, *s.* treason, treachery,  
1629, 2017.

Tresoure, *s.* treasure, 668, 886,  
991.

Trete, *s. (?)* row, 3655.

Trett, 250, Trette, 263, 878,  
2932, *v.* treat; *p.p.* tretyd, 407,  
tretide, 3191.

Treunt, *v.* steal a march, 1976;  
*pret.* treuntedede, 3900; *p.p.* treunt,  
2017.

Trew, 263, 992, Trewe, 879,  
2932, *s.* truce.

Trewage, *s.* tribute, 2358.

Trewe, *adj.* true, 16.

Trewghe. *See* Trewthe.

Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2610.

Trewthe, 3437, Trewghe, 3929,  
*s.* truth.

Treyntis (?), 4056.

Trine. *See* Tryne.

Trippe, *v.* trip, move lightly, 3713.

Trisene, *v. pl.* trice (nautical term),  
832.

Tristily, 407, Trystily, 2357, *adv.*  
trustily, faithfully.

Tristly, 731, 1262, Trystly, 832,  
*adv.* confidently, boldly

Trofle, 2932, Trofullle, 1702, *v.*  
trifle; *i. p.* trofelande, 1683.

Trome, *v.* troop, 3592. A.S.  
*truma*, a troop.

Trompede, *adj.* having trumpets,  
3713.

Trompes, 1757, Tromppez, 1484,  
1947, Troumppes, 4107, Troump-  
pez, 1702, Trumppez, 832, *s. pl.*  
trumpets.

Trouflynge, *s.* trifling, 114.

Trouthe, 164, 1314, Trowthe,  
1063, 1807, Trowhe, 3804, *s.* troth,  
fidelity; *pl.* trowhes, 2325.

Trow, 89, Trowe, 250, 887, 1693,  
*v.* believe.

Trowhe. *See* Trouthe.

Trowmpyne, *s.* trumpeting, 3191.

Trufles, *s. pl.* trifles, 89.

Trumppede, *v.* *pret.* trumpeted,  
407.

Trumppez. *See* Trompes.

Trusse, *v.* truss, pack up, 3592,  
stow; *inf.* trussene, 1976; *pl.*  
trussez, 731, trvssene, 3655; *p.p.*  
trussede, 1702.

Trvsselle, *s.* packs, bundles, 3655.

Tryede, *v.* *pret.* picked out, se-  
lected, 1947. Fr. *trier*.

Trymblyde, *v. pret.* trembled, 270.  
 Tryne, *v. go*, proceed; trine, 1757; 3 *s.* trynes, 3592, trynys, 4055, trynnys, 3901; (?) *pret. pl.* tryne, 3192; *i. p.* trynande, 4189.  
 Trystily. *See* Tristily.  
 Trystly. *See* Tristly.  
 Tuke. *See* Tak.  
 Tumbellez, *v. pl.* tumble, 1143.  
 Tunge, *s.* tongue, 1250, 1891.  
 Turmenttez, *v. 2 s.* tormentest, 1954; 3 *s.* turmentez, 3153.  
 Tuskes, 1075, 3234, Tuskez, 791, *s. pl.* teeth.  
 Twa, *adj.* two, 171, 335.  
 Twys, *adv.* twice, 716.  
 Tydandis, 3450, 3899, Tythdands, 264, Thyȝandez, 1567, *s. pl.* tiddings.  
 Tyde, *v.* betide, happen, 879; 3 *s.* tyddes, 1703; *p.p.* tydd, 3654, tydde, 3451.  
 Tydez. *See* Tide.  
 Tykes, *s. pl.* dogs, 3642, 4258.  
 Tylle. *See* Til.  
 Tymbyrde, *p.p.* built, devised, 3742.  
 Tymede, *v. pret.* happened, 3150.  
 Tyne, *v. lose*, 2933; 2 *s.* tynnez, 1954; *p.p.* tynt, 272, 770, tynte, 1917, 2345, = perished, 4281.  
 Tyrauntly, *adv.* like a tyrant, 271.  
 Tyseday, *s.* Tuesday, 3900.  
 Tyte, Tytt. *See* Tite.  
 Tythdands. *See* Tydandis.  
 Valyaunt, *adj.* valiant, 2093.  
 Vassallage, *s.* service, 2048.  
 Vawewarde, *s.* vanguard, 1981.  
 Velany, *s.* villany, 298, 326.  
 Vencows. *See* Venquyse.  
 Venemus, 299, Venymmos, 4124, *adj.* venomous.  
 Venge, *v. avenge*, 867; *p.p.* vengede, 298, 2264.  
 Venquyse, 1984, Vencows, 4297, *v.* vanquish; *pret.* venqwiste, 2093; *p.p.* venqueste, 3765, venquiste, 325, venqwyste, 2065.  
 Ventelde, *v. pret.* spread sail to the wind, 737.  
 Venymmos. *See* Venemus.  
 Vernacle, *s.* a handkerchief said to have the print of Christ's face upon it, 297, 307.  
 Vernage, *s.* a kind of drink, 204, 3166.  
 Verrayely, 3765, Verreilly, 308, *adv.* truly.  
 Verrede, *p.p.* spotted, 2573.  
 Vertely, *adv.* readily, 3168.  
 Vertous, Vertouous. *See* Vertouse.  
 Virtue, *s.* virtue, 215, 4297.  
 Vertouse, 204, Vertuus, 297, Vertouous, 3055, Vertous, 5, *adj.* virtuous.  
 Vescounte, Vescownte. *See* Viconte.  
 Vesage, *s.* visage, 137, 3055.  
 Vesare, 910, Vesere, 3054, *s.* visor.  
 Vesettez, *v. 3 s.* visits, 1726.  
 Vesselle, *s.* 3071.  
 Vestoure, *s.* clothing, 3071.  
 Vetaile, *s.* victuals, 3071.  
 Vetaile, *v.* victual, 353; 3 *s.* vetailles, 3165.  
 Viage, *s.* journey, expedition, 2037, 2493.  
 Vice, *s.* fault, defect, 911.  
 Vicounte, 3167, Viscownte, 2047, Vescounte, 2024, Vescownte, 1984, Vyscownte, 2050, *s.*  
 Visez, *v. 3 s.* purposes, 3167.  
 Vmbeclappes, *v. 3 s.* embraces, 1779.

Vmbegrippys, *v. 3 s.* grasps, 3758; *pret.* vmbegrippede, 3944.

Vmbelappes, *v. 3 s.* surrounds, 1819; *pret.* vmbylappyde, 3785.

Vmbrere, *s.* part of a helmet, the movable part which shelters the face, 943, 2247, 3952.

Vn-abaste, *adj.* unabashed, not cast down, 1378.

Vnblysside, *adj.* unblest, not marked with the sign of the cross, 962.

Vnblythely, *adv.* sadly, 1434.

Vnbrydilles, *v. pl.* unbridle, 2509.

Vnclede, *p.p.* unclothed, 4202.

Vncouere, *v.* uncover, 2710; *pret.* vncouerde, 739.

Vncouthe, 1902, 3449, Vncowthe, 3514, *adj.* unknown, strange.

Vncowpylle, *v.* uncouple, 3999.

Vndir-takande, *i. p.* enterprising, 2723.

Vndone, *p.p.* 1722, 3752, 3966.

Vndrone, 2840, 3077, Vndroune, 462, *s.*

Vndyrtakyng, *s.* 3187.

Vne-made, *adj.* unmade, 2507.

Vnfaire, 303, 779, 1045, Vnfayre, 2171, *adv.* badly, ill, unpleasantly.

Vnfaye, *adj.* unharmed, sound, 2796.

Vnfers, *adj.* unfierce, tame, 4122.

Vnfondyde, *adj.* untried, 2485.

Vnfraistede, 2861, Vnfraystede, 2736, *adj.* untried.

Vnfrely, *adv.* (?) ignobly, 780.

Vnlordly, *adj.* 1313; *adv.* 1267.

Vnmete, *adj.* unmeet, 4070.

Vnquellede, *adj.* unkilled, 3810.

Vnrekene, *adj.* (?) unpleasant, 3754.

Vnresonable, *adj.* 3452.

Vnrygħttwyslye, *adv.* unrighteously, 329.

Vnsaughte, 1910, Vnsawghte, 1306, 1457, 4140, *adj.*

Vnsaughtely, 1501, Vnsaughtly, 1847, *adv.*

Vnsekyrly, *adv.* unsafely, 966.

Vnsemly, *adv.* unseemlily, 1044.

Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, 3114.

Vnsley, *adv.* unskilfully, clumsily, 979.

Vnsownde, *adj.* 3290, 3931, 3942.

Vnsparely, 3160, Vnsparyly, 235, *adv.* unsparingly.

Vntenderly, 1144, Vntendirly, 2575, *adv.*

Vntrewe, *adj.* untrue, faithless, 4227.

Vntrewely, *adv.* dishonestly, 886.

Vnuenquiste, *adj.* unvanquished, 2049.

Vnwemmyde, *adj.* unspotted, spotless, 3801.

Vnwittly, *adv.* unwisely, 3802.

Vnwynly, *adv.* unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481, 3562.

Vnwyse, *adj.* 3817.

Voide, 309, Voyde, 215, 2049, 2094, *v.* pass out, pass away; *3 s.* voydes, retreats, 3764, voydez, withdraws, 1974; *pl.* voydez, quit, 3168.

Voute, 137, Vowt, 3054, *s.* mien. Lat. *vultus*.

Voyde, *adj.* empty, vain, 10, (?) open, 911.

Voyde, Voydes, Voydez. *See* Voide.

Vpbrayde, *v.* 1930.

Vpcynes, *s. pl.* (?) 3675.

Vpe = up, 1119, 1877.

Vrayllede, *p.p.* 2568. Perhaps for “*Vervelled*, or *Varvelled*:— having small rings attached.” *Boutell’s Heraldry*, p. 88.

Vse, *v.* practise, 1843.

Vtas, *s.* 625. "The eighth day, or the space of eight days, after any festival." *Halliwell.*

Vttere, *adv.* further out, 2438.

Vtters, *v.* 3 *s.* dismisses, 418.

Vttirly, *adv.* 3966.

Vys, 3617, Vyse, 2424, *s.* screw. Crossbows were drawn back by means of a screw.

Wache, *v.* watch, 547; *inf.* wachene, 613; *p.p.* wachede, 1613.

Wache, *s.* watch, 2499; *pl.* waches, 1356.

Wafulle, *adj.* woeful, sorrowful, 950, 955.

Wagande, *i. p.* wagging, waving, 3660.

Wage, *s.* pay, 302.

Wage, 547, Wagge, 333, 1615, *v.* hire, engage; wage, stake, 2967.

Wagene, *v.* wager, 2445.

Wakkens, 2370, Wakkenyse, 257, Waknez, 806, *v.* 3 *s.* awakes; wakkenysse, wakens, 3562; *pret.* wakkenyde, awoke, 3392.

Walde, *v. pret.* would, 339, 342, wouldest, 876, 1035.

Wale, *s.* gunwale, 740.

Wale, *v.* choose, 181.

Wale, *adj.* choice, 2148.

Wale, *adj.* eddying, surging, 741, 763.

Walkande, *i. p.* walking, 762, 3479.

Walkyne, *s.* welkin, sky, 787.

Walle, *s.* wave, 493. Ger. *welle.*

Walopande, *i. p.* galloping, 2147, 2827.

Walowes, *v. pl.* wallow, roll, 1142; *pret.* walewede, 3838.

Walsche, *adj.* Welsh, 320, 2044.

Wandrethe, 323, 2370, Wanedrethe, 384, *s.* woe, sorrow.

Wandsomdly, *adv.* (?) sorrowfully, 4012.

Wandyrs, *v.* 3 *s.* wanders, 798; *i. p.* wanderande, 763.

Wane, *adj.* wan, dusky, dark, 492. A.S. *wan.*

Wane. *See* Wyne.

Wapene, 1106, Wapyne, 1119, *s.* weapon; *pl.* wapinez, 2137, wapyns, 312.

War. *See* Ware.

Warantizez, *s. pl.* guarantees, 1614.

Wardane, 3523, Wardayne, 650, 2494, *s.* warden.

Warde, *s.* ward, 2480, custody, 1613.

Wardede, *p.p.* guarded, 1614.

Wardrop, 4203, Wardrobe, 901, 2622, *s.* wardrobe.

Ware = where, 1054.

Ware, *v. pret. pl.* were, 18, 177; *subj. pret. 1 s.* warre, 2647; *2 s.* ware, 964; *3 s.* ware, 73, war, 976; *pl.* ware.

Ware, 19, Warre, 1973, 2045, *adj.* wary, cautious, aware. A.S. *wær.*

Warely, *adv.* cautiously, 4026.

Waresche, *v.* be healed, recover, 2186.

Warlawe, 948, 958, Warlow, 1140, Werlanghe, 3771, *s.* warlock, wizard; also, a wicked man; *pl.* warlaws, 613.

Warnes, *v. 3 s.* refuses, denies, 700.

Warpe, 150, Werpe, 9, *v.* throw, cast; *pl.* warpes, 2746; warpes awaye = make off; *pret.* warpe, 901.

Was, *v. pret. pl.* were, 1415.

Wasternne, *s.* desert place, wilderness, 3233. *See* *Wasturne* in *Aliterative Poems*, B. 1674. A.S. *wéstern.*

Wate. *See* Wiet.

Wathe, *s.* way, path, 3233. *See Wope* in *Alliterative Poems*, A. 151. A.S. *wāðu*.

Wathe, *s.* harm, hurt, 2668. *See Wope* in *Alliterative Poems*, B. 855.

Wathely, *adv.* badly, 2090, 2186.

Watte. *See* Wiet.

Watyre, *s.* water, 1299, 1358.

Watyre-mene, *s. pl.* mariners, 741.

Wauerynge, *s.* 2224.

Wawarde, *s.* vanguard, 1767. *See Avanttwarde.*

Wawhte, (?) 3480.

Waxe, *v.* grow, 4322.

Wayfare, *s.* course, 1797.

Wayfe, *v.* wander, stray, 960.

Waykly, *adv.* weakly, 697.

Wayte, *v.* watch, look out for, 164, 1807; *3 s.* wayttes, 2979; *inf.* wayttene, 1973.

Weches, *s. pl.* witches, 613.

Wedde, *p.p.* wedded, 700.

Wedes, 1365, Wedez, 168, 500, Wedys, 2429, *s. pl.* weeds, garments.

Wedirwyns. *See* Wyderwyne.

Wedowe, *s.* widow, 950, 4285; *pl.* wedewes, 3154.

Weende. *See* Wende.

Weife. *See* Wif.

Weilde. *See* Welde.

Weile. *See* Wele.

Weisely. *See* Wyesly.

Wekyrl, *adv.* watchfully; hence, in a lively manner, briskly, 2104. A.S. *wacorlice*, watchfully.

Welde, 3090, Welde, 650, *v.* rule; possess, 2967.

Wele, *s.* riches, wealth, 401, 653, weal, 4100.

Wele, 170, 230, 321, Weile, 1788, *adv.* well.

Welle, *s.* spring, well, 540, 882.

Welle, *v.* spring up, bubble up, boil; *3 s.* wellys, flows, 3819; *pret.* wellyde, 3377; *p.p.* wellyde, boiled, 1736.

Welte, *v.* *pret.* overturned, 3152.

Welters, 1140, Welteryys, 890, *v.* *3 s.* rolls; *pl.* welters, 1142; *i. p.* welterande, 2147.

Welthes, *s. pl.* 3157.

Wende. *See* Wene.

Wende, 302, 1299, Weende, 2445, 2493, *v.* go; *2 s.* weyndez, 450; *3 s.* wendes, 614, wendez, 701, weyndes, 2185; *pret.* went, 1301.

Wene, *v.* think, suppose; *2 s.* wenes, 1806, wenez, 963; *pret.* wende, 2121.

Wenges, 768, Wengez, 819, 926, *s. pl.* wings.

Wepede, *v.* *pret.* wept, 1920; *i. p.* wepand, 2679, 3561.

Werdes, 3889, Weredes, 385, *s. pl.* fates, destinies

Werdez. *See* Werle.

Were, *adv.* where, 3692.

Were, 22, 33, 257, Werre, 516, 621, *s.* war.

Weredes. *See* Werdes.

Weres = veers (?), 3054.

Weries. *See* Wery, *v.*

Werke, *s.* work; *pl.* werkes, 3, 19.

Werkkes, *v.* *3 s.* aches, 2689; *i. p.* werkand, 1797, 2148.

Werlaughe. *See* Warlawe.

Werle, *s.* world, 5, 708; *gen. sg.* werdez, 674.

Werpe. *See* Warpe.

Werraye, 546, Werreye, 657, *v.* make war, war upon; *pl.* werrayes, 3447; *pret.* werrayede, 2045, 2215; *i. p.* werrayande, 2089, werreyand, 2599.

Werre. *See* Were.

Werryde, *v. pret.* wore, 3872; *p.p.* werede, worn, 2930.

Wery, 699, 3155, Werye, 4286, *v. curse*; 3 *s.* weries, 3888; *p.p.* weryd, 959.

Wery, *adj.* weary, 492, 3392.

Weryede, *p.p.* wearied, 796.

Wesche, *v. pret.* washed, 231; *p.p.* weschene, 1301.

Wetene, Wette. *See* Wiet.

Wette, *v. pret.* wetted, 2332.

Weyffe. *See* Wif.

Weyndes, Weyndez. *See* Wende.

Weyne = wine, *s.* 161.

Weysse. *See* Wiese.

Whame, 1202, Whayme, 770, *pron.* whom.

Whanne. *See* Wyne.

Whare, *adv.* where, 107, 302.

Whare = were, 174, 529.

Whas = was, 76, 634.

Whayme. *See* Whame.

Whedire, 3231, Whedyr, 2533, Whedyre, 962, *adv.* whither.

Whedyre, *conj.* whether, 1717.

Whene, 2044, Whenne, 63, *adv.* when.

Whethire, *pron.* which (of two), 350.

Whilde = wild, *adj.* 3232, 3446.

Whilke, *pron.* which, 4194.

Whilles, 1335, 1570, Whills, 1705, Whils, 1737, Whylez, 1597, *conj.* whilst; whilles, 1197, whills, 3908, whylles, 2132, 2511, until.

Whilome, *adv.* sometimes, 1145.

Whitte = white, *adj.* 3260.

Whoo = who, 1322.

Whydyrewyns. *See* Wyderwyne.

Whyeseste. *See* Wiese.

Whyne, why—not, 703. Whyne myghte I dye = O that I might die!

Wieffe. *See* Wif.

Wielde, *s. (?)* 2689.

Wiese, 3035, Weysse, 2514, Wyes, 149, Wyese, 1972, Wyesse, 2745, *adj.* wise; *superl.* wyseste, 290, whyeseste, 532.

Wiet, 420, Wette, 948, Wyt, 958, *v. know, know of*; 1 *s.* wate, 4203, watte, 533, 2224; 2 *s.* wate, 3393, watte, 692, 3549; *pl.* wotte (*properly a sg. form*), 4100; *pret.* wiste, 3231, wist, 4204, wyste, 339, 891; *p.p.* wetene, 2966, wytene, 869.

Wif, 993, Weife, 652, Weyffe, 674, Wieffe, 3550, Wyefe, 3575, Wyf, 986, Wyfe, 955, Wyffe, 3082, *s. woman, wife*; *pl.* wyfes, 294.

Wightenez. *See* Wyghtnesse.

Wile, *v. get away by stealth*, 3908.

Wilfully, *adv.* 151, 3835.

Wille, *s. wildness, madness*, 3836.

Willed, *p.p.* strayed, astray, 3230.

Wilne, *v. desire*; 2 *s.* willnez, 2224, wilnez, 3479, wylnez, 961; 3 *s.* wylnez, 384. A.S. *wilnian*.

Wirche. *See* Wirke.

Wirchipe, 2187, Wyrchip, 10, Wyrchipe, 150, *s. honour*; *pl.* wyrchippis, 22.

Wirchipe, Wyrchipe, 397, *v. honour*; 3 *s.* wyrscheppez, 1059; *p.p.* wirchipid, 320, wyrchipide, 257, 685.

Wyrchipfulle, 1356, 2231, Wyrchipfulle, 333, 650, *adj.* worshipful, honourable.

Wirke, 339, 2187, Wyrke, 149, Wirche, 3008, Wyrche, 130, 1030, 1384, *v. work, perform, do*; 2 *s.* wirkkes, 2432; 3 *s.* wyrkez, 1267, wirkkes, 1468; *pl.* wyrkes, 663; *pret.* wroghte, 1796; *pret. pl.* wroghtene, 2137; *p.p.* wroghte, 2622, 3495.

Wist, Wiste. *See* Wiet.

Wit, *v. depart*, 708. A.S. *witan*.

With-owtene, 997, With-owtynne, 114, 139, Wythowtynne, 225, 491, *prep.* without; except, 849.

Withstondene, *v. pl.* withstand, 1747; *p.p.* 1926.

With-thy, *conj.* provided, on condition, 2587, 2591.

Witter, *v.* certify, assure, 1239.

Witterly, 3549, Wytterly, 324, *adv.* plainly, clearly, certainly.

Wlonke, *adj.* proud, splendid, gay, 3154, 3338. A.S. *wlanc, wlone.*

Wode, 1266, 1281, Wodde, 1359, 2219, *s.* wood; *pl.* woddez, 1974. A.S. *wudu.*

Wode, *adj.* mad, raging, 3837. A.S. *wód.*

Wodely, *adv.* madly, 2827.

Wodewyse, *adv.* madly, 3817.

Wokes, *s. pl.* weeks, 354. A.S. *wuce.*

Wold, 3835, Wolde, 1282, *v. pret.* would. *See* Walde.

Wolfes, 3446, Woluez, 3232, *s. pl.* wolves.

Wolf-heuede, *s.* wolf's head, 1093.

Wombe, *s.* belly, 768. A.S. *wamb.*

Wonde, 3494, Woonde, 1615, *v.* hesitate; 3 *s.* wondis, 3833. A.S. *wandian*, to fear, be awe-struck.

Wonde, *s.* wound; *pl.* wondes, 1469, 2148.

Wonde, *v.* wound; 3 *s.* wondes, 2090; *pret.* wondide, 2231; *p.p.* wondede, 1853, wonddede, 1558, wondyde, 1415, 1434.

Wondirliche, 3377, Wondyrlyche, 1357, *adv.* wonderfully.

Wondsome, *s.* misery, 3836.

Wondyre, *s.* 1166, 1342; *adv.* 2515.

Wone, *s.* dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204.

Wonene. *See* Wyne.

Wonne, *v.* dwell, 3910; 3 *s.* wonnys, 3551.

Wonne, Wonnene, Wonnyne. *See* Wyne.

Wonnynge, *s. pl.* dwellings, habitations, 3157.

Wonrydez, *s. pl.* sorrow, grief, 707. *See* Wandrethe.

Woo, *s.* woe, 2684, 3393.

Woonde. *See* Wonde.

Worde, *v.* 3393.

Worme, *s.* reptile, 796, 798.

Worows, *v.* 3 *s.* worries, kills, 958.

Worthe, *v.* become, be, 959 992, 1306.

Wortheliche, 2669, Worthilyche, 695, Worthily, 2191, *adj.* worthy.

Worthethy = worthy, 1302.

Worthily, 2231, Worthylye, 2547, *adv.*

Wotte. *See* Wiet.

Wraite, *v. pret.* wrote, 3904.

Wrakfulle, *adj.* vengeful, 3818.

Wrange, *adj.* wrong, left, 1480.

Wraythe. *See* Wrythe.

Wreche, 1273, Wriche, 1064, Wryche, 2778, *s.* wretch; *pl.* wreches, 1446.

Wrechye, *adj.* wretched, 5.

Wreke, *s.* vengeance, 3839.

Wreke, *v.* avenge, 321, 385; 3 *s.* wrekes, 2213; *inf.* wrekene, 151; *p.p.* wrokene, 2968, wrokyne, 2225.

Wrethe, *s.* wrath, 151, 321, 385.

Wrethe, *s.* fold, wreath, 1093.

Wrethide, *v. pret.* angered, 2191.

Wriche. *See* Wreche.

Wristeles. *See* Wrystille.

Wroghte, Wroghtene. *See* Wirke.

Wrokene, Wrokyne. *See* Wreke.

Wrothely, *adv.* fiercely, 1141, 1480, 2214.

Wrotherayle, *s.* misery, wretchedness, ruin, 3154.

Wryche. *See* Wreche.

Wryngene, *v. pl.* wring, 3155; *p.p.* wryngande, 950, 2679.

Wrystille, *v.* wrestle, 1141; *3 s.* wristles, 890.

Wrythe, *v.* twist, writhe, turn about, 4322; wrythes, 1920, wryththis, 2214; *pl.* wrythyne, 1141; *pret.* wraythe, 1093.

Wy, 164, 695, Wye, 2669, *s.* man, person; *pl.* wyes, 56, 336, wyese, 1300, 2656, wysse, 685. A.S. *wiga*, warrior; *wig*, war.

Wyderwyne, *s.* adversary, 2045; *pl.* wedirwys, 3818, wedirwyne, 3834, whydyrewyns, 2215. A.S. *wiðerwinna*.

Wye, *v.* weigh (anchor), 740.

Wyeſe, Wyf, Wyfe, Wyffe. *See* Wif.

Wyes, Wyese. *See* Wy.

Wyes, Wyese, Wyesse. *See* Wiese.

Wyesly, 1974, Weisely, 1613, 2599, *adv.* wisely.

Wyghte, *s.* wight, man, person, 959.

Wyghte, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 1140; *comp.* wyghttere, 964; *superl.* wyghteste, 290, 336, 532.

Wyghtly, *adv.* vigorously, 553, 740.

Wyghtnesse, 258, 516, 796, Wightenez, 1806, *s.* vigour, strength.

Wykkyde, *adj.* evil, 3232.

Wylde, *s.* wild animals, 181, 657.

Wylde fyre, *s.* 797.

Wylez, *s. pl.* wiles, 1504.

Wylily, *adv.* in a wily manner, craftily, cunningly, 2746.

Wylnez. *See* Wilne.

Wynche, *v.* wink, wince, 2104.

Wyndowes, *s. pl.* some part of a helmet, probably the *windhole* or *aventail*, 911.

Wyne, *v.* win, gain, conquer; wynne, 516; wyne to hir speche, get to speak to her, 3908; wyne awaye, get away, 468; *pret.* wane, 33, 115, whanne, 22; *p.p.* wonnene, 1214, wonnyne, 26, 618, wonnene, 3001, wonne, 887, 1805.

Wynly, *adv.* pleasantly, 671, 2185, 3338.

Wynlyche, *adj.* pleasant, 181.

Wyrche. *See* Wirke.

Wyrchip, Wyrchipfulle, &c. *See* Wirchipe, &c.

Wyrke, Wyrkes. *See* Wirke.

Wysse, *v.* direct, guide, teach, 9, 813; *3 s.* wysse, governs, 671.

Wysse. *See* Wy.

Wyste, Wyt, Wytene. *See* Wiet.

Wythowtayne. *See* With-owtene.

Wythsytte, *v.* resist, 104.

Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, *s. wit*.

Wytterly. *See* Witterly.

Yare, 1901. *Read* Thare.

Yche, Ylke. *See* Ilke.

Ynewe, Ynowe. *See* Inowe.

Yryne. *See* Irene.

Yschewes, *v.* *3 s.* issues, 610.

Ythez, *s. pl.* waves, 741, 747, 763.

ȝa, *adv.* yea, 993, 1033.

ȝaldsones, *s. pl.* (?) 3809.

ȝalowere, *adj.* *comp.* yellower, 3283.

ȝapely, *adv.* quickly, 1502.

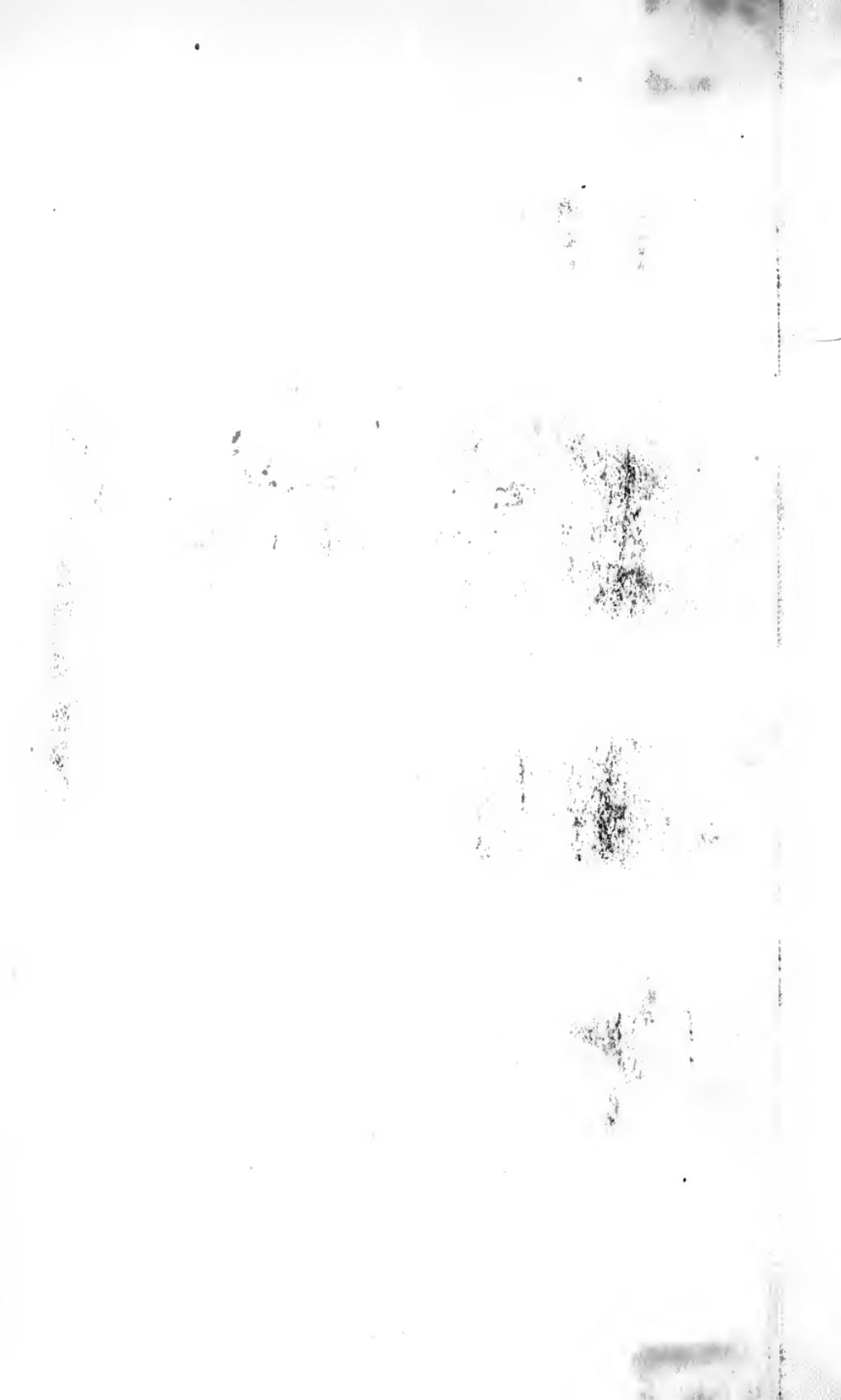
ȝates, 2471, ȝatez, 2039, *s. pl.* gates.

ȝe, *pron.* ye, 12, 226.

ȝee, 3911. Perhaps a mistake for ȝexes, sobs. A.S. *giscian*, to sob.

ȝeffe, <i>conj. if.</i> 2859.	ȝif, 1567, ȝife, 1668, ȝiffe, 2323, <i>v. give.</i>
ȝelde, <i>v. to yield</i> , 1502; 3 <i>s.</i> ȝeldes, 3809; <i>p.p.</i> ȝoldene, 2334, 2482.	ȝis, 2324, ȝise, 2585, <i>adv. yes.</i>
ȝeldene, <i>p.p.</i> 1870. Probably a mistake for 'ȝoldene.'	ȝit, 1128, ȝitt, 1140, ȝitte, 2109, <i>yet.</i>
ȝeme, <i>v. keep, guard</i> ; 3 <i>s.</i> ȝemes, 430, ȝemez, 938; <i>pl.</i> ȝemes, 647.	ȝofe, 1938, 2854. <i>Read 'thofe,'</i> <i>though.</i>
ȝerde, <i>s. yard</i> , 3254, 3280.	ȝoldene. <i>See ȝelde.</i>
ȝere, <i>s. year</i> , 522, 552.	ȝole, <i>s. Yule</i> , 2628.
ȝermys, (?) <i>laments</i> , 3911. A.S. <i>gyrmian</i> , to roar.	ȝolke, <i>s. yolk</i> , 3283.
ȝerne, <i>v. yearn, desire, lust after</i> ; 2 <i>s.</i> ȝernez, 1502; 3 <i>s.</i> ȝernes, 1032; <i>p.p.</i> ȝernede, 2343.	ȝomane, <i>s. yeoman</i> , 2628.
ȝerne, <i>adv. earnestly, eagerly</i> , 1794, 3325, 4189.	ȝon, 2935, ȝone, 299, 336, 341, <i>adj. yon.</i>
ȝif, 340, ȝife, 1502, ȝiff, 104, ȝiffe, 4153, <i>conj. if.</i>	ȝondire, 3809, ȝondyr, 2720, <i>adv.</i> <i>yonder.</i>
	ȝour, 95, 153, 222, ȝowre, 630, 683, <i>pron. your.</i>
	ȝow, 15, 16, ȝowe, 1266, <i>pron. you.</i>





PR              Early English Text  
1119              Society  
A2              [Publications,  
no.8              Original series

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH'

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

---

